

2. Tap a place (for example, a city or landmark on a map, a spot that you marked with a pin, or a search result in Maps), then do any of the following:

- *Get a route to the location:* Tap the [directions button](#).
- *View more information:* Scroll down in the place card.

The information might include the street address, a phone number, a webpage link, customer reviews, and more. Many restaurants and other businesses offer [App Clips](#) that allow you to order or make a reservation by tapping buttons on their place cards.

Save information about a place

You can [save a place](#) or add it [as a pin](#) to one of your [custom guides](#), or as one of your [contacts](#).

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a place on a map or a search result in Maps, tap More... (on the right side of the place card), then choose an option.

Stop sending restaurant names to a third party

If you install an app that has a table-booking extension, it can also help you make reservations at restaurants. You can stop sending the names of restaurants that you view to the extension.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Maps.
2. Tap Restaurant Booking, then turn off the app extension.

Explore places with guides in Maps on iPad

Guides are available to help you discover great places around the world to eat, shop, and explore. Guides are automatically updated when new places are added, so you always have the latest recommendations.

Explore the world with guides

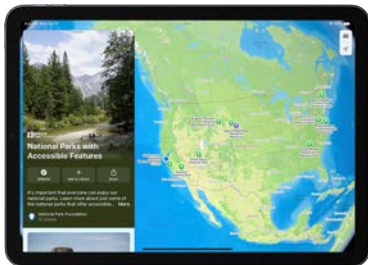
1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPad.
2. Scroll down, then tap Explore Guides.
3. Browse by any of the following:
 - *City:* Tap  near the top of the screen, or scroll down to the Cities category.
 - *Interest:* Swipe right to see more interests, then tap to browse guides in that group.
 - *Publisher:* Scroll down to the Browse by Publisher category.

View, share, and save a guide

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPad.
2. To open a guide, tap its cover. To view its contents, scroll down.

You can also do the following:

- *Share the guide:* Tap Share , then choose an option.
- *Save the guide:* Tap Add to Library.
- *See saved guides:* Below Library, tap >, then tap Guides. See [Organize places in custom guides](#).
- *Close the guide:* Tap .



Tip: Look for [App Clips](#) buttons. These allow you to do things like reserve a table directly from a guide.

Guides are available for many cities worldwide. Availability may vary by country or region.

Look around places in Maps on iPad

You can look around some places with 360-degree panoramic views.

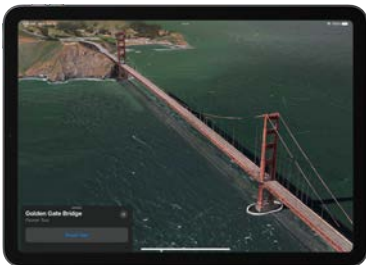


1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPad.
2. In select cities, tap  near the bottom of a map.
3. To change the view, do any of the following:
 - *Pan*: Drag a finger left or right on the scene.
 - *Move forward*: Tap the scene.
 - *Zoom in or out*: Pinch open or closed.
 - *View another point of interest*: Switch from full-screen view, then tap elsewhere on the map, or drag the map.
 - *Switch to or from full-screen view*: Tap  or .
 - *Remove labels in full-screen view*: Tap the address card at the bottom of the screen, then tap Hide Labels .
4. When finished, tap Done.

Look Around is available in select cities. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Take Flyover tours in Maps on iPad

You can virtually fly over many of the world's major landmarks and cities. Flyover landmarks are identified by the Flyover button on their place cards.



View a city or landmark from above

On [supported models](#), move the iPad screen to seemingly fly over a city or landmark.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPad.
2. [Search](#) for a city or the name of a landmark, then tap its name in the search results.
3. Tap Flyover.

If Flyover doesn't appear, tap More  (on the right side of the place card), then tap Flyover.
4. To return to the map, tap  in the card at the bottom of the screen. (Tap anywhere on the screen if  doesn't appear.)

Watch an aerial 3D tour

Take a Flyover tour of a city or landmark.

1. Tap the name of a city (in map or satellite view) or the name of a landmark.
2. Tap Start Tour or Start City Tour in the card at the bottom of the screen. (If the card doesn't appear, tap anywhere on the screen.)
3. To return to the map, tap  in the card at the bottom of the screen. (Tap anywhere on the screen if  doesn't appear.)

For a list of sites with Flyover, see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Clear your location history in Maps on iPad

The Maps app  uses information about your significant locations from [Location Services](#) to provide you with personalized services like predictive traffic routing. Your significant locations are end-to-end encrypted and can't be read by Apple. You can delete your significant locations at any time—for example, to reset predictive traffic routing and similar personalized services.

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap Location Services, tap System Services, then tap Significant Locations.
3. Tap Clear History.

This action clears all your significant locations everywhere you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

Delete recent directions in Maps on iPad

You can delete directions that you recently viewed.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPad.
2. Scroll down to Recents, then do one of the following:
 - *Delete a single item:* Swipe the item left.
 - *Delete all recent:* Tap More, then tap Clear.

Choose a default travel mode and Maps units on iPad

You can review and change your settings for the Maps app, including travel mode and units.

Choose a default travel mode and preferences

Maps defaults to your preferred travel mode when providing directions. You can choose driving, walking, transit, or cycling.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPad.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, tap Preferences, then tap options.
(If neither your picture nor initials appear next to the search field, tap Cancel next to the field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.)
3. To find more options, tap Maps Settings at the bottom of the screen.

Depending on the mode of travel, you may have other route options, such as choosing an arrival time when driving, avoiding heavy traffic or hills when cycling or walking, or choosing which transit method you prefer.

Change the units used in Maps

On a 2D map, a scale appears in the upper left as you zoom out. You can change the units used for the scale.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Language & Region > Measurement System.
2. Select an option.

Report an issue with Maps on iPad

If you notice something's missing in Maps—an address, business, transit stop, or another feature—you can add it. You can also report other kinds of issues, such as an incorrect step in directions or a business that has closed.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPad.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Touch and hold the map until a pin marker appears, tap More  (on the right side of the place card), then tap Report Something Missing.
 - Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, tap Reports, then tap Report a New Issue.
3. Choose an option, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To change the address used for your home or work, see [Add a pin to your library](#).

If you have a business (large or small), you can use [Apple Business Connect](#) to help your customers find it in Maps, Apple Wallet, Siri, and more. Learn more about [Apple Business Connect](#).

Measure

Measure dimensions with iPad

You can use your iPad camera to measure nearby objects and surfaces—you can manually set the start and end points of a measurement, have iPad automatically detect the dimensions of rectangular objects, and more.



For best results, use Measure on well-defined objects located 0.5 to 3 meters (2 to 10 feet) from iPad. (Measurements are approximate.)

Note: You can use Measure on external displays without turning on mirroring in Control Center. The image you see on your iPad appears in a larger size on the external display.

Start a measurement

1. Go to the Measure app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPad.
2. Use the iPad camera to slowly scan nearby objects.
3. Position iPad so that the object you want to measure appears on the screen.

Note: For your privacy, when you use Measure to take measurements, a green dot appears at the top of the screen to indicate your camera is in use.

Take an automatic rectangle measurement

1. Go to the Measure app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPad.
2. Use the iPad camera to slowly scan nearby objects.
3. When iPad detects the edges of a rectangular object, a box frames the object; tap the box to see the dimensions.
4. To take a photo of your measurement, tap .

Take a manual measurement

1. Go to the Measure app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPad.
2. Align the dot at the center of the screen with the point where you want to start measuring, then tap .
3. Slowly pan iPad to the end point, then tap  to see the measured length.
4. To take a photo of your measurement, tap .
5. Take another measurement, or tap Clear to start over.
To start over on [supported models](#), tap , then tap Clear All.

Use edge guides

On [supported models](#), you can easily measure the height and straight edges of furniture, countertops, and other objects using guide lines that appear automatically.

1. Go to the Measure app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPad.
2. Position the dot at the center of the screen along the straight edge of an object until a guide appears.
3. Tap  where you want to begin measuring.
4. Slowly pan along the guide, then tap  at the endpoint to see the measured length.
5. To take a photo of your measurement, tap .

Use Ruler view

On [supported models](#), you can see more detail in your measurements with Ruler view.

1. Go to the Measure app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPad.
2. After measuring the distance between two points, move iPad closer to the measurement line until it transforms into a ruler, showing incremental units of length.
3. To take a photo of your measurement, tap .

View and save measurements on iPad

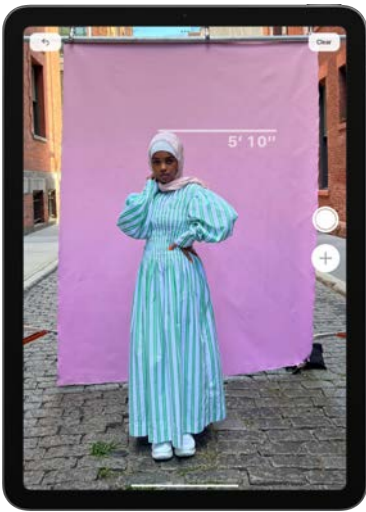
On [supported models](#), you can save a list of all the measurements you take in a single session, complete with screenshots, so you can easily share and access them whenever you need them.

1. Go to the Measure app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPad.
2. Tap  to see a list of your recent measurements.
Swipe up from the top of the list to see more measurements.
3. To save the measurements, tap Copy, open another app (for example, Notes), tap in a document, then tap Paste.

Note: People's height measurements aren't included in this list. To save a person's height measurement, see [Measure a person's height](#).

Measure a person's height with iPad

On [supported models](#), you can instantly measure a person's height from the floor to the top of their head, hair, or hat. (You can even measure a person's seated height.)



1. Go to the Measure app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPad.
2. Position iPad so that the person you want to measure appears on the screen from head to toe.
A line appears at the top of the person's head (or hair, or hat), with the height measurement showing just below the line.
3. To take a photo of the measurement, tap .
4. To save the photo, tap the screenshot in the lower-left corner, tap Done, then choose Save to Photos or Save to Files.
You can easily access and share the height measurement image from Photos or Files on iPad whenever you want.

To take the measurement again, turn iPad away for a moment to reset the height.

Messages

Set up Messages on iPad

In the Messages app, you can send text messages in two different ways:

- Using [iMessage](#) with others who also use iMessage. Your iMessage texts appear in blue bubbles.
- With SMS, MMS, and RCS messages forwarded from your iPhone. Your SMS, MMS, and RCS messages appear in green bubbles. See [Choose other devices for SMS/MMS/RCS messaging](#) in the iPhone User Guide. (RCS messages aren't supported by all carriers or in all countries or regions.)

For more information, see the Apple Support article [What is the difference between iMessage and SMS/MMS/RCS?](#) and the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Turn on iMessage

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Turn on iMessage.
3. To select which of your phone numbers and email addresses you want to use with iMessage, go to Settings > Apps > Messages, tap Send & Receive, then choose from the available options below "You can receive iMessages to and reply from."

Learn more about [iMessage](#).

Access your messages on all your Apple devices

When you turn on Messages in iCloud, messages you send and receive on your iPad are saved in iCloud. When you [sign in to the same Apple Account](#) and turn on Messages in iCloud on another device, your conversations show up there too.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, then tap See All next to Saved to iCloud.
2. Turn on Messages (if it's not already turned on).

After you turn on Messages in iCloud, any messages or attachments you delete from iPad are also deleted from your other Apple devices (iOS 11.4, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.13.5, watchOS 1, visionOS 1, or later) where Messages in iCloud is turned on. See [Set up iCloud for Messages on all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Note: Messages in iCloud uses iCloud storage. See [Sign in and manage your Apple Account](#).

Share your name and photo

In Messages, you can share your name and photo with others. You decide whether to share it whenever you send or receive a message from someone new.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.

2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:

- Tap Edit in the top-left corner.
- Tap  in the top-right corner.

3. Tap Set Up Name & Photo, turn on Name & Photo Sharing, then change any of the following:

- *Your picture*: Tap Edit below the circle, then choose an option. Your photo can be a Memoji, emoji, or custom image.
- *Your name*: Tap Name.
- *Who can see your name and picture*: Tap Share Automatically, then choose an option.

To change your name, picture, or who can see them after you set them up, tap Edit or , then tap Name & Photo.

Note: Your name and photo may not appear as expected when you send messages to recipients who are using non-Apple devices.

About iMessage on iPad

iMessage is a secure messaging service that you can use to send and receive messages in the Messages app on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple Watch, or Apple Vision Pro.

If someone sends a message to your email address or phone number using iMessage, you receive the message [on all your Apple devices](#) that are set up to receive messages sent to that email address or phone number. When you view an iMessage conversation, you see all messages sent from any device, so you can keep in touch with others wherever you are.

You need an [Apple Account](#) to use some iMessage features. If you've made purchases from the iTunes Store or App Store or you've signed in to iCloud, you have an Apple Account.



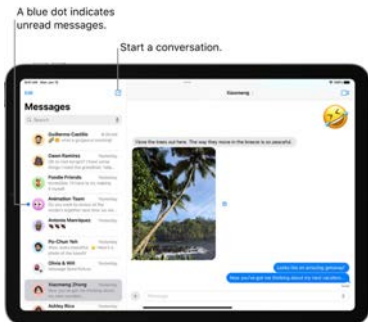
Some things to know about communicating in iMessage:

- You can send texts over Wi-Fi.
- Texts you send and receive using iMessage don't count against your SMS, MMS, or RCS allowances in your phone's cellular messaging plan, but cellular data rates may apply.
- When you communicate with others who also use iMessage on an Apple device, the texts appear in blue bubbles. (SMS, MMS, and RCS messages appear in green bubbles.)
Your message will be sent with iMessage when you see a blue  send button; a green send button indicates the message will be sent with SMS, MMS, or RCS or your cellular service.
- When you're in a conversation with one other person, you can each see if someone's writing a message. If the other person has [read receipts](#) turned on, you can also see if they've opened your message.
- You can use more apps and features, like Tapbacks, message effects, [collaboration](#), [inline replies](#), [undo send](#), [audio messages](#), [Memoji](#), [junk reporting](#), [group conversation](#) management, and more.
- When you use iMessage, you can [report spam or junk messages](#) to Apple.
- For security, messages sent using iMessage are end-to-end encrypted before they're sent, and you can also use [Contact Key Verification](#).

Send and reply to messages on iPad

You can send text messages, images, and much more. You can reply within a conversation or to specific comments in a thread. You can even use Siri to listen and respond to your messages.

To fully use all the features in the Messages app, make sure you [set up Messages](#).



Send a text message

You can send a text message to one or more people to start a new conversation.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen.
3. Enter the phone number, contact name, or [Apple Account](#) of each recipient.
Or tap , then choose [contacts](#) from the list.
4. Do any of the following:
 - Tap the text field above the keyboard, then type your message. (Tap  or  to add [emoji](#).)
 - Tap  to [dictate text](#) in the language of your [keyboard](#).
 - Tap the  to send [photos](#), [videos](#), [your location](#), [audio messages](#), [payments](#), [stickers](#), and more with [iMessage apps](#).
5. Tap  to send.

If a message can't be sent, an alert appears. Tap  to try sending the message again.

To return to the Messages list from a conversation, tap .

Reply to a message

Messages are grouped by conversation in the Messages list. A dot indicates you haven't yet read one or more messages in that conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In the Messages list, tap the conversation that you want to participate in.
3. Tap the text field, create your message, then tap .

Tip: Find out when a message was sent to you. Drag the message bubble to the left to see timestamps for all messages in the conversation.

Reply inline to a specific message

You can respond to a specific message inline. An inline reply quotes the message you're responding to. This keeps a busy conversation organized by clarifying which response relates to which message.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe right on the message bubble that you want to reply to.
3. Enter your message, then tap .
4. To return to the main conversation, tap the blurred background.

Touch and hold a message to react with a [Tapback](#), such as a thumbs-up or a heart.

If you're replying in a [group conversation](#) and you don't want everyone to read your message, start a new conversation with the person you want to reply to.

Use Siri to send, read, and reply to messages

You can use Siri to send messages for you, read your incoming texts out loud, and reply to messages. [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Say something like:

- "Send a message to Mayuri saying, how about tomorrow?"
- "Read my last message from Antonio"
- "Reply, that's great news!"

Siri can send a message right after it has been read back to you. Go to Settings  > Siri > Messaging with Siri > Automatically Send Messages, then turn on Automatically Send Messages.

WARNING: Avoid distractions while driving. See [Important safety information](#).

Reply to messages from your Lock Screen

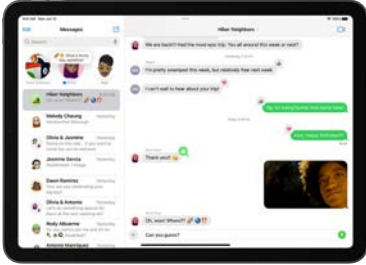
You can reply to messages on your Lock Screen without opening Messages. See [Turn on Lock Screen features](#).

Why are some bubbles blue and others green?

If a message can be sent using [iMessage](#), you see a blue Send arrow , and the message appears in a blue bubble.

If you can't use iMessage (which happens, for example, when a recipient isn't using an Apple device), you can use SMS, MMS, or RCS. Messages sent with SMS, MMS, or RCS appear in green bubbles.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [What is the difference between iMessage and SMS/MMS/RCS?](#)

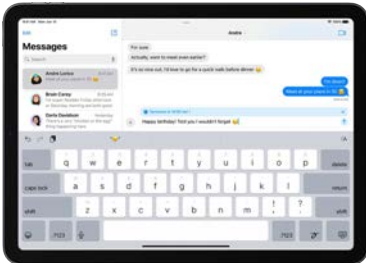


Note: Content may not appear as expected when you send messages to recipients who are using non-Apple devices.

Schedule a message to send later on iPad

If it's too late at night or too important to forget, you can schedule a message to be sent at a later time, instead of sending it as soon as you finish it.

Note: You must be using [iMessage](#) with iOS 18, iPadOS 18, macOS Sequoia, watchOS 11, visionOS 2, or later. Your recipient can be on any system, and they won't know that the message was scheduled. You need to be online to reschedule, edit, or delete a scheduled message.



Schedule a message

You can schedule a message up to 14 days into the future.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap Send Later.
3. Tap the time to open the scheduler, then choose when you want to send your message.

The border of the text field turns into a dashed line, and the time your message will be sent appears above the message.

4. Enter a message, then tap .

The message appears with a dashed line until it's time to send it, and it's delivered even if all your devices are offline.

Note: Scheduled messages are encrypted and stored on Apple servers only until they're sent. When a message is sent, it's removed from Apple servers, the balloon becomes a solid color, and its dashed line disappears.

Change the time to send a message

You can reschedule a message until its delivery time.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Go to the conversation with the message you want to reschedule.
3. Scroll to the bottom of the conversation if you don't see your message (scheduled messages may appear below other sent messages).
4. Tap Edit beside the date (above your scheduled message), then do any of the following:
 - *Reschedule it:* Tap Edit Time, choose a new time, then tap away from the schedule to commit the new time.
 - *Send it immediately:* Tap Send Message.

Edit a scheduled message

You can edit a scheduled message until its delivery time.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Go to the conversation with the scheduled message you want to edit.
3. Scroll to the bottom of the conversation if you don't see your message (scheduled messages may appear below other sent messages.)
4. Touch and hold the message bubble, then tap Edit.
5. Make any changes, then tap  to resend with edits or  to revert.

Delete a scheduled message

When you delete a message before its scheduled time, it's canceled and not delivered to the recipient.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.

2. Go to the conversation with the scheduled message you want to delete.
3. Scroll to the bottom of the conversation if you don't see your message (scheduled messages may appear below other sent messages).
4. Touch and hold the message you want to cancel, then tap Delete.

Unsend and edit messages on iPad

You can unsend and edit recent text messages, giving you the opportunity to fix a typo or pull back a message that you accidentally sent to the wrong person.



Note: To unsend or edit text messages, you must be using iMessage with iOS 16, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, visionOS 1, or later. If you unsend a message to someone who's using an earlier operating system, the original message remains in the conversation, and you're notified that the recipient may still see the original message. If you edit a message to someone who's using an earlier operating system, they receive follow-up messages with the preface "Edited to" and your new message in quotation marks. SMS, MMS, or RCS text messages can't be edited or unsent. However, SMS, MMS, or RCS text messages can be edited in a group conversation as long as there's at least one other iMessage user in the group.

Unsend a message

You can undo a recently sent message for up to 2 minutes after sending it.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold the message bubble, then tap Undo Send.

A note confirming that you unsent the message appears in both conversation transcripts: yours and your recipient's.

Unsending removes the message from your recipient's device.

Edit a sent message

You can edit a recently sent message up to five times within 15 minutes of sending it.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Select a conversation with the message you want to edit.
3. Touch and hold the message bubble, then tap Edit.
4. Make any changes, then tap  to resend with edits or  to revert.

Note: The message is marked as Edited in the conversation transcript.

The message bubble updates to reflect your edits on both your iPad and your recipient's device, and both of you can tap Edited to see previous versions of your message.

Keep track of messages on iPad

You can catch up on text messages you missed, mark messages as unread, and pin and unpin conversations to prioritize messages in the Messages list.

Catch up on messages you missed

If you receive messages while you have notifications paused or you're away from your iPad, you can jump to the first message you haven't seen in a conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open an unread conversation, then tap .

Your view of the conversation moves up to the first unread message.

Mark messages as unread

When you don't have time to respond, you can mark conversations as unread so you can return to them later.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In the Messages list, do one of the following:
 - Swipe right on a conversation to mark it as unread.
 - Drag right and tap .

Tip: You can also mark several messages as unread at the same time. Tap Edit or , tap Select Messages, select the conversations you want to mark as unread, then tap Unread in the bottom-left corner.

See a list of your unread messages

To see a list of your unread messages, you must first set up message filtering.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Scroll down to Message Filtering, then turn on Filter Unknown Senders.
3. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
4. In the Messages conversation list, tap , then tap Unread Messages.

Pin a conversation

You can pin specific conversations to the top of the Messages list so the people you contact most always come first in the list. Pinned conversations appear as larger icons at the top of your messages list.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold a conversation, then tap Pin.

You can also pin certain shared items—such as links or collaboration invitations—within a conversation. Touch and hold a message, then tap Pin. You can find pinned items in the Pins section when you tap the name of your contact or group at the top of the conversation.

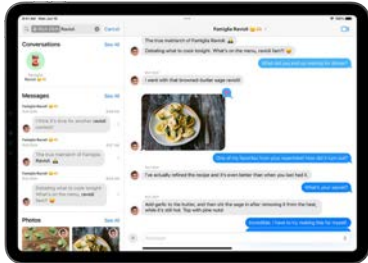
Unpin a conversation

You can unpin specific conversations so that they don't appear at the top of the Messages list.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold a pinned conversation, then do one of the following:
 - Drag the message to the bottom of the list, and let go.
 - Tap Unpin.

Search in Messages on iPad

You can search for text messages and attachments, using different criteria to narrow your results.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the search field above the conversation list. (You may need to swipe down to reveal the search field.)
3. Enter what you're looking for (such as a word or phrase).

When you enter a search term—such as Photo, Link, Wallet (for passes), or the name of a conversation or person—a filter appears below the search field. Tap it to add it to the search as a filter.

Tip: To limit your search to one person or conversation, start by typing a person's name, tap "Messages with" or "Messages in," then tap other criteria that appear or add any text you want to find in your conversation.

4. To combine search criteria, add another search term or filter.
5. Tap search, then tap a message in the results list to read it.

The search field also opens suggestions—such as conversations, photos, locations, links, and more. Tap any suggestion to quickly jump to a conversation.

Forward and share messages on iPad

You can forward one or more text messages in a conversation to a different recipient.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold a message bubble you want to forward, then tap More.

3. Tap to select one or more messages to forward, then tap ➦.
4. Enter recipients, then tap ➡.

Tip: To show the message bubbles and timestamps just as they appear in a conversation, send a [screenshot](#) as an attached image instead of forwarding messages.

To share your messages on other devices, see [Set up iCloud for Messages on all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Have a group conversation in Messages on iPad

You can send a group text message, name it, and assign it an image to find it more easily. In a group conversation, you can call people's attention to specific messages and even [collaborate on projects](#).

Send a new message to a group

You can send a message to multiple people to start a group conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen to start a new conversation.
3. Enter the phone number, contact name, or [Apple Account](#) of each recipient, or tap , then choose contacts.
Note: If one or more of your recipients isn't using [iMessage](#), messages appear in green bubbles instead of blue ones.
4. Tap the text field, type your message, then tap .

Add someone to an existing group conversation

If you have at least two other people in a group conversation, you can add additional contacts.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the group conversation you want to add someone to.
3. Tap the group name at the top of the conversation, then tap the button that shows how many people are in the conversation.



4. Tap Add Contact, then enter the new recipient's phone number, contact name, or [Apple Account](#).
Or tap , then choose a contact from the list.

Note: If the group includes someone who hasn't [turned on iMessage](#), follow the onscreen instructions to start a new group.

If you only have one other person in the conversation, you need to start a new group conversation to add someone else.

To remove someone from a group conversation, swipe left on their name, then tap Remove.

Leave a group conversation

You can leave a group chat if there are at least three other participants in the conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the group conversation you want to leave.
3. Tap the group name at the top of the conversation.
4. Scroll down and tap Leave This Conversation or Delete and Block This Conversation. (Learn more about [deleting](#) and [blocking](#) conversations.)
Blocked conversations are moved to the Recently Deleted folder, where you can [recover](#) them.

If you want to stay in a group chat but stop receiving its notifications, [mute the conversation](#) instead.

Mention people in a group conversation

You can mention someone by name in a group conversation to call their attention to a specific message, and they'll get a notification. Depending on their settings, the person you mention may be notified even if they have the conversation muted.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In a conversation, begin typing a contact's name in the text field.
3. Tap the contact's name when it appears.

You can also mention a contact in Messages by typing @ followed by the contact's name.

To change how or when you get notifications when your name is mentioned in Messages, go to Settings  > Apps > Messages > Notify Me.

Name a group conversation

You can name a group text message and choose an image to represent the conversation. Everyone who has [turned on iMessage](#) will see the new name and image.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the name or number at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Change Name and Photo, then choose an option.

Enjoy content together live using SharePlay on iPad

In the Messages app, you can get together with friends to watch the latest episode of your favorite show or listen to a new song in real time using SharePlay. On an iPad that meets the [minimum system requirements](#), you can start a Messages conversation right from a supported app like Apple TV and Music. Shared playback controls keep everyone in sync.

To use SharePlay in Messages, you and your recipients must be using [iMessage](#).

1. In a supported app, find a show, movie, song, album, or other content you want to share, then tap the item to see its details.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Tap , then tap SharePlay.
 - Tap ... at the top right, tap , then tap SharePlay.
 - Tap ... next to the content, then tap SharePlay.

3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap Messages.

4. Tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

To begin viewing or listening, recipients tap the content's title at the top of the Messages conversation, then tap Open. For everyone who has access to the content, the video starts playing at the same time.

Note: If the shared content requires a subscription, the service may ask those who don't have access to subscribe, make a transaction, or sign up for a free trial, if available.

When you select content to share and tap the Play button, you can also select Play for Everyone (if it appears) to begin it for everyone in the conversation. (Others on the thread may have to tap Join SharePlay to see the video.)

Each person in the conversation can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward for everyone, but settings like closed-captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.

Use Messages when you want no interruptions to the sound of the movie, show, song, or podcast, or switch to [FaceTime](#) when you want to see and hear other people as you chat.

Tip: After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See [Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV](#).

Share screens using Messages on iPad

While using Messages on an iPad that meets [minimum system requirements](#), you can share your screen or ask to see someone else's screen. In supported apps, you can also use SharePlay to get together with friends while you watch the latest episode of your favorite show or listen to a new song in real time.

Show someone else what's on your screen

You can jump from Messages to FaceTime to share your screen to bring apps, webpages, and more into the conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In a conversation with just one other person, tap .
3. Tap Share My Screen. See [Share your screen in a FaceTime call](#).

See another person's screen

You can jump from Messages to FaceTime to see another person's screen, or even remotely control it.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In a conversation with just one other person, tap .
3. Tap Ask to Share Screen. See [Request remote control](#).

Use SharePlay to enjoy content together

You can start a Messages conversation right from a supported app like Apple TV and Music.

To use SharePlay in Messages, you and your recipients must be using [iMessage](#). Shared playback controls keep everyone in sync.

1. In a supported app, find a show, movie, song, album, or other content you want to share, then tap the item to see its details.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Tap , then tap SharePlay.
 - Tap ... at the top right, tap , then tap SharePlay.
 - Tap ... next to the content, then tap SharePlay.
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap Messages.

4. Tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

To begin viewing or listening, recipients tap the content's title at the top of the Messages conversation, then tap Open. For everyone who has access to the content, the video starts playing at the same time.

Note: If the shared content requires a subscription, the service may ask those who don't have access to subscribe, make a transaction, or sign up for a free trial, if available.

When you select content to share and tap the Play button, you can also select Play for Everyone (if it appears) to begin it for everyone in the conversation. (Others on the thread may have to tap Join SharePlay to see the video.)

Each person in the conversation can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward for everyone, but settings like closed-captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.

Use Messages when you want no interruptions to the sound of the movie, show, song, or podcast, or tap  to switch to FaceTime when you want to see and hear other people as you chat.

Tip: After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See [Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV](#).

Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPad

In the Messages app , you can send a text message to invite people to collaborate on a project, and everyone in the conversation is added to the document, spreadsheet, or other shared file.

Note: To start collaborating on a project with Messages, you and your recipients must be using [iMessage](#) with iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, watchOS 9, visionOS 1, or later, and you must first save the content somewhere it can be accessed by others, such as [iCloud Drive](#). For iPad apps, you may need to turn on iCloud to use their collaboration features: go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, then tap See All next to Saved to iCloud.

Invite people to collaborate

You can invite people to collaborate on a project from another app, and then discuss your content in Messages. Share files from apps like [Notes](#), [Freeform](#), [Reminders](#), [Safari](#), [Keynote](#), [Numbers](#), [Pages](#), and more, as long as you first turn on their collaboration features in iCloud settings and save the content somewhere it can be accessed by others, such as [iCloud Drive](#).

The process for inviting someone to collaborate depends on the app. Here's one way you might start a collaboration in a supported app:

1. Select the file you want to share, then tap , or tap Collaborate.
2. Make sure Collaborate (rather than Send Copy) is selected, then tap the group or individual you want to collaborate with. If you don't see the group or person listed, tap .
- The suggested icons may correspond with groups or individuals with active FaceTime calls or recent Messages conversations.
3. A Messages conversation opens with the invitation ready to send. Add a note (optional), then tap .



After you invite participants in Messages, you can work on the project in the other app and return to the Messages conversation by tapping the Collaborate button in that app.

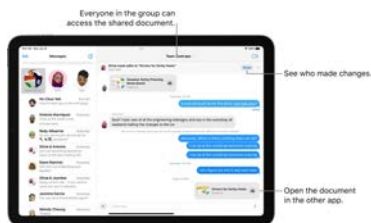
When someone edits the file, you see updates at the top of the Messages thread. To return to the shared project and see changes, tap an update.

Note: Your participants may need to accept your invitation or join the shared item before they can interact with it or see any updates.

Tip: When you have your Files and Messages open in Split Screen, you can start a collaboration by dragging a file into the new message window and choosing Collaborate in the pop-up menu before sending.)

Collaborate on a project in Messages

After you share your project, you see activity updates at the top of the Messages conversation whenever someone makes an edit.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Go to the conversation that contains the invitation to the project you've started collaborating on, then do any of the following to return to the project:
 - Tap the file in your conversation to open it.
 - If you see an update at the top of the conversation, tap Show.
 - Tap the name of your participant or group at the top of the screen, scroll to Collaboration, then tap the shared project.

When you make any changes or edits to the project, your participants get updates in the conversation.

Note: If you add a new person to a group conversation, you have to grant them access to the projects you're collaborating on. If they've been added to the group conversation recently, you can tap a notification at the top of screen to add them. Or [invite them to collaborate](#).

Manage the collaboration and group

The group of people in the Messages collaboration and the group collaborating on the file may not match. For example, you may invite people to collaborate on the file outside of Messages. Or you may have two different groups in Messages, each with its own collaboration conversation.

If you share a project with two or more people in a Messages conversation, you can add or remove participants.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Go to the conversation you want to manage, then tap the group icon at the top of the conversation to open details about the group's conversation.
3. Tap the button showing the participants in the conversation, then do any of the following:

- **Add new participants:** Scroll to the bottom of the list, tap Add Contact , then add contacts.

If you started collaborating with just one other person, you must start a new conversation to add people to the collaboration.

Note: You must add new participants to any files that were shared in the conversation before they joined. As you add participants, a notification appears at the top of the conversation. Tap Show in the notification to review the previously shared files you can add new participants to.

- **Remove participants from the conversation:** Swipe left on the name of the person you want to remove, then tap Remove.

Important: The apps where the collaboration happens usually control access to the project. Check participant access in the app itself to remove viewing or editing privileges completely.

When you add someone to a document you've shared with others earlier, you have the option of adding them to an existing conversation or keeping the conversations separate. People added to conversations aren't able to read messages sent before they joined the conversation.

Stop collaborating on a project in Messages

The apps where the collaboration happens usually control access to the project. For example, if you're collaborating on a document in the Pages app, the Pages settings take precedence over the Messages settings. You can, however, [unsend](#) or [delete](#) the invitation from the conversation just as you would any other message.

Important: When you delete an invitation from a thread, that conversation is no longer associated with the collaboration, but it doesn't remove participants from the file. Check participant access in the app to remove viewing or editing privileges completely.

Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPad

You can play a game, record audio messages, share songs, and more—all with iMessage apps—without leaving the Messages app. You can customize your list of available apps or add iMessage apps you find in the App Store.



Rearrange iMessage apps

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, then tap .
3. Touch and hold any app icon in the list until it shrinks a little, then drag it to the location where you want it.

To move the app icon to a different page, drag it to the top or bottom edge of the screen. You might need to wait a moment for the new page to appear.

Add iMessage apps

The Messages app comes with iMessage apps you can use to send [photos](#), [videos](#), [audio messages](#), [payments](#), [stickers](#), and more. You can download additional iMessage apps for even more options.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, then tap .
3. Tap Store  to open the App Store for iMessage.
4. Tap an app to see more details and reviews, then do one of the following:
 - **Purchase an app:** Tap the price. Payments are made using the method associated with your [Apple Account](#).
 - **Download a free app:** Tap Get.

Take and edit photos or videos in Messages on iPad

You can capture photos and videos directly in the Messages app. You can also modify the photos and videos before you send them by editing the image, marking it up, or adding effects.

Note: Your carrier may set size limits for attachments; iPad may compress photo and video attachments when necessary.



Take and edit a new photo or video

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open a conversation or start a new message, tap , then tap Camera.
3. To change the camera mode, tap Slo-Mo, Video, Photo, Square, or Pano. (You may have to swipe up or down.)
4. To add camera effects to your photo or video—such as filters, stickers, labels, and shapes—tap , then tap a button, such as  or . Choose an option, then tap  to add the effect to your image.
5. Do one of the following:
 - *Take a photo:* Frame the shot in the viewfinder, then tap .
 - *Take a video:* Tap  to begin recording and  to stop.
6. Tap Done to add the photo or video to the message bubble, add a comment, then tap  to send your message. (Or just tap  to send the photo or video without adding a message.)

You can also send a photo or video with a [Digital Touch effect](#) or [record a video message](#) in the FaceTime app.

Note: You can have your (or a family member's) iPad receive warnings about sensitive content and warn you before it's sent or received. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#) or [Check for nude content on a family member's iPad](#).

Add and edit an existing photo

You can edit or mark up an existing image from your photo library before you send it in a Messages conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open a conversation or start a new message, tap , then tap Photos.
3. Swipe up to search, browse through all photos, or change albums, then tap the images you want to send.
4. To alter a photo, tap the photo in the message bubble, then do any of the following:
 - Tap Markup, [write or draw with the Markup tools](#) on the photo, tap Save, then tap Done.
 - Tap Edit, [use the photo editing tools](#) to change the photo, then tap Done.
5. Add a comment (optional), then tap  to send the photo.

To remove a photo or video from the message bubble before sending it, tap .

Note: Attachments you send over [iMessage](#) (such as photos or videos) may be uploaded to Apple and encrypted so that no one but the sender and receiver can access them. To improve performance, your iPad may automatically upload attachments to Apple while you're composing a message. If you decide not to send your message, the attachments are deleted from the server after several days.

Share content in Messages on iPad

You can share images, links, and other content using the Messages app. When someone shares content with you, you can find it in a Shared with You section in the corresponding apps. Apps that support Shared with You include Photos, Music, News, and more.

Share content with others

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation.
3. Do one of the following:
 - [Copy and paste](#) an image or a link into your message.
 - Tap , tap Photos to browse recent photos and videos, then tap to add.
 - Tap a message attachment, tap , then tap a contact or .

Tip: When you tap , you can also copy, save, or print your attachment.
4. Add a message (optional), then tap .

From another app (like Podcasts, News, or Music), select the content you want to share, tap , tap Share, then choose Messages.

Find all the content someone shared with you

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open the conversation whose content you want to see.
3. Tap the name of the person or group you're communicating with at the top of a conversation.
4. Scroll down to the Shared with You section.

Note: Content only appears in Shared with You if the person who sent it is in your [contacts](#).

You can find a Shared with You section in [Photos](#), [Safari](#), [News](#), [Music](#), [Podcasts](#), and other supported apps.

Review and save photos or videos

If you receive multiple photos or videos at the same time, they're automatically grouped into a collage (two to three items) or a stack (four or more).

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Look inside a stack:* Tap to open, then swipe through a stack to view, reply, or interact with each photo or video individually.
 - *Save a photo or video:* Tap  next to the photo or stack.

Pin shared content

If someone shares content that's especially interesting, you can quickly pin it in Messages, and it will be elevated in the Shared with You section of supported apps, in Messages search, and in the conversation details (the info you see when you tap the name at the top of the conversation).

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open the conversation with the content you want to pin.
3. Touch and hold the message bubble containing the link, then tap Pin .

Note: Photos can be saved to your library, but not pinned.

Hide shared content

You can adjust your settings to hide an app's Shared with You section.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Tap Shared with You, then turn off Automatic Sharing, or turn off Shared with You for a specific app.

Note: You can have your (or a family member's) iPad receive warnings about sensitive content and warn you before it's sent or received. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#) or [Check for nude content on a family member's iPad](#).

Send stickers in Messages on iPad

Express yourself by adding stickers that match your personality and mood to your text messages.



Send a sticker in a message

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation.
3. Tap , tap Stickers, then tap the icon for any of the following sticker packs:
 - *Live Stickers you or a friend made:* Tap . See [Create new Live Stickers](#) and [Save other people's Live Stickers](#), below.
 - *Emoji:* Tap .
 - *Memoji:* Tap , tap a Memoji in the top row to view the stickers in the sticker pack, then choose a pose or expression. See [Create and send Memoji](#).
 - *Stickers from other creators:* Download a sticker app from the App Store. See [Add iMessage apps](#).
4. Add a message (optional), then tap .

You can also send stickers from the emoji keyboard. See [Decorate with stickers](#).

Place stickers on a conversation

You can add stickers on message bubbles in conversations, and angle the stickers or make them different sizes. You can also place a sticker on top of another sticker.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation.
3. Tap , tap Stickers, then tap an icon—such as , , or —in the top row to browse a sticker pack.
4. Drag a sticker onto a bubble, then do any of the following:
 - *Adjust the angle:* Rotate a second finger around the finger dragging the sticker.
 - *Adjust the size:* Move a second finger closer to or away from the finger dragging the sticker.

Your recipients see the sticker as soon as you place it on a message.

To find out who sent a sticker in a conversation, touch and hold the sticker, then tap Sticker Details.

Tip: Quickly add stickers to messages. Touch and hold a message, tap Add Sticker, then choose a sticker to appear on a corner of that message bubble.

Move, resize, or delete stickers

After you place a sticker on top of message bubbles in conversations, you can make changes to it.

Do any of the following:

- *Move or resize a sticker:* Touch and hold the sticker, then make any changes.
- *Delete a sticker:* Touch and hold the message bubble, tap Sticker Details, swipe left on the sticker you want to delete (on your iPad only), then tap .
- *See any text covered by a sticker:* Double-tap the message bubble.

To change stickers sent in a message bubble, see [Unsend and edit messages](#).

Note: You and your recipients must be using iOS 17.2, iPadOS 17.2, macOS 14.1, watchOS 10.2, visionOS 1, or later, to see these updates to stickers.

Create new Live Stickers

You can create your own Live Stickers to use in messages by lifting subjects from photos and adding effects that help bring the stickers to life.

This feature is available on [supported models](#).

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
 2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap , then tap Stickers.
 3. Tap , tap , tap a photo, then tap Add Sticker.
- Tip:** To create a Live Sticker that moves, use a Live Photo. See [Make stickers from your photos](#).
4. To add an effect, touch and hold the sticker, tap Add Effect, choose an option (such as Comic or Shiny), then tap Done.

Save other people's Live Stickers

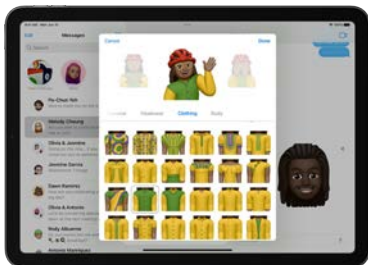
When someone sends you a Live Sticker you like, you can save it to reuse later.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open a conversation with a sticker you want to save.
3. Touch and hold the sticker, then do one of the following:
 - *For a sticker sent in a message:* Tap Save to Stickers.
 - *For a sticker placed on a message bubble:* Tap Sticker Details, then tap Save.

You can also [create and send Memoji](#) that use your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

Create and send Memoji in Messages on iPad

You can design your own personalized Memoji—choose skin tone, glasses, body, and more. You can create multiple Memoji to use in different contexts. Each Memoji—even the ones you create—automatically generates a range of poses and expressions.



Create Memoji

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap , tap More, then Tap Memoji.
3. Tap , then tap New Memoji or Edit.
4. Tap each feature (Skin, Hairstyle, and others to the right) and choose the options you want.

5. Tap Done to save the Memoji to your collection.

Send Memoji stickers

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap , tap Stickers, then tap .
3. Choose a Memoji and an expression or pose, or [create a new Memoji](#).
4. Tap .

Send animated Memoji or Memoji recordings

On [supported models](#), you can send Memoji messages that record your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap , tap Memoji, then swipe and tap to choose a Memoji.
3. Tap  to record your facial expressions and voice, then tap  to stop.
Tap Replay to review your message.
4. Tap  to send your message or  to cancel.

You can also [take a photo or video](#) of yourself as a Memoji, decorate it with stickers, then send it. Or you can [become a Memoji](#) in a FaceTime conversation.

React with Tapbacks in Messages on iPad

Tapbacks give you a quick and easy way to respond to a message, such as a heart, a thumbs-up or thumbs-down, laughter, exclamation points, a question mark, and any sticker, Memoji, or emoji.

Note: To send and receive emoji and sticker Tapbacks, you and your recipients must be using iOS 18, iPadOS 18, macOS Sequoia, watchOS 11, visionOS 2, or later.



React with a Tapback

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open a conversation.
3. Double-tap (or touch and hold) a message.
4. Swipe left to see suggested emoji and stickers, or tap , then tap to choose any of the following kinds of Tapbacks:
 - *Other emoji:* Tap  (jump to other emoji categories with icons to the right of ).
 - *Stickers:* Tap .

The Tapback is attached to a specific message in a conversation, and everyone who's part of the conversation can see it.

Find out who sent a Tapback

If there's more than one Tapback for a message, they appear as a stack. You can find out who added each Tapback.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open a conversation with Tapbacks.
3. Double-tap (or touch and hold) a message with Tapbacks.
Senders appear near the top of the screen.

Edit or remove your Tapback

You can only edit or remove Tapbacks you added. You can't edit or remove Tapbacks other people added.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open a conversation.
3. Tap your Tapback, then do one of the following:
 - *Use a different Tapback:* Tap a different emoji, Memoji, or sticker. (See [React with a Tapback](#), above.)
 - *Remove the Tapback:* Tap the same Tapback you used (so it's not highlighted).

You can only add one Tapback per message. If you want to send additional stickers, see [Send stickers](#).

Style and animate messages on iPad

You can better express yourself in the messages you send by formatting, styling, or animating the text in your message, the message bubble, or the entire screen.

Note: To send and receive messages with text formatting or text effects, you and your recipients must be using [iMessage](#) on iOS 18, iPadOS 18, macOS Sequoia, watchOS 11, visionOS 2, or later. Messages appear in plain text when sent to devices using older or other operating systems.

Format or animate text within messages

Style the text in your messages with bold, italics, and underlining, or add playful, animated effects like explode or shake to any letter, word, or sentence—even emoji—in texts you send using iMessage.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In a new or existing conversation, enter a message, then select the text you want to format or animate.
3. Tap  above the keyboard, then select your preferred style (bold, italic, underline, or strikethrough) or animated effects (big, small, shake, nod, explode, ripple, bloom, or jitter).
The Messages app may suggest effects to apply as you type.
4. Tap .

You can also choose the format or animation before you enter the message.

Animate the message bubble

Use effects to animate the message bubble: you can send a message with Slam or Loud so that it appears to pop out, or use Gentle so it arrives softly. You can even send a personal message with Invisible Ink that remains blurred until the recipient swipes to reveal it.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In a new or existing conversation, type a message or insert an image or link.
3. Touch and hold , then tap the gray dots to preview different bubble effects.

Animate effects over the full screen

You can send messages with full-screen effects—such as lively lasers, a moving spotlight, or echoing bubbles—that play when your recipient gets your message.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In a new or existing conversation, type a message or insert a photo or Memoji.
3. Touch and hold , then tap Screen.
4. Swipe left to preview different screen effects.

5. Tap  to send the message or  to cancel the effect and return to your message.

Messages automatically uses the following screen effects for specific text strings:

- Balloons for "Happy birthday"
- Confetti for "Congratulations"
- Fireworks for "Happy New Year"

Draw and handwrite messages on iPad

You can send messages with handwriting, doodling, and more.

You need [iMessage](#) to exchange drawn or handwritten messages.

Send a Digital Touch effect

With Digital Touch, you can send animated sketches, taps, kisses, heartbeats, and more, on their own or as an effect on a photo or video.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , swipe up or tap More, then tap Digital Touch.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Send an animated gesture:* Tap or touch and hold with one or two fingers. Your gesture is sent automatically when you finish it.
Touch and hold the color dot to choose a color for the one-finger taps.
Note: If you have Apple Watch or another sensor that records heartbeat data, Messages may use the recorded data when you touch and hold with two fingers to send a heartbeat.
 - *Send an animated drawing:* Draw with one finger.
You can change the color, then start drawing again.
 - *Add an effect to a new image:* Tap , then tap  to take a photo or  to record a video.
To take a new photo or video, or to erase anything you draw on your preview, tap .
4. Tap  to send your drawing or image, or tap  to delete it.

To send an animated doodle on a white background, see [Send a handwritten message or doodle](#).

Send a handwritten message or doodle

Use your finger to write a message or draw a doodle. Recipients see what you wrote or drew, re-created before their eyes.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In a conversation, rotate iPad to landscape orientation.
3. Tap  on the keyboard.
4. Write a message with your finger or choose a saved message at the bottom, then tap Done.
5. Tap  to send your message or  to cancel.



After you create and send a handwritten message, the message is saved at the bottom of the handwriting screen. To use the saved message again, tap it. To delete the saved message, touch and hold it until the messages jiggle, then tap .

To send a doodle on a black background, see [Send a Digital Touch effect](#).

Send and save GIFs in Messages on iPad

With the Messages app on iPad, you can search #images to find hundreds of trending GIFs you can add to your text messages and save GIFs others send to you (not available in all countries or regions).

Add a GIF from #images

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen and add a recipient, or select an existing conversation.
3. Tap , tap More, then tap #images.
4. To search for a specific GIF, tap "Find images," enter a keyword (like "birthday"), then tap Search or Enter.
5. Tap a GIF to add it to your message, then tap .

Note: GIFs from #images animate only in the Messages app on Apple devices.

Save a GIF

You can save a GIF that you receive in a message to use again later.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open the conversation that includes the GIF that you want to save.
3. Touch and hold the GIF, then tap Save.

The GIF is saved to the Photos app.

Request, send, and receive payments in Messages on iPad (U.S. only)

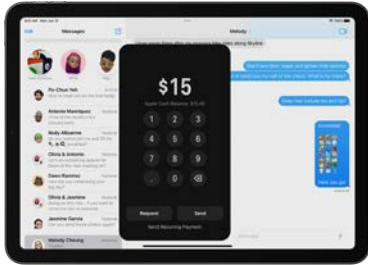
<__ class="__ GenerativeKeywords" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

You can use Apple Cash to request, send, and receive money quickly and easily using text messages.

When you receive money in Messages, it's added to your Apple Cash card in the Wallet app. See the Apple Support article [Send and receive money with Apple Cash](#).

To request, send, or receive payments in Messages, both the sender and the recipient must be using [iMessage](#).



Request or send a payment in Messages

1. Go to the Messages app on your iPad.
2. In an [iMessage](#) conversation, do one of the following:
 - Tap , tap Apple Cash, then adjust the value, as needed.
 - If the requested amount is mentioned in a sent message, tap it, then tap Send with Apple Cash.
3. Tap Request or Send for a one-time payment.

If you want to start paying someone regularly, tap Send Recurring Payment, then follow the onscreen instructions.

(If you don't see Send Recurring Payment, tap Show Keypad.)

4. Tap , then follow the onscreen instructions.

Receive a payment

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open a conversation where you've received a payment.
3. Tap Accept, then follow the onscreen instructions.

In the U.S., Apple Pay is a service provided by Apple Payments Services LLC, a subsidiary of Apple Inc. In other countries and regions, Apple Pay is a service provided by certain Apple affiliates, as designated by the [Apple Pay privacy notice](#). Neither Apple Inc. nor Apple Payments Services LLC nor any Apple affiliate is a bank. Any card used in Apple Pay is offered by the card issuer. Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

Send and receive audio messages in Messages on iPad

You can record and send audio messages, along with transcripts of what's said in the message. Audio messages are automatically deleted to save space on your iPad, but if you want to save them, you can.

Note: Audio message transcription available in select languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Record and send an audio message

Instead of writing a text message, you can record an audio message that can be played right in the Messages conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap , then tap Audio.
3. Begin speaking, tap  to pause or end your recording, then do any of the following to your message:
 - *Send it:* Tap .
 - *Listen to review it:* Tap .
 - *Add to the end of it:* Tap  (with the message duration).
 - *Cancel it:* Tap .

4. Tap Keep to save an incoming or outgoing audio message on your iPad.

Otherwise, the recording is deleted from the conversation—on your iPad only—2 minutes after you send or listen to it. Recipients can play your recording any time after they receive it. To save it, they need to tap Keep within 2 minutes after listening to it.

Tip: Send follow-up audio messages more quickly by tapping  in the text field above the keyboard.

Audio messages are automatically transcribed in the language chosen in the sender's Settings. See [Change the language and region](#) to switch to another language for your outgoing messages.

Always keep audio messages

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Tap Expire (below Audio Messages), then tap Never.

Listen or reply to a recorded audio message

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open a conversation with an audio message, then tap  to play it.
3. Do any of the following:
 - Slide right and left on the audio message to fast-forward or rewind.
 - Touch and hold  or  to adjust the playback speed.
4. Tap Keep to save an audio message in the Messages conversation.

To save the message in the Voice Memos app , touch and hold the audio message, then tap Save to Voice Memos.

Use Raise to Listen

When you receive an audio message, you can move your iPad to play and reply to the message. Do either of the following:

- *Play an audio message:* Raise your iPad to your ear.
- *Reply to an audio message:* Lower your iPad and raise it to your ear again, then speak after you hear a tone. Tap  to send your reply.

Turn off Raise to Listen

If you don't want audio messages to play when you raise your iPad to your ear, you can turn the feature off.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Turn off Raise to Listen.

Switch to FaceTime from Messages

You can quickly make an audio or video call instead of sending a message by switching to FaceTime. In a Messages conversation, tap .

Share your location in Messages on iPad

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __ " Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

You can let others know where you are (or find out where they are) by using location sharing.

Share and update your location automatically

When you share your location in a Messages conversation, it updates in real time right in the conversation. You can share your location by tapping Current Location (above the keyboard) when somebody asks where you are, or do the following:

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, then do one of the following:
 - Tap , tap Location, then tap Send.
 - Tap the name of the person you want to share your location with at the top of the conversation, then tap Share My Location.
3. Decide how long you want to share your location.

Tap Indefinitely if you want to share your location until you manually stop sharing it.
4. Tap  to send your location. (Or tap  if you change your mind.)

When you share your location in a group conversation and then add other people to the group, you can reshare your location to let everyone see where you are.

When you want to share your location in an SMS conversation, [send a pinned location](#) instead.

Stop sharing your location

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.

2. Open a conversation, then do one of the following:

- Tap the message with your shared location, then tap Stop Sharing My Location.
- Tap the name of the person you're sharing your location with at the top of the conversation, then tap Stop Sharing or Stop Sharing My Location.

The previous bubbles in the conversation no longer display a map.

Ask for someone else's location

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation with one other person, then do one of the following:
 - Tap , tap Location, then tap Request.
 - Send a message that ends with the question, "Where are you?" then tap Request Location (above the keyboard).
 - Tap the name of the person whose location you want at the top of the conversation, then tap Request Location.
3. Tap  to send your request.

After someone shares their location with you, their location appears below their name at the top of the conversation. Tap their name to see where they are on a map. Tap the map to enlarge it.

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren't available in all countries or regions. If you set up location sharing and others still can't see your location, make sure you've allowed access. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My, then choose an option. See [Control the location information you share](#).

Send a pinned location

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Start a new message or open a conversation, tap , then tap Location.
3. Tap , then drag the map until the pin is in the right place.
4. Tap Send Pin, then tap  to send your pin.

Messages uses the Find My app when you share your location. Learn how to [share your location](#) and [locate someone](#).

Turn read receipts on or off in Messages on iPad

You can use read receipts to automatically let someone know when you've seen their text messages.

When read receipts are turned on, the sender sees the word "Read" below messages they've sent to you, indicating that you've read their message. If you haven't read their message, the sender sees "Delivered."

You can turn on read receipts for everyone or for individual contacts.

Note: To use read receipts, you and your recipient must turn on [iMessage](#).

Turn on read receipts

You can turn on read receipts to let everyone know when you've opened their messages.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Turn on Send Read Receipts.

Note: If you turned off read receipts for a particular contact, you have to turn the setting back on for that one contact individually. (See [Turn on read receipts for one person](#), below.)

Turn off read receipts

If you don't want others to know that you've opened their messages, you can turn off read receipts.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Turn off Send Read Receipts.

Note: This action affects only those conversations with contacts whose read receipts you never turned on individually. (See [Turn off read receipts for one person](#), below.)

Turn on read receipts for one person

You can turn on read receipts in a conversation to let that one recipient know when you've seen their incoming messages, even if you turned off read receipts generally.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the number or name of the person you're communicating with at the top of the conversation.
3. Turn on Send Read Receipts.

Turn off read receipts for one person

If you turned on read receipts for an individual, but you want them to stop getting read receipts, you can turn the setting off for that one contact.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the number or name of the person you're communicating with at the top of the conversation.
3. Turn off Send Read Receipts.

Get read receipts when someone else sees your messages

You can't turn on read receipts for anyone but yourself. To receive read receipts when your messages are opened, ask the recipient to turn them on. See [Turn on read receipts for one person](#), above.

Change message notifications on iPad

You can change whether or not you're notified about text messages you receive, and how the notifications appear or sound. For example, you can turn off message notifications so you aren't distracted by notification sounds when you're in class or other quiet settings, or assign a special sound for certain contacts so you know when you get a message from them.

Pause all notifications

You can temporarily stop notifications for all apps by turning on Do Not Disturb (or another [Focus](#)). Your status appears in the Messages app to let people know you're not receiving messages.

1. [Open Control Center](#) on your iPad.
2. Tap Focus, then tap Do Not Disturb.

Note: If you want to allow urgent messages to get through, go to Settings  > Notifications > Messages, then turn on Time Sensitive Notifications.



Stop all notifications

You can stop getting notified about activity in the Messages app while continuing to receive messages. When you're ready to read them, you can open Messages to see the texts you missed while notifications were off, and [catch up on messages you missed](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications > Messages.
2. Turn off Allow Notifications.

When you want to get notified again, turn on Allow Notifications. If you also want to hear them, make sure the Ring/Silent switch isn't in [Silent mode](#) and your [volume](#) is audible.

You can also stop notifications from other Apple apps and third-party apps. See [Change notification settings](#).

Mute sounds for sent and received messages

When you send a message, a swoosh sound plays by default. When you receive a message, a tone plays. If you don't want to hear these sounds, you can set your text tone to None.

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications > Messages.
2. Tap Sounds, then tap None (below Alert Tones).

You can also put the Ring/Silent switch in [Silent mode](#).

Note: The None and the Ring/Silent switch setting affect both incoming and outgoing sounds. (You can't mute only one.)

See also [Flash the indicator light for notifications](#).

Change the sound for notifications

You can choose a tone or sound for alerts and how loud it is.

1. Go to Settings  > Sounds
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Make notifications quieter or louder:* Adjust the volume with the slider.
 - *Choose a tone or sound:* Tap Text Tone, then tap a sound below Alert Tones (or tap Tone Store to download one).

Tip: The tone you choose applies to both the Messages app and other apps that have notifications on, such as Mail, Phone, and other Apple or third-party apps. To change it just for the Messages app, go to Settings > Notifications > Messages, then tap Sounds.

You can set how many times to repeat a notification (from Never to 10 Times) in Settings > Notifications > Messages > Customize Notifications.

Change the notification sound for certain people

You can choose a specific sound to play when you get a message from one specific contact.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the number or name of the person you're communicating with at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Info , tap Edit, then tap Text Tone.

If you don't see Edit, tap Create New Contact or Add to Existing Contact.

4. Do any of the following:
 - *Specify a tone or sound:* Tap a sound below Alert Tones (or tap Tone Store to download one).
 - *Mute the sound:* Tap None below Alert Tones.
 - *Mute notifications for this conversation:* Tap None below both Haptics and Alert Tones.

To give this contact the option to override a Focus, so any important messages can get through, turn on Emergency Bypass. You might turn it on for a family member, caretaker, or colleague, for example.

Mute one conversation

You can stop getting notifications for a conversation while you continue to receive its messages.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In the Messages list, do one of the following:
 - Swipe left on a conversation, then tap .
 - Touch and hold a conversation, then tap Hide Alerts.

To completely stop getting messages for one conversation, you can [block a specific person or number](#) or [leave a group conversation](#).

Announce messages

Siri can [announce messages](#) on your iPad speaker or supported headphones.

To hear incoming messages on MFi hearing devices, see [Announce calls and notifications for specific apps](#).

To let people know you've read their messages, see [Turn read receipts on or off](#).

Block, filter, and report messages on iPad

You can reduce the number of unwanted text messages you receive when you block individuals, filter unknown senders, and report spam or junk messages.

Note: A known sender is anyone you've added to the Contacts app or sent a message to.

Block messages from a specific person or phone number

When you block a specific contact or phone number, messages from that person or number aren't delivered. (The person sending the message doesn't know that their message was blocked.)

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In a Messages conversation, tap the name or number at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Info , scroll down, then tap Block this Caller.

Tip: Instead of blocking all the senders in a group conversation, you can simply [leave it](#) or [stop its notifications](#).

If you're still having trouble with unwanted messages, see the Apple Support article [Block phone numbers, contacts, and emails on your iPhone or iPad](#)

Filter messages from unknown senders

With [iMessage](#), you can prevent unknown senders from texting you directly. Their messages are filtered to another folder, and you don't get notified about them.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Scroll down to Message Filtering, then turn on Filter Unknown Senders.

If this setting is on and you're missing a message, check to see if it was filtered to Unknown Senders. Tap  in the top-left corner of the screen, then tap Unknown Senders.

Note: You can't open any links sent by an unknown sender until you make them a known sender—by adding them to your contacts or replying to the message.

Report spam or junk messages

When you use [iMessage](#), you can report spam or junk messages to Apple—the report includes the sender's information and message. Depending on your carrier and country or region, reporting spam you receive with SMS, MMS, or RCS shares this information with your carrier and its affiliates.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.

2. Do one of the following:

- *If you haven't opened the message:* Swipe left on the message, tap , then tap Delete and Report Junk.
 - *If you've already opened the message:* A Report Junk link appears at the bottom of any message from any unknown sender. Tap Report Junk, then tap Delete and Report Junk.
- Note:* You can't report a message after you've replied to it.
- *If you don't see the option to report spam or junk messages (forwarded from your iPhone, that you received by SMS, MMS, or RCS):* Contact your carrier. See the Apple Support article [Wireless carrier support and features for iPhone](#).

If you received the message with iMessage, it's sent to Apple with the sender's information, and the message is permanently deleted from your iPad.

If you accidentally report and delete messages, you can [recover](#) them.

Reporting junk or spam doesn't *prevent* the sender from sending messages, but you can [block the number](#) to stop receiving them.

To decrease incoming spam or junk messages from new numbers, you can filter them. See [Filter messages from unknown senders](#), above.

Manage your list of blocked contacts

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Tap Blocked Contacts, then do any of the following:
 - *Unblock a number you've blocked:* Swipe left on a number in the list, then tap Unblock. Or tap Edit, then tap .
 - *Add additional contacts or numbers directly to the list:* Scroll down, then tap Add New.

Turn off business alerts

Some businesses send alerts and updates on your orders and other transactions if you've chosen to receive them—for example, "We've received your order" or "Order Shipped." You can turn these off.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. To turn off Apple Messages for Business, tap Business Messages, then turn Business Updates off.

You can also report a message as junk when you receive it. Tap Report Junk in the conversation, then tap Delete and Report Junk. Tap the sender at the top of the conversation, and turn on Hide Alerts.

See [Apple Messages for Business & Privacy](#).

To learn about other ways you can report and prevent unwanted messages, see the Apple Support article [Recognize and avoid phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams](#).

Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="GenerativeKeywords __">

ipde-needs-review

You can delete text messages, attachments, and entire conversations from your iPad anytime, without affecting what your recipients see.

Tip: Use [Undo send](#) to retract (within 2 minutes) a message you sent accidentally, deleting it from both your phone *and* your recipient's phone.

Deleted messages and attachments remain in your Recently Deleted folder for up to 30 days, and you can [recover](#) them.

Delete messages and attachments

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Open a conversation, touch and hold a message bubble or attachment, then tap More.
3. Select the messages or attachments you want to delete, then tap .

You can also [delete a conversation](#) entirely.

Delete multiple attachments of the same type

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the name of the person or group you're communicating with at the top of a conversation.
3. Scroll down to a category, such as Photos, then tap See All.
4. Tap Select, tap each item you want to delete, then tap Delete.

Delete a conversation

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:
 - Swipe left on the conversation, then tap .
 - Touch and hold the conversation, then tap Delete.

Delete multiple conversations

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:
 - Tap Edit in the top-left corner.
 - Tap  near the top-left corner.
3. Tap Select Messages, choose the conversations you want to delete, then tap Delete.

Permanently remove recently deleted messages and attachments

Deleted messages and attachments remain in the Recently Deleted folder for 30 days, but you can permanently remove them before that.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:
 - Tap Edit in the top-left corner, then tap Show Recently Deleted.
 - Tap  in the top-left corner, then tap Recently Deleted.

If you're in a conversation, tap  to return to the conversation list.

3. Select the conversations whose messages you want to delete permanently, tap Delete, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Automatically delete old messages

You can delete messages and attachments that are older than 30 days or a year old, on an ongoing basis.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Scroll down, tap Keep Messages (below Message History), then choose an option.

Important: If you choose an option other than Forever, your conversations (including all attachments) are automatically removed after the specified time period elapses.

If you use [Messages in iCloud](#), deleting a message or conversation on your iPad deletes it from all your devices where Messages in iCloud is on. See [Keep your messages up to date with iCloud](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Note: Deleting messages only affects your iPad and other Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. You can't delete messages, attachments, and conversations for anyone else.

To delete everything (not just your messages), see [Erase iPad](#).

Recover deleted messages in Messages on iPad

You can recover deleted messages on your iPad.

You can restore messages you deleted for up to 30 days.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
 2. In the Messages conversation list, do one of the following:
 - Tap Edit in the top-left corner, then tap Show Recently Deleted.
 - Tap  in the top-left corner, then tap Recently Deleted.
- If you're in a conversation, tap  to return to the conversation list.
3. Select the conversations whose messages you want to restore, then tap Recover.
 4. Tap Recover Messages.

If you use [Messages in iCloud](#), recovering a message or conversation on your iPad recovers it on all your devices where Messages in iCloud is on. See [Keep your messages up to date with iCloud](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Deleting and recovering messages changes only your own Messages conversations where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#), not those of your recipients.

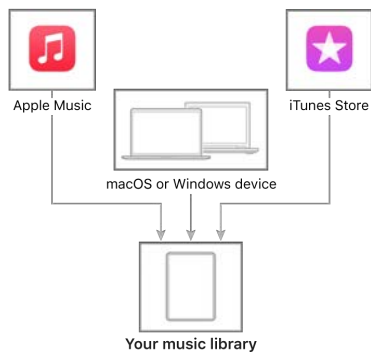
Once you recover a blocked conversation whose participants haven't all [turned on iMessage](#), incoming messages will no longer be automatically deleted.

Note: Any message that you delete from a conversation using [Undo Send](#) is permanently deleted. Audio messages that expire before being saved aren't recoverable. See [Send and receive audio messages](#).

Music

Get music on iPad

Enjoy music stored on iPad as well as music streamed over the internet. You can build a music library—your collection of songs and albums—in many ways.



Subscribe to Apple Music

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can start listening to millions of songs from the Apple Music catalog right away. To access your music library on all your devices, turn on Sync Library (go to Settings  > Apps > Music). Then, [add and download songs](#) so that you can play your favorites any time, even when you're offline.

Tip: Purchase an Apple Music family subscription, and everyone in your Family Sharing group can [share an Apple Music subscription](#).

Buy music from the iTunes Store

If you don't subscribe to Apple Music and you want to add your favorite songs or albums, you can [buy and download music](#) from the iTunes Store. And, if you previously purchased items from the iTunes Store, you can [download them](#) to your authorized computers and devices (up to 10 total).

Transfer music from your Mac or Windows device

Connect your Mac or Windows device to transfer and update music between your iPad and your device. To [sync supported content](#), use Music (macOS 10.15 or later) or iTunes (macOS 10.14 or earlier and Windows devices).

Note: Services and features aren't available in all countries or regions, and features may vary by region. Additional charges may apply when using a cellular connection.

Apple Music

Subscribe to Apple Music on iPad

Apple Music is an ad-free streaming music service that lets you play millions of songs and your music library. As a subscriber, you can listen any time—online or off—and create your own playlists, stream and download lossless and Dolby Atmos music, get personalized recommendations, follow artists, see music your friends are listening to, watch exclusive video content, and more.

You can subscribe to Apple Music or to Apple One, which includes Apple Music and other services. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

Note: Apple Music, Apple One, lossless, and Dolby Atmos aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Subscribe to Apple Music

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to subscribe to Apple Music.

If you don't subscribe to Apple Music when you first open the Music app, you can subscribe later—go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then tap Join Apple Music.

New subscribers can start a trial and cancel at any time. If you end your Apple Music subscription, you can no longer stream Apple Music songs or play Apple Music songs you downloaded.

Qualified students can purchase a student subscription at a discounted price. See the Apple Support article [Get an Apple Music student subscription](#).

Share Apple Music with family members

When you subscribe to Apple Music, Apple One Family, or Apple One Premier, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share Apple Music with up to five other family members. Once your [family is set up](#), your family group doesn't need to do anything—Apple Music is available to them the first time they open the Music app after your subscription begins.

If you [join a family group](#) that subscribes to Apple Music, Apple One Family, or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple Music with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, [leave a Family Sharing group](#), or [remove a member from a Family Sharing group](#).

Change or cancel your Apple Music subscription

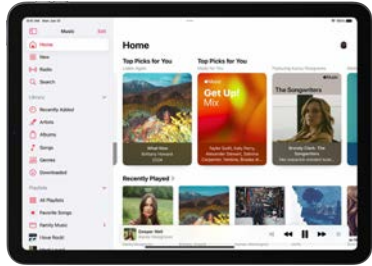
You can change your subscription plan or cancel your subscription.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap Manage Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you're not a subscriber, you can use Music to play music synced to iPad from a Mac or a Windows device, play and download previous iTunes Store purchases, and play Apple Music radio for free.

Get personalized recommendations in Music on iPad

As soon as you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can make selections so that you see playlists, albums, and songs based on your preferences. If you don't want Music to make recommendations, you can also turn off your listening history.



Select your favorite genres and artists

When you first tap Home in the sidebar, you're asked to tell Apple Music what you like. Apple Music uses these preferences when recommending music.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the genres you like (double-tap those you love, and touch and hold the genres you don't care for).
3. Tap Next, then do the same with the artists that appear.

Tell Apple Music to ignore your listening habits

You can turn off your listening history so that Apple Music ignores your listening habits and adjusts new music recommendations and the contents of Replay playlists.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music.
2. Turn off Use Listening History.

This action also hides all the music you play from your followers on Apple Music. To hide only certain playlists or albums, see [Hide music from your followers](#).

Mark items as favorites in Apple Music on iPad

You can mark items as "favorites" in Music to make them easier to find. If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can get notifications on new releases from your favorite artists, and easily get back to their music from the Home tab.

Add favorite playlists, artists, albums, and songs

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Add a favorite playlist:* Touch and hold a playlist or tap  next to a playlist, then tap Favorite.
 - *Add a favorite artist:* Go to an artist page, then tap  at the top of the screen.
When you mark an artist as a favorite, they appear below Favorite Artists in Home, and their music is recommended more often.
 - *Add a favorite album:* Touch and hold an album, then choose Favorite. Or tap an album, tap , then tap Favorite.
 - *Add a favorite song:* Touch and hold a song or tap  next to a song, then tap Favorite. Or on the Now Playing screen, tap .

When you mark a song as a favorite, it appears in the Favorite Songs playlist in the sidebar. To view that playlist, tap Library, then tap Playlists.

You can easily find favorite items in your music library. Below Library in the sidebar, choose Playlists, Artists, Albums, or Songs, tap , then choose Favorites.

Remove playlists, artists, albums, and songs as favorites

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Library in the sidebar, choose Playlists, Artists, Albums, or Songs, tap , then choose Favorites
3. Touch and hold a playlist, artist, album, or song, then tap Undo Favorite.

Add music to iPad and listen offline

As soon as you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can add and download songs and videos from Apple Music to your music library. You can stream music you add to iPad when you have an internet connection. To play music when you're not connected to the internet, you need to download it first.

Add music from Apple Music to your library

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.

2. Do any of the following:

- Touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then tap Add to Library.
- When viewing the contents of an album or playlist, tap  near the top of the screen to add the album or playlist, or tap  next to a song, then tap Add to Library to add that song.
- On the Now Playing screen, tap , then tap Add to Library.

Music you add to your iPad is also added to other devices if you're signed in to the same Apple Account and have Sync Library turned on (go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library).

Download music from Apple Music to your iPad

Before you can download music from Apple Music to your library, you need to turn on Sync Library. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library. Then follow these steps to download music.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Download a song, album, or playlist:* Touch and hold music you added to your library, then tap Download.
After you add a playlist or album, you can also tap  at the top of the screen.
- *Always download music:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Automatic Downloads.
Songs you add are automatically downloaded to iPad.
- *See download progress:* On the Library screen, tap Downloaded Music, then tap Downloading.

Note: If the music you're downloading is available in Dolby Atmos, the Dolby icon  appears next to the item, and you can download it either in Dolby Atmos or in stereo. To download music in Dolby Atmos when available, go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Download in Dolby Atmos. See [Play Dolby Atmos music](#).

Delete music from your library

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.

2. Touch and hold the song, album, playlist, or music video, then tap Delete from Library.

Manage storage space

To manage storage space, do any of the following:

- *Remove music and videos stored on iPad:* Go to the Music app  on your iPad, touch and hold a song, album, playlist, music video, TV show, or movie that you've downloaded, tap Remove, then tap Remove Downloads.
The item is removed from iPad, but not from your music library on your other devices.
- *Free up music storage:* If iPad is low on storage space, you can automatically remove downloaded music that you haven't played in a while. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music > Optimize Storage.
- *Remove all songs or certain artists from iPad:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music > Downloaded Music, tap Edit, then tap  next to All Songs or the artists whose music you want to delete.
- *Remove all Apple Music songs from iPad:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn off Sync Library.

The songs are removed from iPad but remain in your music library on your other devices. Music you purchased or synced also remains.

Choose cellular data options for Music

If you have a Wi-Fi + Cellular model of iPad, you can choose cellular data options.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Cellular Data.

2. Do any of the following:

- Turn Download over Cellular on or off.
- Tap Audio Quality, turn on Lossless Audio, then tap Cellular Streaming to choose a setting (None, High Efficiency, High Quality, Lossless, or High-Resolution Lossless).
High Quality, Lossless, and High-Resolution Lossless use significantly more cellular data than High Efficiency, which may incur additional charges from your cellular carrier. Songs may also take longer to start playing.

Create a profile to share

Create an Apple Music profile on iPad

After you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can create an Apple Music profile that features your favorite playlists and what you're currently listening to. You can share your profile with everyone or only friends you invite.

After you create a profile, you can choose the playlists you want to share. Additionally, you can view profiles created by friends or request to follow them and see what they're listening to.

Create a profile

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap .
3. Tap Set up Profile, then follow the onscreen instructions to create a profile.

After you finish setting up your profile, you can [find friends](#) whose music profile you'd like to follow or [choose who you share music with](#) (so you can show friends what you're listening to).

Note: If you're the organizer of a Family Sharing group, you can allow children ages 13 to 18 to create Apple Music profiles (or prevent them from doing so). Children under 13 can't create Apple Music profiles. (Age restrictions vary by region.) See [Block adult content](#).

Edit your profile

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile at the top of the screen, then tap Edit to make updates.

You can edit your profile to [choose who you share music with](#) or to [choose music to share with your followers](#).

Delete your profile

You can delete your profile so that your playlists and music no longer appear in searches, and your music or profile isn't visible to your followers.

Note: Your Apple Music subscription, library, and playlists aren't affected if you delete your profile, but you're no longer able to see what your friends are listening to.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile at the top of the screen, then tap Edit.
4. Scroll to the bottom, then tap Delete Profile.

If you create your profile again within 90 days, your previous information and followers will be restored.

Note: If you delete your profile, it might take several minutes before it's no longer visible to your followers or in searches.

Share music with friends on iPad

After you [create an Apple Music profile](#), you can share music with your friends. You can allow anyone to follow you or just those you choose, and block others.

Choose music to share with your followers

By default, your followers see the playlists you create, but you can choose not to share some playlists.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, tap Edit, then turn Shared Playlists on or off.

To share playlists with people who don't follow you, touch and hold a playlist, then tap Share Playlist.

Note: If you make changes to music you share—edit or stop sharing a playlist, for example—those changes are reflected on your followers' devices.

Hide music from your followers

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile.
4. Touch and hold the playlist or album (below Listening To).
5. Tap Hide from Profile.

The listening history for this item won't appear in your profile or be visible to the people who follow you. If you don't want your followers to see any of the music you listen to, tap Edit on the profile screen, then turn off Listening To at the bottom of the screen.

Note: It may take up to 10 minutes before music you hide is no longer visible to your followers.

To hide all the music you play from your followers on Apple Music, see [Tell Apple Music to ignore your listening habits](#).

Share your profile

You can share your profile using email, Messages, or another app you choose.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile.
4. Tap , tap Share Profile, then choose a sharing option.

You can also share the profile of anyone you follow, or who follows you.

Choose who you share music with

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, tap Edit, then tap People You Approve if you want to be followed only by people you choose. (Everyone includes all Apple Music subscribers who have a profile.)

For additional privacy settings, see [Hide music from your followers](#).

Respond to follow requests

If someone requests to follow you, you can accept or decline the request. You receive requests only if you select People You Approve in your profile. See [Choose who you share music with](#).

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap Follow Requests, then accept or decline the requests.

You may receive follow requests in other ways—as a link in an email or a text message, for example. To accept, tap the link.

Turn on or off notifications about your friends' activity

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn on (or off) Friend Activity.

When the option is on, you get notified when friends follow you and add your playlists.

Prevent users from following you

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, touch and hold a profile picture, then choose Block.

People you block won't see your music or be able to find your profile. They can still play your shared playlists if they added them to their library.

Report a concern

If you have a concern about a follower, touch and hold their profile picture, then tap Report a Concern.

See what friends are listening to in Music on iPad

After you [create an Apple Music profile](#), you can find and follow friends to see what they're listening to.

Choose how to find friends

Before you can choose which friends to share music with, you need to allow Music to access your contacts.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Allow Apple Music access to your contacts:* Select the Contacts on Apple Music option so Apple Music can access your contacts and recommend new friends to you periodically.
 - *Allow friends to find you by Apple Account:* Select the Allow Finding by Apple Account option and friends who have your Apple Account information can see you as a recommended friend.

Follow friends

There are several ways to follow people:

- Add friends when you [set up a profile](#).
- After you set up your profile, swipe to the bottom of the profile screen, tap Follow More Friends, then tap Follow next to those you want to follow.

You can follow friends who are in your contacts list and who use Apple Music.

- On the profile screen, touch and hold a profile picture, then tap Follow.
- Tap Search, enter a friend's name, tap it in the results, then tap Follow.

Note: You can only find friends who have an Apple Music profile using Search. Additionally, you must be 13 years or older to view Apple Music profiles. (Age restrictions vary by region.)

To see the people you're following and those who follow you, open the profile screen, then swipe up.

If a profile picture has a lock on it, you need to ask that person to follow them. After your request is accepted, you see the person's shared playlists and the music they're listening to.

See what your friends are listening to

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then do any of the following:
 - *See what your friends are listening to:* Scroll down to Friends Are Listening To, then tap an item to play it.
 - *Listen to a mix of songs your friends are listening to:* Swipe left on Made For You, then tap Friends Mix.
 - *See what a follower or person you follow is listening to:* Tap  or your profile picture, then tap View Profile. Tap a person's profile picture to see shared playlists and music they're listening to. You also see their followers and the people they follow.

Stop following friends

You can stop following a friend if you no longer want to see what they're listening to.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, touch and hold the profile picture of a person you follow, then tap Unfollow.

Find and play music

Find music

Search for music on iPad

Using Search, you can quickly browse through music categories, see recent searches, and search Apple Music or your library.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Search in the sidebar, then do any of the following:
 - Tap a category such as Pop or Fitness.
 - Tap the search field to quickly find items you recently searched for—a song or artist, for example.
 - Tap the search field, tap Apple Music, then enter what you're searching for (such as a song, artist, or lyric).
Tip: You can search for a song in Apple Music based on its lyrics. In the search field, enter a few of the words you remember to find a song.
 - Tap the search field, tap Library, then enter what you're searching for (such as a song, album, or playlist).
3. Tap a result to play it.

Say something like: "Play the song with the lyrics" and then say a key phrase from the lyrics.[Learn how to use Siri.](#)



Explicit lyrics and lyrics search aren't available in all countries or regions.

Find music shared with you on iPad

When a friend [shares music with you in the Messages app](#), you can easily find it in Shared with You in the Music app.

Note: Music must be turned on in Settings  > Apps > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, swipe up to Shared with You, then do any of the following:
 - Tap a song to listen to it.
 - Tap the name of the person, people, or group that shared the song to reply to them using Messages.
 - Touch and hold the song to take other actions—for example, add it to your library, create a station, reply to the sender, or remove it.

Find new music with Apple Music on iPad

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can browse new and noteworthy music, music videos, playlists, and more.



Find new Apple Music

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap New to find new music, then do any of the following:
 - *Explore featured music:* Swipe through featured songs and videos at the top of the screen.
 - *Browse playlists created by music experts:* Tap one of the many playlists created by music experts.
 - *See what's hot:* Tap a song below the Trending Songs heading. Swipe left to see more songs.
 - *Explore new music:* Swipe through the albums listed below New Releases.
 - *Listen to the top songs from around the world:* Tap one of the Daily Top 100 playlists. These playlists reflect the day's most popular songs in countries across the globe.
 - *Listen to songs from upcoming albums:* Tap an album below Coming Soon, then tap an available song to play it.
 - *Watch music videos:* Tap Music Videos, then tap a featured music video or playlist of music videos.
 - *Play the day's most popular songs:* Tap Charts, then tap a song, playlist, album, or music video to play it. Tap All Genres at the top of the screen to see the top songs and music videos in a genre you choose.
 - *Browse your favorite genres:* Tap Browse by Genre, choose a genre, then tap a featured playlist, song, album, artist, or radio station to enjoy music handpicked by music experts.
 - *Play music that matches your mood:* Tap Moods and Activities, then tap a playlist such as Feel Good, Romance, or Party.

Note: To see more music, swipe left on the album art. To see all the music in a section—New Releases, for example—tap > next to the section's name.

Discover your most-played music of the year

For every year you've subscribed to Apple Music (and played enough music to become eligible), Apple Music creates a Replay personal chart, ranking the songs you've played the most.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, swipe down to Replay: Your Top Songs by Year, then tap a year.

You can also find deeper insights into your listening throughout the year at replay.music.apple.com. See the Apple Support article [How to get your Apple Music Replay](#).

Discover music you've never played before

Using your listening history and taste profile, Apple Music recommends music you may like that you've never played before.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then swipe down to Stations for You.
3. Tap Discovery Station, then choose an option.

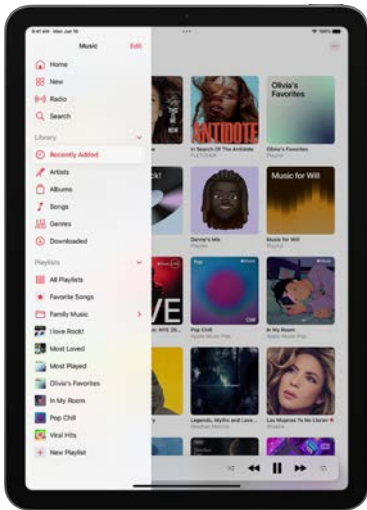
Turn on or off new music notifications

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn on (or off) New Music.

Play music

Play music on iPad

Play music you added or downloaded from Apple Music, music and videos you synced to iPad, and your iTunes Store purchases.



Play songs from your library

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Library, then tap a category, such as Albums or Songs; tap Downloaded to view only music stored on iPad.
Tip: To play songs from an artist's entire catalog—mixing hits and deep cuts—go to an artist page, then tap  next to the artist's name.
3. Scroll to browse—or type in the search field to filter your results—to find what you want to play.
4. Tap an item, then tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle an album or playlist.

You can also touch and hold a playlist or album, then tap Play.

To change the list of Library categories, tap Edit, then select categories you'd like to add, such as Genres and Compilations. Tap any existing categories to remove them.

Stream recommended songs

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following to find music you want to play:
 - *View recommendations tailored for you:* Tap Home in the sidebar, then tap a playlist or album.
 - *See what's new in Apple Music:* Tap New in the sidebar, then find music by mood, new releases, charts, and more.
 - *Search the Apple Music catalog:* See [Search for music](#).
3. Tap an item, then tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle an album or playlist.

You can also touch and hold a playlist or album, then tap Play.

Play music from the Lock Screen or when using another app

[Open Control Center](#), then tap the audio card.



Play music shared on a nearby computer

If a computer on your network shares music through Home Sharing, you can stream its music to your iPad.

1. On your iPad, go to Settings  > Apps > Music, tap Sign In below Home Sharing, then sign in to your Apple Account.
2. Go to the Music app , tap Library > Home Sharing, then choose a shared library.

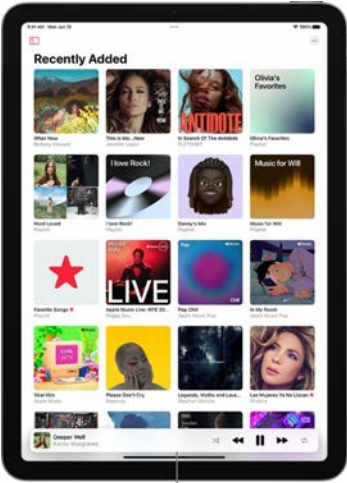
Sort your music

- 1. Go to the Music app on your iPad.
- 2. Tap Library, then tap Playlists, Albums, Songs, TV & Movies, or Music Videos.
- 3. Tap , then choose a sorting method, such as Title, Artist, Date Added, or Release Date.

Use the music player controls on iPad
You can play and control music in the Music app in two different ways—the MiniPlayer and the Now Playing screen.

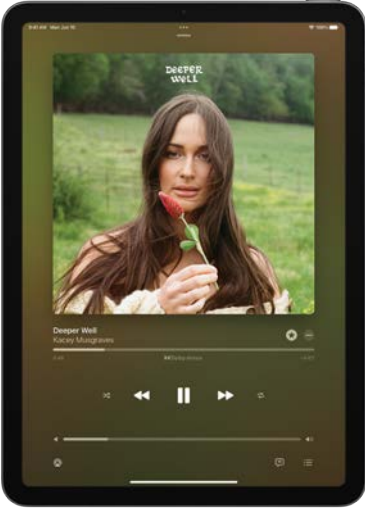
Use the MiniPlayer

The MiniPlayer shows the song that’s currently playing. You can use the MiniPlayer to play or pause music, or skip to the next track.



Tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.

Use the controls in the Now Playing screen



- 1. Go to the Music app on your iPad.
- 2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open to the Now Playing screen.
- 3. Do any of the following:
 - *Adjust the volume:* Drag the volume slider.
You can also use the volume buttons on the side of iPad.
 - *Scrub to any point in a song:* Drag the playhead.
 - *Navigate to the artist, album, or playlist:* Tap the artist name below the song title, then choose an option.
 - *Turn animated album cover art on or off:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then tap Animated Art and choose an option.

For additional control over your music, tap any of these buttons:

Control	Description
---------	-------------

	Dismiss the Now Playing screen.
	Mark the song as a favorite. See Mark items as favorites .
	Tap for more options.
	Go back to the beginning of the song. Tap again to play the previous song in an album or playlist. Touch and hold to rewind through the current song.
	Pause playback.
	Play the current song.
	Skip to the next song. Touch and hold to fast-forward through the current song.
	Show time-synced lyrics (lyrics not available for all songs).
	Stream music to Bluetooth or AirPlay-enabled devices.
	Show the queue .

Stream music to Bluetooth® or AirPlay-enabled devices

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then choose a device.

See [Play audio on HomePod and other wireless speakers](#).

Note: You can play the same music on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices, such as two or more HomePod speakers. You can also pair two sets of AirPods to one iPad and enjoy the same song or movie along with a friend. See [Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices](#) in this user guide and [Share audio with AirPods and Beats headphones](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

Use Siri to play music on iPad

[Apple Music subscribers](#) can use Siri to control music playback on iPad.

[Activate Siri](#), then make your request. You can use Siri in a wide variety of ways:

- *Play Apple Music:* You can play any song, artist, album, playlist, or station. Say, for example, “Play ‘Party Girls’ by Victoria Monét” or “Play Tainy.”
- *Play popular songs from different genres or years:* Say “Play the top songs from 1990.”
- *Play music on AirPlay-enabled devices in a specific room:* Say something like “Play the latest album by Loraine James in the living room.”
- *Play music picked just for you:* Say something like “Play something I like” or “Play my Chill Mix.”
- *Let Apple Music help you find music that’s new to you:* Say “Play my Discovery Station.”
- *Add music from Apple Music to your library:* Say, for example, “Add ‘Red Flag’ by Brittany Howard to my library.” Or while playing something, say “Add this to my library.” (Apple Music subscription required.)
- *Add a song or album to a playlist:* While playing a song, say something like “Add this song to my Workout playlist” or “Add this album to my Sunday Morning playlist.”
- *Find out more about the current song:* Say “What’s playing?”, “Who sings this song?”, or “Who is this song by?”

Tip: You can also identify a song playing on or near iPad by [adding the Music Recognition control to Control Center](#). [Open Control Center](#), tap  at the top left, tap Add a Control at the bottom, then tap the Recognize Music icon. With a song playing, open Control Center, then tap .

- *Play songs based on their lyrics:* Say “Play the song with the lyrics” and then say a key phrase from the lyrics.

[Learn how to use Siri](#).

Siri can also help you find music in the iTunes Store. See [Get music, movies, and TV shows in the iTunes Store](#).

Play lossless audio in Music on iPad

[Apple Music subscribers](#) can access millions of tracks encoded using lossless audio compression.

Lossless compression is a form of compression that preserves all of the original data. Apple has developed its own lossless audio compression technology called Apple Lossless Audio Codec (ALAC). The entire Apple Music catalog is encoded using ALAC in resolutions ranging from 16-bit/44.1 kHz (CD Quality) up to 24-bit/192 kHz.

What you need to know about lossless in Apple Music

- Streaming lossless audio over a cellular or Wi-Fi network consumes significantly more data. And downloading lossless audio uses significantly more space on your device. Higher resolutions use more data than lower ones.
- AirPods, AirPods Pro, AirPods Max, and Beats wireless headphones use Apple AAC Bluetooth Codec to ensure excellent audio quality. However, Bluetooth® connections aren’t lossless.
- To get a lossless version of music that you already downloaded from Apple Music, just delete the music and redownload it from the Apple Music catalog.
- To play songs at sample rates higher than 48 kHz on iPad, you need an external digital-to-analog converter.

Note: Apple Music and lossless aren’t available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Turn on Lossless Audio and choose audio quality settings

You can choose audio quality settings for cellular streaming, Wi-Fi streaming, and downloads.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music.
2. Tap Audio Quality, then tap Lossless Audio to turn it on or off.
3. Choose the audio quality for streaming and downloading audio.
 - Choose Lossless for a maximum resolution of 24-bit/48 kHz.
 - Choose Hi-Res Lossless for a maximum resolution of 24-bit/192 kHz.

The audio quality of streamed music depends on song availability, network conditions, and the capability of connected headphones or speakers.

Identify lossless music

The Lossless icon  appears on album pages when the music is available in lossless audio.

To see the Lossless icon for music on the Now Playing screen, go to Settings  > Apps > Music > Audio Quality, then turn on Lossless Audio.

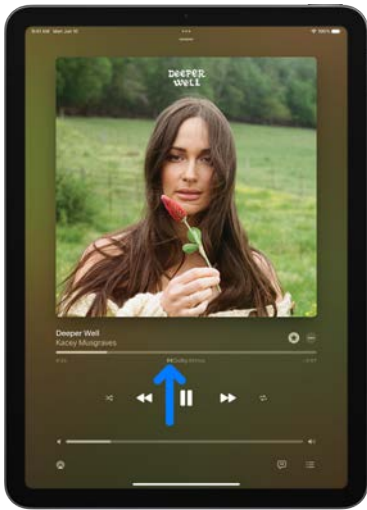
For more information, see the Apple Support article [About lossless audio in Apple Music](#).

Play Spatial Audio in Dolby Atmos in Music on iPad

[Apple Music subscribers](#) can play available tracks in Dolby Atmos, which creates an immersive, three-dimensional audio experience on stereo headphones and speakers or receivers compatible with Dolby Atmos.

Albums available in Dolby Atmos have the Dolby Atmos icon . If a track is playing in Dolby Atmos, the icon also appears on the Now Playing screen.

Note: Apple Music and Dolby Atmos aren’t available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).



Turn on Dolby Atmos

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music.
2. Tap Dolby Atmos, then choose Automatic or Always On.
 - *Automatic:* Plays Dolby Atmos whenever iPad is connected to compatible headphones such as AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, or to speakers or receivers compatible with Dolby Atmos.
 - *Always On:* Plays Dolby Atmos on any headphones or speakers. The Music app will attempt to play Dolby Atmos tracks on any headphones or speakers connected to iPad.

Dolby Atmos will play on any headphones, but not all speakers will play Dolby Atmos as intended.

Control Spatial Audio and head tracking on iPad

When you play supported music on your iPad with AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can use Spatial Audio and head tracking to create an immersive, theater-like environment with sound that surrounds you. Follow these steps to control Spatial Audio and head tracking in Control Center.

1. Wear your AirPods, then [open Control Center](#).
2. Touch and hold the volume control, then tap Spatial Audio at the lower right.
3. Tap one of the following:
 - *Off:* Turns off both Spatial Audio and head tracking.
 - *Fixed:* Turns on Spatial Audio without head tracking.
 - *Head Tracked:* Turns on both Spatial Audio and head tracking. This setting allows the sound to follow the movement of your head.

The settings you choose are saved and applied automatically the next time you use that app. For example, if you tap Fixed while listening to a song in Apple Music, the Fixed setting is automatically used the next time you play a song in Apple Music.

Note: To disable head tracking for all apps on your iPad, go to Settings > Accessibility > AirPods, tap your AirPods, then turn off Follow iPad.

Download songs in Dolby Atmos

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music.
2. Turn on Download in Dolby Atmos.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [About Spatial Audio with Dolby Atmos in Apple Music](#).

Listen to radio stations in Music on iPad

Apple Music features three world-class radio stations (Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, and Apple Music Country), as well as a collection of stations based on different genres. These stations provide a great way to explore and enjoy new music or keep up with your favorites.

You can also create your own custom stations, based on your pick of artist, song, or genre.

In addition to radio, you can play Apple Music TV, a free, 24-hour curated livestream of popular new music videos that includes exclusive premieres, music video blocks, live shows and events, chart countdowns, and more.

Play Apple Music radio

You must be signed in to your Apple Account, but you don't need to [subscribe to Apple Music](#), to play live Apple Music radio (Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, or Apple Music Country) and Apple Music TV.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Radio in the sidebar, then tap one of the currently playing Apple Music radio stations.

Note: Because Apple Music radio stations are live radio, you can't rewind or skip songs.

Choose a radio station by genre

You must [subscribe to Apple Music](#) to play curated radio stations, such as Stations by Genre.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Radio in the sidebar, then tap a genre listed below More to Explore.
3. Tap a featured station.

Create a station

You can create a radio station based on a particular artist or song. Chances are, if you like that artist or song, you'll like the music the station plays.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold an artist or song.
3. Tap Create Station.

To create a station in Now Playing, tap , then tap Create Station.

Play broadcast radio stations

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Use Siri:* [Activate Siri](#), then say something like, "Play Wild 94.9" or "Tune in to ESPN Radio."
 - *Search for a station:* Tap Search, enter the station in the search field, then tap a result to play the station.
You can search for stations by name, call sign, frequency, and nickname.
 - *Choose a station in the Radio tab:* Tap Radio in the sidebar, swipe up, then choose a station below the Local Broadcasters or International Broadcasters heading.

Note: You don't need a subscription to Apple Music to play broadcast radio. Broadcast radio isn't available in all countries or regions and not all stations are available in all countries or regions.

Play music together using SharePlay on iPad

You can use SharePlay while playing music on a HomePod, Apple TV, or other third-party Bluetooth® speaker, and everyone can control the music with their iPad.

Before you begin

- The host must have an iPad with iPadOS 18 or later and be an Apple Music subscriber.
- Participants must have an iPad with iPadOS 18 or later, but don't need to have an Apple Music subscription.
- Everyone must have an internet connection and Bluetooth turned on.
- Everyone must allow their contacts to discover them when playing music to a speaker—go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Discoverable by Nearby Contacts if it isn't on already.

Start SharePlay from Music on your iPad

To use SharePlay to play music together, you (the host) start on your iPad.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then select a playback destination.
The music starts playing to the device you selected. See [Stream video and audio with AirPlay](#).
4. Tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, then tap .
A QR code appears; tap the QR code to enlarge it.
5. To begin controlling the music, participants can scan the QR code on your iPad.

Join SharePlay with the iPad camera

1. Go to the Camera app  on your iPad.
2. Point the camera at the QR code on an iPad that's already joined SharePlay.
A button appears below the picture of the QR code.
3. Tap the button, then tap Connect.
The host receives a notification and must tap  on their iPad to allow you to join.

Tip: After you approve a participant to join SharePlay, they're automatically approved the next time they join.

Leave SharePlay

Tap  at the bottom of the Now Playing screen, then tap Leave.

Play music together in the car using SharePlay and CarPlay on iPad

Using SharePlay and CarPlay, you and your passengers can all control the music that's playing in the car.

Passengers can join SharePlay in two ways: by tapping a notification on their iPad or by scanning a QR code, either on the CarPlay Now Playing screen or on the Now Playing screen of another passenger's iPad.

Before you begin

- The driver must have an iPad with iPadOS 17 or later and be an Apple Music subscriber.
- Passengers must have an iPad with iPadOS 17 or later, but don't need to have an Apple Music subscription.
- Everyone must allow their contacts to discover them when playing music in the car—go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Discoverable by Nearby Contacts if it isn't on already.

Start SharePlay with CarPlay on your iPad

To use SharePlay in the car, you and your passengers each play a part.

1. Begin playing music from your iPad using CarPlay.
A notification appears on the Lock Screen of passengers' iPad devices. After they tap Connect, you receive a notification in CarPlay.
2. Tap a passenger's name, then tap  to allow the passenger to choose and stream music from your iPad.
After you approve a passenger, they can join SharePlay in the future without going through the same process unless you end their access.

Use a QR code to join SharePlay

You can also let passengers join SharePlay over Bluetooth® by scanning a QR code.

1. On the Now Playing screen in CarPlay, tap .
A QR code appears on the CarPlay screen.
2. Ask a passenger to open the Camera app on their iPad and point the camera at the QR code.
A button appears below the picture of the QR code on their iPad to request a connection to SharePlay. The passenger taps the button, then taps Connect.
3. Tap  on the CarPlay screen to allow the passenger to join.

Use a QR code to add other passengers

If you're a passenger using SharePlay to control music in a car, you can invite other passengers while the driver focuses on the road.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Open the Now Playing screen, then tap  at the bottom of the screen.
A SharePlay window appears, listing all the participants as well as a QR code for joining.
3. Ask a passenger to open the Camera app on their iPad and point the camera at the QR code, tap the button that appears below the code, then tap Connect.
The driver taps  on the CarPlay screen to allow the passenger to join.

Leave or end SharePlay in the car

- *If you're a passenger:* Tap  at the bottom of Now Playing, then tap Leave.
- *If you're the driver:* Tap End on the CarPlay screen.

Adjust the sound in Music on iPad

Change the way music sounds in the Music app  on iPad with EQ and Sound Check. Crossfade songs in playlists.

WARNING: For important information about avoiding hearing loss, see [Important safety information](#).

Use EQ and normalize volume levels

- *Choose an equalization (EQ) setting:* Go to Settings  > Apps > Music > EQ.
- *Normalize the volume level of your audio:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Sound Check.

Crossfade songs in playlists

You can crossfade songs in a playlist, which creates a listening experience with no audio gaps between songs.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music.
2. Turn on Crossfade, then drag the slider to choose the length of the crossfade.

Queue up your music on iPad

Use the queue to see a list of upcoming songs, add songs and videos to the queue, and see what you recently played.

Use the queue

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then tap a song to play it and the songs that follow.
To reorder the list, drag . To do more, see [Manage the queue](#).
4. Tap  again to hide the queue.

Add music and videos to the queue

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. While browsing or playing music, touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then choose an option:
 - *Add music right after the currently playing item:* Tap Play Next.
 - *Add music to the end of the queue:* Tap Play After or Add to Queue.

Tip: If you're using HomePod to stream music and your friends are on [the same Wi-Fi network](#), they can add items to the queue. To learn more about HomePod speaker access, see the [HomePod User Guide](#).

Use Autoplay to add songs to the queue

If [you're an Apple Music subscriber](#) and you're not sure what to play next, use Autoplay. Once you play something, Autoplay adds similar songs and plays them at the end of the queue. When Autoplay is on and a song is playing, the Autoplay icon  appears on the Playing Next queue.



1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then tap  at the top of the queue to turn Autoplay on.

When Autoplay is on, the button changes color. Tap it again to turn it off.

Note: When you turn off Autoplay on a device that uses your Apple Account—your iPad, for example—Autoplay is turned off on all other devices that use the same Apple Account.

Manage the queue

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:
 - *Change the order of songs in the queue:* Drag the songs into the order you want them to play.
 - *Add more songs to the queue:* Scroll below the queue, then tap Add Songs to Queue.
 - *Remove a song from the queue:* Swipe left on the song, then tap Remove.
 - *See how many songs are in the queue:* Scroll to the bottom of the queue.
When [multiple songs are repeating](#), you can see how many songs will be repeated instead.
 - *Remove all songs from the queue:* Tap Clear at the top of the queue.

Tip: If you're using HomePod to stream music and your friends are on [the same Wi-Fi network](#), they can reorder items in the queue. To learn more about HomePod speaker access, see the [HomePod User Guide](#).

See what you recently played

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then swipe down to see your playing history.
To play a song in the history, tap it. To remove your playing history, tap Clear.

You can shuffle all songs and albums in your library (play them in random order) or just shuffle a playlist or album. You can also repeat individual songs, playlists, or albums.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:
 - *Play your songs in random order (shuffle):* Tap . Tap again to turn off shuffle.
 - *Repeat an album, playlist, or the entire queue:* Tap .
 - Note:* When multiple songs are repeating, you can view how many songs will be repeated—just scroll to the bottom of the queue.
 - *Repeat a single song:* Double-tap .

Sing along with Apple Music on iPad

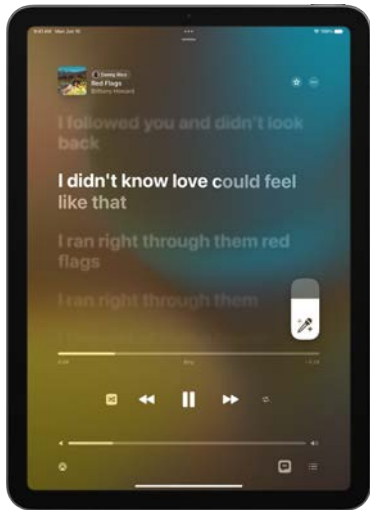
[Apple Music subscribers](#) can use Apple Music Sing to view real-time, beat-by-beat lyrics for select songs, as well as adjust the volume of a song's vocals —allowing you to sing along with the music while viewing the lyrics as they're highlighted.

Apple Music Sing is available on iPad Pro 11-inch (3rd generation and later), iPad Air (4th generation and later), iPad mini (6th generation), and iPad (9th generation and later) using iPadOS 16.2 or later.

Adjust the volume of a song's vocals

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, then tap .
3. Touch and hold , then drag the slider up or down to adjust the vocal volume.
4. To turn off Apple Music Sing for the song, tap the slider.

If you're listening to a song playing with Dolby Atmos and you turn on Apple Music Sing, Dolby Atmos turns off and the song plays without surround sound. If you turn off Apple Music Sing, the song plays with Dolby Atmos.



Sing onscreen with visual effects on Apple TV 4K

You can use your iPad as a Continuity Camera to see yourself singing onscreen along with lyrics. You can add visual effects to your image and lyrics, which enhances the singalong experience.

See [Use iPad as a webcam for Apple TV](#) and [Use Apple Music Sing on Apple TV](#) in the Apple TV User Guide.

Red Flags written by Brittany Howard.

Show song credits and lyrics on iPad

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can show song credits and view and share lyrics.

Show song credits

You can view song credits that include performing artists, composition and lyrics, production and engineering roles, and available audio quality.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Do one of the following:
 - While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, tap , then tap Show Credits.
 - Tap ... next to a song in a list, then tap Show Credits.

Show and hide time-synced lyrics

Time-synced lyrics appear for many songs in Apple Music.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.

2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, then tap .

Tip: Tap a specific lyric—the first line of the chorus, for example—to go to that part of the song.

3. To see all of a song's lyrics, tap , tap Show Credits, then tap View Lyrics.
4. To hide the lyrics, tap .

Share lyrics

You can share up to 150 characters of a song's lyrics if time-synced lyrics are available.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then tap Share Lyrics.
You can also touch and hold a lyrics line to open the sharing screen.
4. Tap the first and last lyrics you want to share, then choose a sharing option.

Report a concern

To report a concern about time-synced lyrics, tap , then tap Report a Concern.

Tell Apple Music what you enjoy on iPad

You can make a song or album a favorite so that you can easily find and play it again later. If you dislike a song or album, you receive fewer suggestions for similar music.

Tell Apple Music what you enjoy

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Touch and hold an album, playlist, or song, then tap Favorite or Suggest Less.
 - On the Now Playing screen, tap , then tap Favorite or Suggest Less.

Telling Apple Music what you like and dislike improves future recommendations.

Rate music in your library

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music.
2. Turn on Show Star Ratings.
This option appears only if you already have star ratings from a synced library on your device.
3. Go to the Music app , touch and hold a song in your library, tap Rate Song, then choose a rating from one to five stars.

Song ratings sync to all devices that are signed in to the same Apple Account.

Organize songs in playlists

Intro to playlists in Music on iPad

A playlist is a custom compilation of songs and music videos. You might want to create a playlist to do the following:

- Suit a specific mood or occasion. For example, you could create a playlist for a dinner party, a wedding, or your morning workout.
- Select certain songs to share with others on your local network or to sync with your Mac or Windows device.
- Organize your music library.

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), there are a few other types of playlists available:

- *Favorite Songs playlist:* See [Mark items as favorites](#).
- *Playlists created by any Apple Music contributor:* See [Add music and listen offline](#).
- *Playlists created by other subscribers that you follow:* See [See what your friends are listening to](#).
- *Special playlists (like Replay):* See the Apple Support article [How to get your Apple Music Replay](#).
- *Collaborative playlists:* See [Collaborate on a playlist](#) and [Join a collaborative playlist](#).

Changes you make to your music library (creating playlists, for example) are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on (go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library). If you're not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your library the next time you [sync with your computer](#).

Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPad

You can create playlists to suit specific moods or to organize songs with a certain theme.

Create playlists to organize your music

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.

2. To create a new playlist, tap New Playlist below Playlists in the sidebar.
3. To more easily identify the playlist later, enter a name and description.
4. To give your playlist cover art, tap , then take a photo or choose an image from your photo library.
5. Tap Create, then tap Add Music.

You can search for music, select music from your library, or choose songs listed at the bottom of the screen.

6. Tap  to add music to the playlist.

Tip: If you want to add songs to your library when you add them to a playlist, go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Add Playlist Songs.

Add music to a playlist

After you create a playlist, you can add music to it in several ways.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Touch and hold an album, playlist, song, or music video, tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.
 - From the Now Playing screen, tap , tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.

Edit a playlist

You can rename playlists, change the artwork, add and remove songs, and more.

Note: The host of a [collaborative playlist](#) can make any changes to the playlist. Other participants can only add, remove, and reorder songs in the playlist.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the playlist, tap , tap Edit, then do any of the following:
 - *Rename the playlist:* Tap the current name, then enter a new name.
 - *Edit cover art:* Select from a variety of Apple templates to use as cover art or tap  to add your own.
 - *Show (or hide) the playlist in your Apple Music profile:* Turn on (or off) the “Show in My Profile and in Search” option.
 - *Add songs from your library:* Tap , navigate to any place in your library, then tap  next to the song.
You can also touch and hold an item (song, album, playlist, or music video), tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.
 - *Add a Suggested Song:* Tap , swipe below the Library options, then tap  next to the song.
Suggested Songs also appears at the bottom of your playlist song list. To refresh the list of suggestions, tap .
 - *Delete a song:* Tap the song, then tap . Deleting a song from a playlist doesn't delete it from your library.
 - *Change the song order:* Drag  next to a song.

Changes you make to your music library are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on (go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library). If you're not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your music library the next time you [sync with your computer](#).

Sort a playlist

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a playlist, then tap  at the top right of the screen.
3. Tap Sort By, then choose an option.

Delete a playlist

If you delete a playlist, the songs in the playlist remain in your library and on your iPad. When you delete a collaborative playlist, the collaboration ends and the playlist is removed from both the host's and the other participants' libraries.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold the playlist, then tap Delete from Library.

You can also tap the playlist, tap , then tap Delete from Library.

Collaborate on playlists

Collaborate on a playlist in Music on iPad

If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can share a playlist and collaborate on it with others. Everyone can add, remove, and reorder music and react with emoji to songs in the [collaborative playlist](#).

Note: Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Invite others to collaborate on a playlist

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a playlist, then tap .

3. To approve people before they can join, turn on Approve Collaborators.

If you don't turn on this option, anyone with the link can join the collaborative playlist.

4. Tap Start Collaborating, then choose a sharing method, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail, to send a link to the playlist.

The person who receives the link must tap Join Playlist to start collaborating.

If you're the host and you turn on Approve Collaborators, notifications appear in the top-right corner when a new person requests to join the collaborative playlist.

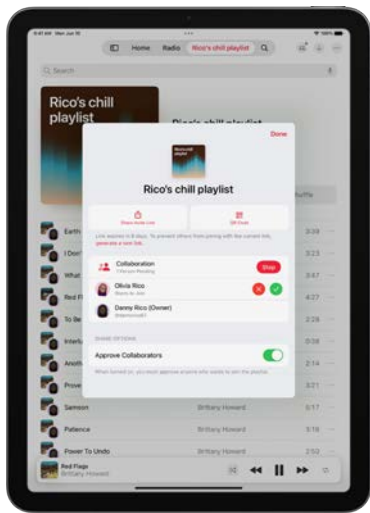
Add more people to collaborate on a playlist

If you're the host of a collaborative playlist, or the host hasn't turned on Approve Collaborators, you can share the link to the playlist with more people.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap , then do one of the following:
 - *Add someone who is nearby:* Tap QR Code. Others can join the playlist by using the camera on their iPad to scan the code displayed on your iPad.
 - *Add someone else:* Tap "generate a new link" (if necessary), tap Share Invite Link, then follow the steps to [invite others to collaborate on a playlist](#).

Manage shared settings for a collaborative playlist

If you're the host, you can change access and permissions for individuals or for everyone after you've started collaborating on a playlist.



1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap , then do any of the following:
 - *Invite others:* See [Add more people to collaborate on a playlist](#)
Note: If you didn't turn on Approve Collaborators, anyone collaborating on the playlist can share the link to the collaborative playlist.
 - *Approve people before they can join:* Turn on Approve Collaborators.
 - *Accept request:* Tap  to allow the person to join the collaborative playlist.
 - *Decline request:* Tap  if you don't want the person to join the collaborative playlist.

Stop collaborating on a playlist with one or more people

If you're the host, you can remove people from the playlist or stop collaborating on it altogether.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap , then do any of the following:
 - *Remove one person:* Swipe left on the person's name, then tap Remove.
 - *Stop collaborating on a playlist:* Tap Stop.

Remove yourself from a collaborative playlist

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap , then tap Leave.

Join a collaborative playlist in Music on iPad

If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#) and someone invites you to collaborate on a playlist, you can join it and then add, remove, or reorder music in the [collaborative playlist](#) and react to songs with emoji.

Note: Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

1. On your iPad, tap the link you received, then tap Join or Request to Join (if approval by the collaborative playlist host is required).
2. Do any of the following:

- *Add a song, change the order of songs, or remove an item:* See [Edit a playlist](#).
- *React to a song with emoji:* See [Add a reaction to a collaborative playlist](#)
- *Invite others with a link:* Tap Share Invite Link. See [Add more people to collaborate on a playlist](#)

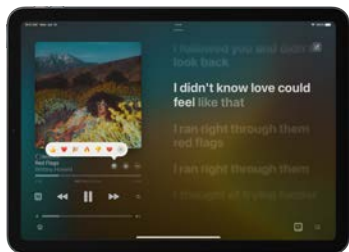
Note: If you're the host of a collaborative playlist, or the host hasn't turned on Approve Collaborators, you can share the link to the playlist.

Add a reaction to a collaborative playlist in Music on iPad

If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#) and you join a [collaborative playlist](#), you can react to songs in the playlist with emoji.

Note: Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, then tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then choose a reaction (for example, a thumbs up emoji) or tap  to find a specific emoji.



News

Get started with News on iPad

The News app collects all the stories you want to read, from your favorite sources, about the topics that interest you most. To personalize News, you can choose from a selection of publications (called *channels*) and topics such as Entertainment, Food, and Science.

You need a Wi-Fi or cellular connection to view the latest News content. Apple News+ subscribers can access downloaded content in [Offline Mode](#), even without an internet connection.

The more you read, the better News understands your interests. Siri learns what's important to you and suggests stories you might like. You can receive notifications about important stories from channels you follow.

And you can [subscribe to Apple News+](#), which includes hundreds of magazines, popular newspapers, and premium digital publishers. Apple News+ subscribers can also listen to audio stories on their iPhone and solve daily crossword, crossword mini, and Quartiles puzzles.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Personalize your news

When you [follow a channel or topic](#), related stories appear more often in the Today feed, and the channel or topic appears below Channels & Topics in the sidebar.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. In the sidebar, tap  next to the channels and topics you want to follow.

If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.

To [make a channel or topic a favorite](#), tap Edit, then tap  next to the channel or topic.

If there's a channel or topic that you don't want to appear in your feed, touch and hold it, then choose Block Channel, Block Topic, or Stop Suggesting.

When you block a channel or topic, its stories don't appear in the Today feed and widgets. To see the channels and topics you've blocked, tap Blocked Channels & Topics (near the bottom of the sidebar below Manage).

Note: When you browse Top Stories and other areas that feature stories curated by Apple News editors, stories from channels you blocked show a gray headline and a message indicating that you blocked the channel. See [Follow, unfollow, block, and unblock channels and topics](#)

3. Tap Discover Channels at the bottom of the sidebar, then tap  for each channel you want to follow.

To stop following a channel or topic, swipe it to the left, then tap Unfollow.

To quickly find specific channels and topics to follow, tap the search field in the sidebar (or tap  in the tab bar), enter the channel or topic's name, then tap  in the results below.

Get notifications

Some channels you follow may send notifications about important stories.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.

2. At the bottom of the sidebar, tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)
3. Turn on notifications for your preferred channels.
4. Turn on notifications from Apple News, such as Apple News Top Stories, Apple News Spotlight, and more.

If you subscribe to Apple News+ you can additionally receive notifications when new issues are available of publications you follow. You can also receive New Features & Tips notifications.

Receive Apple News newsletters

You can choose to receive newsletters in your email inbox from Apple News editors. Newsletters feature top stories, personalized based on your interests. If you subscribe to Apple News+, newsletters can also include new issues of your favorite magazines.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe to the bottom of the sidebar, then tap Notifications & Email.
(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)
3. Swipe to the bottom of the screen, then turn on Apple News Newsletters or tap Sign Up for Newsletters, then tap Sign Me Up.

In the U.S., several different newsletters may be available, and you can choose which ones you'd like to receive. Tap Sign Up to opt in, or Subscribed to opt out.

To stop receiving newsletters, return to the Notifications & Email screen, then turn off Apple News Newsletters. In the U.S., tap Manage Newsletters, then unsubscribe from each newsletter you no longer want to receive.

Note: Personalized newsletters aren't available in all countries or regions.

See stories only from the channels you follow

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > News.
2. Turn on Restrict Stories in Today, then confirm your choice.

Note: Restricting stories significantly limits the variety of stories that appear in the Today feed and all other feeds. For example, if you restrict stories and follow only one entertainment-related channel, your Entertainment topic feed will contain stories only from that channel. When you restrict stories, you don't see Top Stories and Trending Stories.

Use News widgets on iPad

You can easily see the day's top and trending stories from the News app, as well as stories about a topic of your choosing, just by tapping the Today or Topic widget.

Access stories from News widgets

In the Today or Topic widget, tap a story headline to open the story in News.

See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).

See news stories chosen just for you on iPad

The Today feed in the News app presents top stories selected by Apple News editors, the best stories from the channels and topics you follow, and stories and issues from [Apple News+](#). The Today feed also includes stories suggested by Siri—trending stories that are popular with other News readers, [My Sports](#), and more. Depending on your location, the Today feed can also include local news (with your local weather conditions) and [puzzles](#).

Note: Local news and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions.

Access stories in the Today feed

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Open a story:* Tap the story.
 - *Read more stories within a group:* Tap the arrow at the bottom of the group.
 - *Play a video:* Tap  in the thumbnail.
 - *Get newer stories:* Pull down to refresh the Today feed with the latest stories.

Follow, unfollow, block, and unblock channels and topics

You can influence what appears in the Today feed by following and blocking channels and topics.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Open a channel feed:* Touch and hold a story, tap the channel name, then tap Go to Channel. Or tap a story in the Today feed, then tap the channel name at the top of the story.
 - *Open a topic feed:* Tap the topic title—Movies or Travel, for example.

3. At the top of the feed, do any of the following:

- *Follow*: Tap .
- *Unfollow*: Tap , then tap Unfollow Channel or Unfollow Topic.
- *Block*: Tap , then tap Block Channel or Block Topic.
- *Unblock*: Tap , then tap Unblock Channel or Unblock Topic.

Note: When you browse Top Stories and other areas that feature stories curated by Apple News editors, stories from channels you blocked show a gray headline and a message indicating that you blocked the channel. To read a story from a blocked channel, tap it, then tap Read Story.

See the Apple Support article [Block and unblock channels and topics in Apple News](#).

Manage your favorites

Favorites shows the channels and topics from your Following list that you like best (you can have only a limited number of Favorites). Adding channels and topics to your Favorites makes them easier to access.

Note: Only channels and topics that you currently follow can be added to your Favorites.

Favorites appear near the top of the sidebar on iPad.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.

2. Tap Edit at the top of the sidebar.

(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)

3. Do any of the following:

- *Add a channel or topic to your Favorites*: Tap  next to a channel or topic to mark it as a favorite, then tap Done.
- *Remove a favorite*: Tap  next to a channel or topic you no longer want as a favorite, then tap Done.
- *Reorder favorites*: Touch and hold , drag favorites to the order you prefer, then tap Done,

Stop suggesting specific channels and topic groups in the Today feed

Suggested channels and topic groups may appear in the Today feed, but you can stop these suggestions.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.

2. Tap Today in the sidebar or tab bar.

3. Tap  in a channel or topic group, then tap Stop Suggesting.

The channel or topic isn't blocked, but News stops displaying the story group in Today.

Tell News what kind of stories you prefer

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.

2. Tap Today in the sidebar or tab bar.

3. Tap ... below a headline, then tap Suggest More or Suggest Less.

Read and share stories in News on iPad

You can read and share News stories on iPad.



Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions.

Read a story

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.

2. Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, you have these options:

- *Read the next story:* Swipe left.
- *Read the previous story:* Swipe right.
- *Return to the group of stories:* Tap < at the top left of the screen.
- *Tell News what stories you prefer:* When viewing a story, tap 👍 or 👎 at the top of the story. Your feedback is taken into account for future recommendations.
- *Change the text size:* Tap AA, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. (Not available in all channels.)
- *Share a story:* Tap ➦, then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.
- *Report a concern:* If you believe that a story you're viewing is mislabeled, inappropriate, offensive, or doesn't display properly, tap 😞, tap Report a Concern, then choose a concern.

In Apple News+ issues in PDF format, the Suggest More, Suggest Less, Save Story, and Report a Concern options aren't available. See [Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues](#).

Read stories shared with you

When a friend [shares stories with you using the Messages app](#), you can easily find them in the Shared with You section in Apple News. (Your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.)

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages.
2. Tap Shared with You, then make sure News is turned on.
3. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
4. Tap Shared with You in the sidebar, then do any of the following:
 - Tap a shared story to read it in News.
 - Tap the name of the person who shared a story to reply to them in the Messages app. You can also reply while reading the story—tap the name shown below the channel's logo.

Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPad

With My Sports in the News app, you can follow your favorite sports, teams, leagues, and athletes; receive stories from top sports publications, local newspapers, and more; access scores, schedules, and standings for the top professional and college leagues; and watch highlights.

Set up iPad to use My Sports

Before you can use My Sports, you must do the following:

- *Sign in to your Apple Account:* Go to Settings , tap "Sign in to your iPad," then enter your Apple Account information.
- *Sign in to the App Store:* Go to Settings  > [your name], then tap Media & Purchases.

To follow your teams across Apple apps, go to Settings  > Apps > News, then turn on Sync My Sports.

Get started with My Sports

Before you can use My Sports, you must allow syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app. When you allow syncing, teams you follow in News are followed automatically in the Apple TV app, and vice versa.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar or tab bar.
3. Tap Get Started, then tap Pick Your Teams.
4. On the Manage My Sports screen, tap + next to sports, teams, leagues, and major sporting events to follow them.

Sports topics you've previously expressed interest in appear below Suggested.
5. To search for a sports topic, tap the search field, enter a search term such as a team's name or location, tap + next to a result, then tap Done.

View sports coverage

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar or tab bar to view comprehensive sports coverage.

Note: To see the most important sports coverage at a glance, tap Today, then swipe up to the Sports group.

You can also find the sports topics you follow in the sidebar.

Browse all available sports

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar or tab bar.
3. Tap All Sports at the top of the screen.

4. Tap a sport or league to go to its feed.
5. To follow that sport or league, tap  at the top of the screen.

Manage sports topics

You can follow and unfollow sports topics after you've set up My Sports.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar or tab bar.
3. Scroll down to My Sports, tap Manage, then do any of the following:
 - *Unfollow topics:* Tap .
 - *Follow topics:* Tap .
 - *Reorder topics:* Touch and hold , drag topics to the order you prefer, then tap Done.

Show scores and schedules, highlights, and more

My Sports offers scores and schedules for your favorite teams, stats and stories for individual games and events, video highlights, and stories related to your favorite teams.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar or tab bar.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Show scores and schedules:* Swipe left on the scores at the top of the feed, then tap See More.
 - *Show stats and stories for individual games:* Tap a score at the top of the feed, or swipe down to a sports topics you follow, then tap a game.
 - *Watch a live game:* Tap a score at the top of the feed, then tap Open in Apple TV (before or after the game) or Watch on Apple TV (during a live game). Or swipe down to a topic you follow, tap the game's tile, then tap Open in Apple TV or Watch on Apple TV. If the game is available in your area and you've subscribed to a service that broadcasts the game, you can watch it in the Apple TV app or in a supported app.

Note: Supported sports apps may require a separate subscription. Not all games are available in all areas.
 - *View highlights:* Swipe up to the Highlights section, then tap  in the thumbnail. Tap > to see more highlights.

Note: Highlights are available only for select leagues.
 - *Read sports stories related to topics you follow:* Swipe up to For You, then tap a story.

Get Sports notifications

Receive notifications about teams you follow.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Notifications & Email at the bottom of the sidebar.

(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)
3. Turn on notifications for Sports.

Note: To receive Sports notifications, you must allow syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app, and follow at least one sports topic.

Remove the Sports group from Today

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Today in the sidebar or tab bar.
3. Tap Block from Today.

When you block Sports, the group no longer appears in your Today feed.

Stop syncing My Sports

You can stop syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app.

Note: When you turn off Sync My Sports, you can no longer use My Sports.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > News.
2. Turn off Sync My Sports.

Apple News+

Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPad

In the News app, Apple News+ lets you enjoy hundreds of magazines, popular newspapers, and content from premium digital publishers directly on your iPad.

You can subscribe to Apple News+ or to Apple One Premier, which includes Apple News+ and other Apple services. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

As a subscriber, when you tap News+ in the sidebar, then tap Best of News+ near the top of the screen, you can browse a collection of story headlines and publications personalized just for you. You also have access to current and available back issues of publications and can download content for offline reading and share stories and issues with others. Additionally, you can solve crossword, crossword mini, and Quartiles puzzles. Apple News+ subscribers can also listen to audio versions of select stories on iPhone and [in the Podcasts app](#).

As a nonsubscriber, you can browse, but not read, the stories and publications that appear when you tap Best of News+. You can also view the entire Apple News+ catalog, and browse issues by category—Entertainment and Food, for example. A few puzzles are available without a subscription. To read stories and issues, listen to complete Apple News+ audio stories on iPhone, and play daily puzzles, start a free trial or subscribe.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, Apple One, puzzles, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Subscribe to Apple News+

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
 2. Tap the subscription button shown in a magazine, puzzle, or story in News, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- You may be asked to sign in to your Apple Account.

Share Apple News+ with family members

When you subscribe to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share Apple News+ with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple News+ is available to them the first time they open the News app after your subscription begins.

If you [join a family group](#) that subscribes to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple News+ with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, [leave a Family Sharing group](#) or [remove a member from a Family Sharing group](#).

Cancel or change your Apple News+ subscription

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Subscriptions at the bottom of the sidebar, then do one of the following:
 - *Apple News+ only:* Tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - *Apple News+ and individual channels:* Select Apple News+, tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)

If you subscribe to Apple News+ as part of an Apple One Premier subscription and want to cancel your subscription, see the Apple Support article [If you want to cancel a subscription from Apple](#).

Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPad

To get the most out of Apple News+, follow your favorite publications and browse through current and back issues.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Follow and unfollow publications

You follow an Apple News+ publication by following its channel.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Tap Today or News+ in the sidebar or tab bar, tap a story or issue from an Apple News+ publication, tap the publication's name at the top of the screen, then tap .
 - Tap the search field in the sidebar (or tap  in the tab bar), enter the publication's name, then tap .
 - Tap News+ in the sidebar or tab bar, tap Newspapers or Catalog near the top of the screen, then tap Follow below the publication's cover.

To unfollow a publication, swipe a publication left in the sidebar, then tap Unfollow.

(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)

Browse Apple News+ issues and stories

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
- Stories and issues from Apple News+ appear in the Today feed, Best of News+ feed, and channel feeds. Stories (but not issues) can also be found in topic feeds and search results.

2. To access entire issues, tap News+ in the sidebar or tab bar, where you can do any of the following:

- *View News+ content chosen just for you:* Near the top of the screen, tap Best of News+.
- *View all available publications:* Tap Catalog near the top of the screen.
- *View a specific content category:* Tap Catalog, tap Featured, then tap a category such as Money & Business, Entertainment, or Sports.
- *View new and recent issues:* Tap My Magazines. By default, new issues appear near the top of the screen. The issue you've most recently read appears first. If you've recently downloaded an issue, it appears next. To choose a different sorting option, tap ☹️, then tap Sort by Name or Sort by Date.

Note: If you block an Apple News+ publication, its issues are removed from My Magazines.

Open a story or issue

1. Go to the News app 📰 on your iPad.

2. Do any of the following:

- Tap an issue cover in News+ or the Today feed.
- Tap the search field in the sidebar (or tap 🔍 in the tab bar), enter the name of the Apple News+ channel, tap the channel, then tap the issue.
- Follow a link to a story or issue that someone shared with you.

Access back issues

1. Go to the News app 📰 on your iPad.

2. Do any of the following:

- Tap News+ in the sidebar or tab bar, tap My Magazines, tap ⋮ below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Browse Back Catalog.
- In the sidebar, tap a channel you follow, or search for a channel, then tap it. Below Recent Issues, swipe to the issue you want to read, then tap to open it. Tap Issues near the top of the screen to browse all available issues.

(If you don't see the sidebar, tap ☰ in the top-left corner or 📰 in the tab bar.)

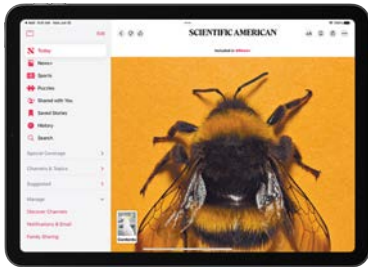
Read Apple News+ issues

1. Go to the News app 📰 on your iPad.

2. Open the issue, where you can do any of the following:

- *View the table of contents:* Tap the cover thumbnail at the bottom left of the screen.
- *Navigate to a story:* In an issue in Apple News Format, tap the story link in the table of contents. In a PDF issue, tap the thumbnail of the page you want to view.
- *Page through an issue:* Swipe left to go to the next story, or swipe right to go to the previous story.
- *Change the text size:* In stories in Apple News Format, tap AA, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. In PDF issues, pinch to zoom.

If you sign out in Settings ⚙️ > [your name] > Media & Purchases, you can only access free stories—you must sign back in to access stories and download issues that require an Apple News+ subscription.



Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content on iPad

Apple News+ subscribers can automatically download News content, then access it when there's no Wi-Fi or cellular connection—for example, when taking a flight or riding the subway.

Note: Content that can be downloaded for Offline Mode may include stories, issues, and puzzles. Not all content types are available in all countries and regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Turn on Automatic Downloads for Apple News+

1. [Sign in to your Apple Account](#).
2. Go to Settings ⚙️ > Apps > News.

3. Turn on Background App Refresh.
4. Tap Automatic Downloads, turn on Allow Automatic Downloads, then turn on any of the following:
 - *Recent Stories*: Downloads the latest stories in the Today feed, Best of News+ feed, Sports feed, Shared with You, and History.
 - *Saved Stories*: Downloads the latest stories in your Saved Stories list.
 - *Magazine Issues*: Downloads the latest issues of magazines you follow.
 - *Puzzles*: Downloads the Puzzles feed, the feed for each puzzle type, and the puzzles in these feeds.

Note: To download smaller versions of images in stories, turn on Optimize Storage.

Your iPad downloads News content when it has sufficient storage space and is connected to Wi-Fi and power. If you have a cellular connection but not Wi-Fi, only Top Stories in the Today feed are downloaded automatically.

Use News in Offline Mode

If you don't have a Wi-Fi or cellular connection, No Internet Connection appears at the top of the screen and any content in the app that isn't downloaded is dimmed. To switch from the currently loaded version of each feed to the downloaded version, tap Show Stories Downloaded for Offline Mode.

When you reconnect to the internet, tap Check for New Stories at the top of the screen. All feeds in the app are refreshed and display the latest content.

Manually download Apple News+ issues on iPad

With the News app and an Apple News+ subscription, you can download issues to read later.

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Download an Apple News+ issue

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Tap Today in the sidebar or tab bar, then swipe to My Magazines.
 - Tap News+ in the sidebar or tab bar, then tap My Magazines. You can also tap Catalog near the top of the screen, then tap a stack of magazines.
 - In the sidebar, tap a magazine channel you follow.
 - Tap the search field in the sidebar (or tap  in the tab bar), enter the channel name, then tap the channel.

3. When you find the issue you want, tap  below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Download Issue.

To download multiple issues, tap My Magazines, tap , tap Select, tap the issues you want to download, then tap .

Read a downloaded issue

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap News+ in the sidebar or tab bar.
3. Tap Downloaded near the top of the screen, then tap an issue.

Remove downloaded issues

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the News+ tab, then tap Downloaded near the top of the screen.
3. Tap , tap Select, tap the issues you want to remove, then tap .

If you remove an issue from the Downloaded tab, its cover remains in My Magazines so you can easily access the issue again.

To remove all downloaded issues, tap Following > History, tap Clear, then tap Clear All.

Remove an issue from My Magazines

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap My Magazines in the sidebar.
(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)
3. Tap  below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), tap Remove, then tap Remove from My Magazines.

The issue's cover and content are removed from iPad and from any other devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) and where News is turned on in iCloud settings.

Puzzles

Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPad

Apple News+ subscribers can access daily and archived crossword, crossword mini, and Quartiles puzzles. Some puzzles may be available without a subscription.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

View the Puzzles feed

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Tap Puzzles in the sidebar.
(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)
 - Tap Today in the sidebar or tab bar, scroll down, then tap the Puzzles group.

Follow the feed for a puzzle type

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open the Puzzles feed.
3. Tap Crossword, Mini, or Quartiles.
4. Tap , then tap Follow.

A Puzzles category appears in the sidebar with the puzzle types appearing below. To make them favorites, tap Edit, tap  next to a puzzle type, then tap Done.

Choose a puzzle

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Go to one of the following areas to find a puzzle:
 - The Puzzles group in the Today feed or Best of News+ feed
 - The Puzzles feed
 - The feed for a puzzle type (crossword, crossword mini, or Quartiles)
3. Tap a puzzle to open it.

Crossword puzzles have a difficulty rating—easy, moderate, or challenging.

You can also solve puzzles from the archive. See [View past puzzles](#), below.

View puzzle stats and streaks

In each puzzle feed you can find the Scoreboard. It includes:

- Statistics for each puzzle type—the number of puzzles solved, for example
- Your current streak—the number of consecutive days you've solved the daily puzzle
- Your longest streak

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Choose the feed for a puzzle type, then swipe up.

Conditions that affect stats include the following:

- If you use the Reveal command to show all or a portion of a puzzle, the puzzle won't count toward your stats, and completing the puzzle won't start or continue a streak.
- Puzzles you complete on a device with iOS 17.5, iPadOS 17.5, macOS 14.5, or later, count toward your stats. Any puzzles you played on older OS versions don't count toward your stats.
- After you open the News app on a device with iOS 17.5, iPadOS 17.5, macOS 14.5, or later, any daily puzzles you complete on a device with an earlier version of the OS are added to your streak. For example, if you complete Monday's crossword and Tuesday's crossword on your iPhone with iOS 17.5, and then solve Wednesday's crossword on your iPad with iPadOS 17.4, your streak is extended.
- Users in the continental U.S. and Canada must complete a puzzle within 24 hours of its publication for it to count toward a streak. Users in Alaska and Hawaii get an extra hour or two; they must complete the day's puzzle before midnight local time.

Compete with others in Game Center

You can compete against friends and other puzzle solvers in [Game Center](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Game Center.
2. Turn on Game Center, then [sign in to your Apple Account](#).
3. Go to Settings > Apps > News.
4. Turn on Game Center.

Your score for the daily puzzle is submitted to the leaderboard for that puzzle type in Game Center. Your score for crossword and crossword mini puzzles is the time it took you to solve the puzzle. For Quartiles, your score is the number of points you've earned.

View past puzzles

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
 2. Do any of the following:
 - *View puzzles from the archive:* Open a puzzle feed, then swipe up to view the most recent puzzles in the archive.
 - *View the complete crossword and crossword mini puzzle archive:* Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle feed, swipe up, then tap  next to Archive. You can also tap , then choose Crossword Archive or Crossword Mini Archive.
- To show sorting and filtering options for the archive, tap . You can sort all archives from newest to oldest or oldest to newest. You can filter the crossword archive by completeness and difficulty level. You can filter the crossword mini archive by completeness only.

Get Puzzles notifications

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe to the bottom of the sidebar, then tap Notifications & Email.
(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)
3. Turn on notifications for Puzzles.

Remove the Puzzles group from Today

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. In the Today feed, swipe up to Puzzles, then tap .
3. Tap Block from Today.

When you block Latest Puzzles, the group no longer appears in your Today feed.

Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles on iPad

Apple News+ offers subscribers a new crossword and crossword mini puzzle every day. Crossword puzzles start out easy but get increasingly challenging as the week goes on. When you want a puzzle you can solve in next to no time, try an always-easy crossword mini puzzle.

You can navigate and solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles in multiple ways. For example, you can display puzzles in the traditional grid view, or instead choose to show clues and answers in a list. You can tap squares to select words or choose clues from a list.

You don't have to solve puzzles all at once. You can return at any time. The timer pauses while you're away.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



Solve in grid view

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap a square to show the clue below the puzzle, then use the keyboard to enter the answer. You move to other squares as you type. You can also tap < or > next to the clue to move to the previous or next clue.

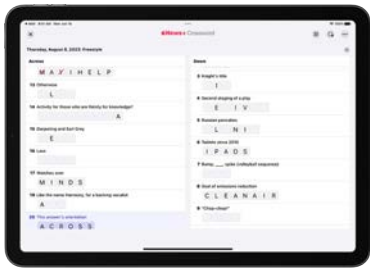
With the keyboard showing, switch from across to down, or vice versa, by tapping the selected square again or tapping the clue.

Solve in list view

You can show clues and answers in a list rather than in the traditional grid.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap .

Tap  to return to grid view.



Get hints and answers

If you're unsure of an answer you entered, you can get a little help.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:
 - **Mark incorrect answers:** Tap Autocheck, Check Square, Check Word, or Check Puzzle.
 - **Reveal answers:** Tap Reveal, then tap Square, Word, or Puzzle to display the correct answer.

Note: When you reveal all or a portion of a puzzle, it's not counted toward stats in your Scoreboard or as part of a streak.

Some puzzles have clues that reference other clues. You can highlight these connections. Tap , then turn on Highlight Linked Clues.

Always use Autocheck

When you turn on Autocheck inside a puzzle, it stays on for only that puzzle unless you turn on Always Autocheck.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
 2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
 3. Tap , choose Settings, then turn on Always Autocheck.
 4. Tap , then choose Autocheck.
- Autocheck stays on for all puzzles of that type until you turn it off.

Restart your puzzle

If you'd like a fresh start, you can clear a puzzle's answers and reset the timer.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap .
4. Tap Clear Puzzle.

Change how you move around the puzzle

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap , then change any of the following settings:
 - **Skip Filled Squares:** By default, after entering a letter, the next empty square in the puzzle is selected. Turn this setting off to select the square to the right or the square below, whether or not it's filled.
 - **At End of Word:** Choose Advance If Complete, Always Advance, or Don't Advance.

Show or hide the timer

You can show or hide the timer that appears above your puzzle.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Do one of the following:
 - Tap .
 - Tap , then tap Show Timer or Hide Timer.

Share your puzzle

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap , then tap Share.

4. Choose Messages, Mail, or another way to share your puzzle.



Solve Quartiles puzzles

Apple News+ subscribers can solve Quartiles puzzles. Players select tiles containing two to four letters from a four-by-five grid to form words. You can use up to four tiles per word, and the more tiles you use, the more points you score.

A word formed from four tiles is called a Quartile and is worth 8 points. When you find all five Quartiles, you receive an additional 40 points.

The object of the game is to earn the 100 points necessary to reach the Expert rank. You can continue forming words and accumulating points even after you've reached Expert.

Note: Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Play Quartiles

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open a Quartiles puzzle.
3. Tap tiles to create a word, then tap  to enter it.

For example, to score a single point, tap "pear," then tap . To score 2 points, tap "ap," then "pear" to form the word, "appear." Go for 4 points by tapping "ap," "pear," then "ance." Complete the Quartile and score 8 points by spelling "disappearance."

Completed words appear in the Words Found box, and any Quartiles you find appear in groups of four tiles.

Not all possible words qualify in Quartiles puzzles. For example, obscure and technical terms, proper nouns, and profanity never appear in the word list.

4. Do any of the following:
 - *Reorder your tiles:* After you tap the tiles to place them above the grid, you can touch and hold, then drag to reorder them.
 - *See points needed to move to the next rank:* Tap Next Rank.
 - *Clear tiles you don't want to use:* Tap .
 - *See how many words remain:* When you reach the Expert rank, the Words Found box shows how many words you haven't found.
 - *See each word's points:* Tap  in the Words Found box.

Tip: Tap , then tap How to Play to take a quick Quartiles tutorial, or tap More Puzzles to open the Quartiles puzzle feed.

Shuffle or group tiles

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open a Quartiles puzzle and start finding words.
3. Quartiles you find are anchored to the bottom of the grid. If you'd rather anchor them to the top of the grid, tap , then choose Sort Found Quartiles.
4. Tap  to shuffle tiles that aren't part of found Quartiles.
5. To shuffle all tiles in the grid, tap , to turn off anchoring, then tap .

Reveal all words

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open a Quartiles puzzle.

3. Tap , then tap Reveal All Words. The words you didn't find are shown.
 - *If you reveal before you reach Expert rank:* The puzzle doesn't count in your Scoreboard stats and streaks.
 - *If you reveal after you reach Expert rank:* Your stats or streaks aren't affected.

Share a puzzle

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Open a Quartiles puzzle.
3. Tap , then choose a sharing method to share a Quartiles puzzle with another Apple News+ subscriber.

Your rank appears in the email or message you send. Anyone who opens the puzzle can't see your answers.

Search for stories in News on iPad

The News app keeps track of a wide variety of channels, topics, and stories, which makes it easy to find content that interests you.

Search for channels, topics, or stories

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the search field in the sidebar (or tap  in the tab bar).
3. Enter any of the following:
 - The name of a channel, such as Scientific American or Washington Post
 - A topic, such as fashion, business, or politics
 - An event, such as an upcoming meteor shower

In the results list, tap  to follow the channel or topic.

Save stories in News on iPad

You can save news stories to read later. Apple News+ subscribers can read saved stories in [Offline Mode](#).

Save a story

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. When reading a story, tap  to save it.

Read a saved story

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Saved Stories in the sidebar, then tap the story.

Delete a saved story

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Saved Stories in the sidebar.
(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Delete one story:* Swipe the story left.
 - *Remove all saved stories:* Tap Clear.

Clear your reading history in News on iPad

In the News app, you can clear your reading history and adjust how you get reading recommendations.

Clear your history

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap History in the sidebar.
(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)

3. Tap Clear, then do any of the following:

- *Remove your reading history:* Tap Clear History.
- *Remove information used to recommend stories:* Tap Clear Recommendations.

Choosing this option can change the types of channels, topics, and stories shown in the Today and other feeds in Apple News on all your Apple devices.

- *Remove your history, recommendations, and downloaded content:* Tap Clear All.

Your News history and recommendation information are removed from all devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#). Downloaded content is removed from this iPad only.

When you clear your history, the identifier used by Apple News to report statistics to news publishers is also reset. You can reset the identifier at any time by going to Settings  > Apps > News, then turning on Reset Identifier.

Recommend stories based on News app reading only

When you turn off Siri & Search for the News app, recommendations are based on your reading habits in the News app only, not in Safari and other apps.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > News.
2. Tap Siri & Search, then turn off Show in App.

Customize the tab bar in News on iPad

In the News app, you can use the tab bar to quickly access feeds, like Today, News+, and Sports. You can customize your tab bar with Puzzles, Shared with You, Saved Stories, History, and channels or topics you follow.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Edit in your sidebar. Items you can add to your tab bar are highlighted. Today, News+, and Sports remain in your tab bar as defaults.
(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)
3. Drag any highlighted item to or from the tab bar, such as:
 - Puzzles
 - Shared with You
 - Saved Stories
 - History
 - Any channel or topic you follow

How to subscribe to individual channels in News on iPad

Subscribe to channels

In addition to [subscribing to Apple News+](#), you can subscribe to individual publications from select publishers. There are three ways to access these subscriptions in News:

- *Subscribe within News:* You can purchase a subscription directly in News. In a channel that offers subscriptions, tap the subscription button.
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher's app:* If you've downloaded a publisher's app from the App Store, and subscriptions you've bought as in-app purchases are also available in News, you're automatically granted access in News. See the Apple Support article [Buy additional app features with in-app purchases and subscriptions](#).
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher:* If you've purchased a subscription directly from a publisher's website or from the publisher's app on a non-Apple device, the publisher may allow you to sign in to your account in News to access your subscription there.
To sign in, tap a story that requires a subscription to read, then tap the "Already subscribed" link. Enter the user name and password for your existing subscription.

When you subscribe to a channel, you automatically follow it, and stories from the channel appear in the Today feed.

To cancel a subscription, swipe up on the sidebar, tap Subscriptions below the Manage heading, select the subscription, then tap Cancel Subscription.

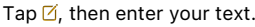
(If you don't see the sidebar, tap  in the top-left corner or  in the tab bar.)

Notes

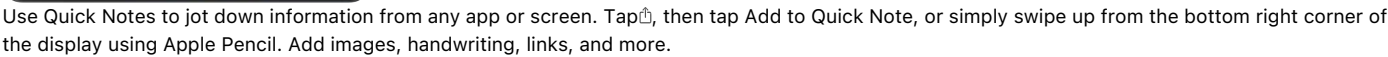
Get started with Notes on iPad

Use the Notes app to quickly capture your thoughts. You can add images and sketches, solve equations, make checklists, or even scan documents. And with iCloud, your notes stay up to date on all your devices wherever you go.

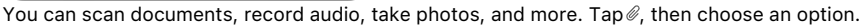
Jot it down



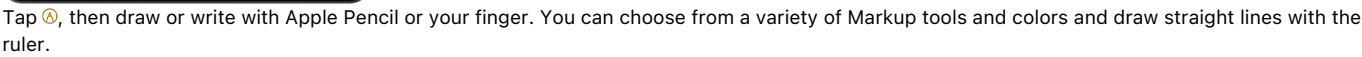
Make quick notes anywhere



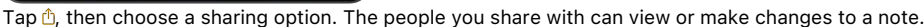
Add almost anything



Sketch your thoughts



Invite others to collaborate



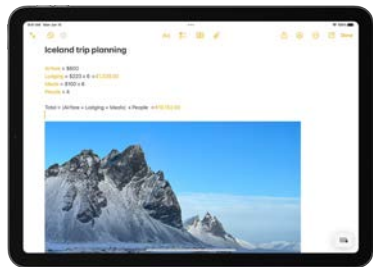
Want to learn more?

- Create and format notes
- Add photos, video, and more
- Add drawings and handwriting
- Share and collaborate

The availability of Notes features may vary depending on your language and country or region.

Create and format notes on iPad

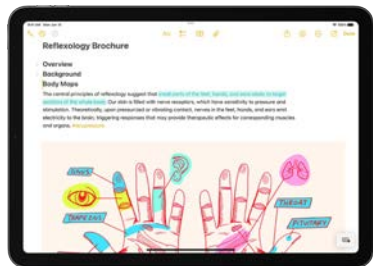
Use the Notes app to jot down quick thoughts or organize detailed information with checklists, images, web links, scanned documents, handwritten notes, and sketches. You can even organize your note with sections and headings.



1. Go to the Notes app on your iPad.
2. Tap , then enter your text.
The first line of the note becomes the note's title.
3. To save the note, tap Done.

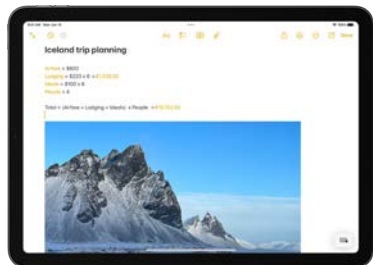
1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. When writing a note, do any of the following:
 - *Format text*: Tap , then choose a style such as Heading, bold or italic font, highlight, and more.
 - *Make a checklist*: Tap .
 - *Add a table*: Tap .

You can collapse and expand sections, making it easy to manage and outline long notes.



1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In a note, select the text for the heading.
3. Tap **Aa**, then tap **Heading** or **Subheading**.
4. Add content to the section, then do any of the following:
 - *Collapse a section:* Tap .
 - *Expand a section:* Tap .

You can use Quick Notes to jot down information over any app or screen on iPad. Add links, images, tags, and mentions to a Quick Note so you can get to important names, numbers, and ideas easily. When you highlight text in Safari or add a link from an app, you see a Quick Note thumbnail next time you visit the site, taking you right to what you were viewing before.



You can access all your Quick Notes in the Notes app. And when you make a Quick Note on your iPad, you can see the note on your iPhone and Mac, too.

To make a Quick Note from any app, do any of the following:

- Tap [⌘](#), then tap Add to Quick Note.
- [Open Control Center](#), then tap [🔧](#).
(If you don't see [🔧](#), add it to Control Center—go to Settings [⚙️](#) > Control Center, then choose Quick Note.)
- If your iPad is connected to an [Apple external keyboard](#), use the Globe-Q keyboard shortcut to open Quick Notes. If Quick Notes is already open, you can use Command-N to create a new note.

Take Quick Notes with the corner gesture

Swipe up from the bottom right corner of the display using Apple Pencil.

Tip: You can also do this gesture with your finger—go to Settings [⚙️](#) > Multitasking & Gestures, then turn on Swipe Finger from Corner.

Go to Settings [⚙️](#) > Apps > Notes, tap Corner Gestures, then do any of the following:

- Turn on or off Allow Finger to Swipe from Corner.
- Tap Left Corner Swipe or Right Corner Swipe, then choose an action.

View and organize Quick Notes

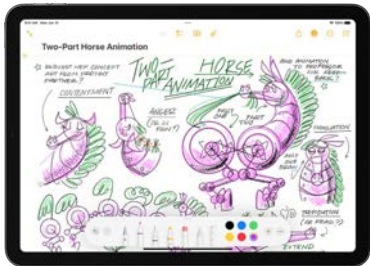
1. Go to the Notes app [📝](#) on your iPad.
2. Tap Quick Notes in the folders list.

Note: You can't lock a Quick Note unless you move it to a different folder.

If you move an individual Quick Note to a different folder, it becomes a standard note and no longer appears as a Quick Note in other apps.

Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPad

Use the Notes app to draw a sketch or jot a handwritten note with Apple Pencil (on [supported models](#)) or your finger. Choose from a variety of Markup tools and colors, and draw straight lines with the ruler. As you write with Apple Pencil, your handwriting can be automatically refined in real time to be more legible while maintaining the look and feel of your own handwriting style.



Use drawing and handwriting tools

1. Go to the Notes app [📝](#) on your iPad.
2. In a note, start drawing or writing with Apple Pencil. Or to draw or write with your finger, tap [👉](#).
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Change color or tools:* [Use the Markup tools](#).
 - *Adjust the handwriting area:* Drag the resize handle (on the left) up or down.
 - *Edit or auto-correct:* Tap an underlined word and choose an option from the pop-up menu.
 - *Transcribe your handwriting to typed text as you write with Apple Pencil:* Tap the Handwriting tool [👉](#) (to the left of the pen), then start writing.

Note: Scribble is available in supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#). To learn more about writing notes with Apple Pencil, see [Enter text with Scribble](#).

Tip: You can search handwritten text (in [supported languages](#)) in Notes. If the note doesn't have a title, the first line of handwritten text becomes the suggested title. To edit the title, scroll to the top of the note, then tap Edit.

Select and edit drawings and handwriting

With Smart Selection, you can select drawings and handwriting using the same gestures you use for typed text. You can move, copy, or delete the selection within the note. You can even paste it as typed text in another note or app.

Note: Smart Selection and handwriting transcription work if the system language of your iPad is set to a supported language in Settings [⚙️](#) > General > Language & Region > iPad Language. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

1. Go to the Notes app [📝](#) on your iPad.

2. In a note, select drawings and handwriting with your finger using any of the following methods:

- *With the Lasso tool:* Tap , tap  (between the eraser and ruler in the tool palette), then use your finger to outline the objects you want to select.
- *With gestures:*
 - Touch and hold, then drag to expand the selection.
 - Double-tap to select a word.
 - Triple-tap to select a sentence.

(Adjust the selection by dragging the handles if necessary.)

3. Tap the selection, then choose any of the following:

- Cut
- Copy
- Delete
- Duplicate
- Insert Space Above

Work with handwritten text

You can edit and even refine your handwriting. When you edit handwritten text, the text automatically reflows to fit the space.

Note: Handwriting reflow is supported with select languages.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.

2. In a note, [select the handwriting](#).

3. Choose any of the following:

- *Refine:* Your writing becomes smoother, straighter, and more legible.
To automatically refine your handwriting, tap , tap , then turn on Auto-refine Handwriting.
- *Copy as Text:* You can paste the transcribed text in a note or another app.
- *Translate:* You can copy the translated text or open the Translate app.
- *Straighten:* Your writing becomes more level.

4. You can also edit your handwriting and have the text automatically reflow with any of these methods:

- *Check spelling:* Tap an underlined word, then choose how you want to correct it. The fix will appear in your own writing style.
- *Paste typed text in your handwriting:* Copy text from a webpage, document, or email and paste it in your own handwriting. You can even paste it in the middle of a paragraph as you would with typed text.
- *Move handwriting:* Touch and hold, then drag to move your handwriting to a new position. You can paste your writing in the middle of a paragraph and add some space.

5. To erase text, scratch out the writing and hold Apple Pencil down on iPad.

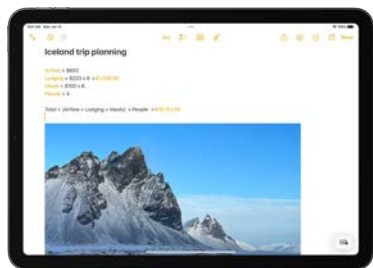
Drag images from other apps

You can drag images from other apps to a note and combine them with handwritten and drawn content. After you add an image to the drawing area, you can reposition and resize the image.

Enter formulas and equations in Notes on iPad

With math in the Notes app, you can draw diagrams, solve equations, assign variables, and plot graphs. Mathematical expressions are solved inline when you write or type an equal sign.

Note: The Notes app supports math written using Western Arabic numerals and common mathematical symbols, or typed using Arabic (Eastern & Western) and Devanagari numerals and common mathematical symbols.



Add mathematical expressions to a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.

2. Open a note, or tap  to start a new note.

3. Do any of the following:

- Type a math expression, then include an equal sign.
- Tap , write a math expression horizontally, then include an equal sign.
- Tap , write a stack of numbers, then draw a horizontal line below the numbers to add the numbers in the stack. Write a different symbol to the left of each digit if you want a different operation.

4. Tap the equal sign to see what Notes understood in what you wrote. To correct mistakes, you can fix any of the following:

- *Unrecognized math and unsolvable expressions*: Tap any dotted red lines to see details about the error.
- *Ambiguous characters*: Tap any dotted blue lines to clarify what you wrote.

Create a graph

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.

2. Open a note, or tap  to start a new note.

3. Type or write an equation with exactly two undefined variables, with one on each side of the equal sign.

You can include defined variables as well. For example, if you know $a = 3$, you can graph $velocity = 0.5at^2$. The graph's y-axis shows *velocity*, and the x-axis shows *t*.

4. When you finish the equation, a menu appears. Tap Insert Graph.

You can also tap an equal sign of any equation you already wrote to create a new graph.

All graphs interpret the equations you enter as $y = f(x)$. The variable to the left of the equal sign graphs on the y-axis, and the other variable graphs on the x-axis.

See also [Work with graphs in Math Notes](#).

Access Math Notes created in the Calculator app

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.

2. In the Folders list, tap Math Notes.

See [Solve math with Math Notes in Calculator](#).

Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPad

In the Notes app, you can add photos, videos, and information from other apps, such as maps, links, and documents.

Add a photo or video

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.

2. In a note, tap , then choose an option.

You can choose a photo or video from your photo library, or take a new photo or video.

Tip: To [draw on a photo](#), tap the photo, then tap .

To save photos and videos taken in Notes to the Photos app, go to Settings  > Apps > Notes, then turn on Save to Photos.

Add info from another app to a note

You can add information from another app as an attachment to a note—for example, a location in Maps, a webpage in Safari, a PDF in Files, or a screenshot.

1. In the app you're using, open the item you want to share (for example, a map or webpage).

2. Tap Share or , then tap Notes.

3. Save the item to a new note or choose an existing note.

Change the preview size of attachments

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.

2. In a note, you can change the preview size of the following:

- *A single attachment*: Touch and hold the attachment, tap View As, then choose Small or Large.
- *All attachments in a note*: Tap , tap Attachment View, then choose Set All to Small or Set All to Large.

View all attachments in Notes

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.

2. Above the notes list, tap , then tap View Attachments to see thumbnails of photos, links, documents, and other attachments. (Attachments in locked notes aren't shown.)

3. To go to a note with a specific attachment, tap the attachment thumbnail, then tap Show in Note.

Record and transcribe audio in Notes on iPad

In the Notes app, you can record audio and have the spoken words transcribed to text. You can search the transcript, add the text to the note, or copy the text to other documents.

Note: Audio transcription is available only in English for the variants of Australia, Canada, Ireland, New Zealand, South Africa, UK, and US.

Record live audio and see the transcript

You can record audio and have the spoken words transcribed in a note.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In a note, tap , then tap Record Audio.
3. To start the recording, tap .
4. When you're done, tap .
5. To see the transcript, tap .

Note: Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see , your iPad either doesn't meet the minimum requirements or doesn't detect a supported language.

Play an audio recording and review the transcription

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. View a note with an audio recording.
3. To play the audio recording, tap .
4. To review the transcript, tap the audio recording.

Note: Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see , your iPad doesn't meet the minimum requirements or detect a supported language.

5. While viewing the transcript, you can do any of the following:
 - *Play the audio at a specific point:* Tap the text you want to hear.
 - *Search the transcript:* Tap , then tap Find in Transcript.
 - *Copy the transcript:* Tap , then choose Add Transcript to Note or Copy Transcript.
 - *Save or delete the audio recording:* Tap , then choose an option.

Note: Deleting the audio recording also deletes the transcript.

Scan text and documents in Notes using the iPad camera

In the Notes app, you can use the camera to scan text and documents.

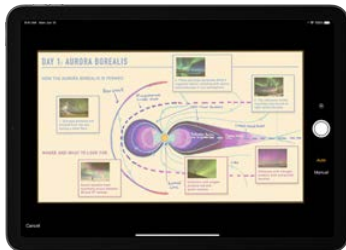
Scan text into a note

You can insert scanned text using the camera (on [supported models](#); in [supported languages](#)).

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In a note, tap , then tap Scan Text.
3. Position iPad so that the text appears within the camera frame.
4. Drag or use grab points to select text, then tap Insert.

Scan a document into a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In a note, tap , then tap Scan Documents.
3. Position iPad so that the document page appears on the screen; iPad automatically captures the page.



To manually capture the page, tap  or press a volume button. To turn the flash on or off, tap  (on an [iPad with a flash](#)).

4. Scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.

The document is saved as a PDF in the note.

Work with PDFs in Notes on iPad

In the Notes app, you can attach, view, edit, and collaborate on PDFs, including documents you [scanned into a note](#). You can also annotate or sketch directly on PDFs and scanned documents in your note using Apple Pencil or your finger. You can even preview multiple PDFs in the same note.

Attach a PDF to a note

To attach a PDF from an app such as Files or Mail, do any of the following:

- Drag the file into a note.
- Touch and hold the file, tap Share, tap Notes, then choose a note.

View and edit a PDF in a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In the note with the PDF, tap , then do any of the following:
 - *Change the viewing size:* Tap View As, then choose Small, Medium, or Large.
 - *View in full screen:* Tap Quick Look.
 - *Copy, share, rename, or delete the PDF:* Choose an action.
3. When viewing as Medium or Large, you can also do any of the following:
 - *Show or hide thumbnails:* Tap Show Thumbnails or Hide Thumbnails.
 - *Zoom in and see more:* Pinch the screen or swipe right to see more pages.
 - *Edit a page:* Tap the thumbnail for the page, tap , then choose an action such as Rotate Left, Rotate Right, Filters, Crop Page, or Insert Blank Page. (Filters and Crop Page are supported only in scanned documents.)

Search in PDFs

See [Search through your notes](#).

Annotate a PDF in a note

- *Small preview size:* Tap the PDF to open it, then tap .
- *Medium and large preview sizes:* Start drawing or writing with Apple Pencil. Or to draw or write with your finger, tap .

See [Write and draw in documents with Markup](#).

Collaborate with others

Get real-time updates when you [collaborate on a note](#) with other people. As you mark up a document, draw a diagram, or add a sticker, the people you share with can see the changes on their devices.

Add links in Notes on iPad

In the Notes app, you can add links to webpages. You can also link to related notes, like a trip itinerary and a list of recommended restaurants. When you add street and email addresses, phone numbers, and dates, they automatically become underlined text that you can tap to take action on.

Link to a webpage

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In the note where you want to insert a link, do either of the following:
 - Select the text, then tap Add Link. The selected text becomes the text link. Enter the URL to specify the link destination.
 - Tap to place the insertion point, tap Add Link, then enter the URL and the name (optional).

Link to another note using the title

You can create a link to another note using the title of the target note. If the title of the target note changes, the link text updates to the new title.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In the note where you want to add a link, tap the insertion point, then tap Add Link. Or simply type ">>".
3. Enter the title of the target note, then choose a note or create a new note.

To edit or remove the link, touch and hold the link, then choose an action.

Link to another note using custom link text

Instead of using the title of the target note, you can use custom link text. If the title of the target note changes, the link text doesn't change.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In the note where you want to add a link, select the link text, then tap Add Link.
3. Enter the title of the target note, then choose a note.

Take action on addresses, phone numbers, dates, and more

In your notes, an underline appears below text that's recognized as a street or email address, phone number, date, or other data. Tap the underlined text to take action on it. For example, you can see a street address in Maps, compose an email, call a phone number, add a calendar event, or convert units and currency.

Note: Data detection is available when the system language of your iPad is set to a supported language in Settings  > General > Language & Region. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Search through your notes on iPad

In the Notes app, you can search through all your notes for typed and handwritten text, objects in images, and text in scanned documents. You can also search for text within a note.

Search for text, objects, and more in all your notes

You can search for tags, typed and handwritten text (in [supported languages](#)), objects that appear in images, and text in scanned documents.

Note: If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe down on the notes list to reveal the search field.
3. Tap the search field, then enter what you're looking for. You can also choose a suggested search, such as "Notes with Drawings," then enter additional text to refine your search.

If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results. The search includes handwritten text (in supported languages), photos, and scanned documents.

Search within a note or attachment for typed and handwritten text

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. Open the note you want to search.
3. Tap  (at the top-right corner), then tap Find in Note.
4. Tap , then select any of the options. To search PDFs and other attachments, select Include Attachments.
5. Enter the text you're looking for in the search field.

Organize your notes in folders on iPad

In the Notes app, you can organize your notes into folders and pin the important notes to the top of the notes list.

Create, rename, move, or delete folders

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In the folders list, do any of the following:
 - *Create a folder:* Tap , choose an account (if you have more than one), tap New Folder, then enter a name.
 - *Create a subfolder:* Touch and hold a folder, then drag it onto another folder.
 - *Rename a folder:* Touch and hold a folder, tap Rename, then enter a new name.
 - *Move a folder:* Touch and hold the folder, then drag it to a new location. The folder becomes a subfolder if you drag it onto another folder.
 - *Delete a folder:* Swipe left on the folder, then tap . Or touch and hold the folder, then tap Delete.If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the notes.

Pin notes

To pin an important note to the top of the notes list, do the following:

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In the notes list, touch and hold the note, then tap Pin Note. Or swipe right on the note, then tap the pin.

Sort and change the folder view

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In the notes list, tap , then do any of the following:
 - *Change the folder view:* Choose View as Gallery or View as List.
 - *Sort the notes by title:* Tap Sort By, then choose Title.
 - *Sort the notes by date:* Tap Sort By, then choose Date Edited or Date Created.
By default, the notes are grouped by date. To turn this off, tap , then tap Group By Date.
 - *Reverse the sort order:* Tap Sort By, then choose Oldest First (when sorting by date) or Descending (when sorting by title).
To choose a default sorting method for all your folders, go to Settings  > Apps > Notes, then tap Sort Notes By.

Move a note to another folder

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In the notes list, swipe left on the note, then tap . Or touch and hold the note, tap Move, then choose a folder.

Delete a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. In the notes list, swipe left on the note, then tap . Or touch and hold the note, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the note.

Organize your notes with tags on iPad

In the Notes app, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your notes. You can add one or more tags to a note, such as #shopping and #work, and easily search and filter your notes across folders using the Tag Browser or Smart Folders.

Add tags to notes

When you create or edit a note, type # followed by the tag name or choose a tag from the menu above the keyboard. A tag can only be one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to a note.

Tip: You can use Apple Pencil or your finger to write a tag in a note. Tap the underlined tag, then tap “Convert to tag.”

Rename or delete a tag

Do any of the following:

- Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.
- Tap Edit (at the top of the folders list), scroll down to the tags, then tap a tag to rename it or tap .

When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Folders that use it.

View notes with tags

In the Tag Browser (below your folders), do any of the following:

- *View all notes with tags:* Tap All Tags.
- *View notes with specific tags:* Tap one or more tags; to exclude a tag, tap the tag until the name has a line through it. Then choose to view notes matching any or all of the selected tags.

Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPad

In the Notes app, you can easily search and filter your notes across folders using Smart Folders.

Create a Smart Folder

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , choose an account (if you have more than one), enter a name, then tap Make Into Smart Folder.
3. Choose one or more filters, then choose to include notes matching any or all of the selected filters. You can filter by tags, dates, mentions, and more.

You can also create a Smart Folder when viewing a list of tagged notes; tap , then tap Create Smart Folder.

Convert a folder to a Smart Folder

When viewing the folder you want to convert, tap , scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart Folder.

When you convert a folder, its notes are moved to the Notes folder and tagged with the name of the Smart Folder.

Note: You can't convert a shared folder, a folder with a subfolder, or a folder that contains locked notes.

Edit a Smart Folder

Do either of the following:

- In the folders list, tap Edit, then tap  to add, move, and rename folders.
- Touch and hold a Smart Folder, then tap Edit Smart Folder. You can change the name or filters.

Share notes and collaborate on iPad

In the Notes app, you can send a copy of a note to a friend. You can also invite people to collaborate in real time on a note or on a folder of notes in iCloud, and everyone will see the latest changes.



Share a copy of a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. Open the note you want to share.
3. Tap , choose Send Copy, then choose how to send your note.

Collaborate on a note or folder of notes using iCloud

To collaborate with others, you can share a note or a folder of notes in iCloud. You can set permissions for the participants (such as allowing them to edit notes, add attachments, and create subfolders), and all the participants can see everyone's changes in real time. The participants must be [signed in to their Apple Account](#) and [have Notes turned on in iCloud settings](#).

Note: You can't collaborate on a locked note or on a folder with locked notes.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. Do one of the following:
 - In the notes list, swipe left on the note you want to share, then tap .
 - Open the note you want to share, then tap .
 - In the folder list, swipe left on the folder you want to share, then tap .
 - Open the folder you want to share, tap , then tap Share Folder.
3. Choose Collaborate.
4. To change the access and permissions, tap the share options below Collaborate. You can set any of the following:
 - Allow access to only people you invite or anyone with the link.
 - Give participants permission to make changes or view only.
 - Allow participants to invite new people (available only when they have permission to make changes).
5. Choose Messages or Mail to send your invitation. (AirDrop isn't supported for collaboration.)

If you send the invitation in Messages, you [get activity updates in the Messages conversation](#) when someone makes changes in the shared note. Tap the updates to go to the shared note.

See the Apple Support article [If you can't share or collaborate in the Notes app on your iPhone or iPad](#)

View activity in a note

In the notes list, an orange dot to the left of a note title indicates the note has changed since you last looked at it.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. Open the note, then swipe right on the note or swipe up on the Activity card to see who made changes and when.
3. To adjust how the activity is shown, tap , then choose any of the following:
 - *Show Updates*: Shows changes made since you last opened the note.
 - *Show All Activity*: Shows all activity in the note.
 - *Show Highlights*: Shows names, dates, and changes made by each participant.

Tip: To mention a participant and notify them of important updates, type an @ sign followed by their name.

View activity in a folder

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold the folder, then tap Show Folder Activity.

Change sharing settings

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. The owner of a shared note or folder can change the sharing settings by doing one of the following:
 - *Manage a shared note*: Tap , then tap Manage Shared Note.
 - *Manage a shared folder*: Tap , then tap Manage Shared Folder.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Remove participants:* Tap the participant you want to remove, then tap Remove Access.
- *Change access and permission settings:* To change the settings for all participants, tap Share Options. To change the settings for one person, tap their name.
- *Stop sharing:* When you choose this option, the shared note or folder is deleted from the devices of the other participants.

Export or print notes on iPad

In the Notes app, you can open a note in the Pages app and continue working. You can also export the note as a PDF or print the note.

Open a note in Pages

1. Make sure your iPad has the latest version of [Pages](#).
2. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
3. Open the note you want to export.
4. Tap , then tap Open in Pages.

Note: If the note is locked, you must unlock it before exporting the contents of the note to Pages. You can't edit drawings in Pages. Content such as scanned documents and PDFs appear as thumbnail images in Pages. Tags, mentions, checklists, and links to notes aren't active items in Pages. If a note is shared, the resulting Pages document isn't shared.

Export a note as a PDF

You can create a PDF of a note, using the note's current view settings for its attachments. In a note with a multipage PDF or scanned document, the exported PDF contains only the first page of the original PDF or scanned document.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. Open the note you want to export.
3. Tap , then tap Markup.
4. Mark up the pages in the exported PDF as needed, then tap Done to save the PDF.

Print a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. Open the note you want to print.
3. Tap , then tap Print.
4. Choose the printer and other options, then tap Print.

Lock your notes on iPad

In the Notes app , you can lock notes to protect your sensitive information. You can access your locked notes using your device passcode or a custom password. If you have multiple Notes accounts, you choose the locking method for each account (for example, for your iCloud account).

Lock notes with your device passcode

If you use your device passcode to access locked notes, you don't have to create and remember a separate password, which reduces the chance of losing access to your locked notes. If you use your device passcode, you can also use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes.

If you have multiple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, you use each device's passcode (or login password for a Mac) to access your locked notes on that device.

To access notes locked with a device passcode, you must be using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't be able to access the locked notes.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Notes.
2. Tap Password.
3. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.
4. Tap Use Device Passcode.
5. For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.

Lock notes with a custom password

Creating a custom password for locked notes can provide additional security, but if you forget the password, you may lose access to your locked notes.

You use your custom password to access your locked notes on all devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. If you have more than one iCloud account or an "On My iPad" account, you can set a different custom password for each account.

To access notes locked with a custom password, you must be using iOS 9.3, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.11.4, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't see the notes.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Notes.
2. Tap Password.

3. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.
4. Tap Use Custom Password.
5. For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.

Don't rely on Face ID or Touch ID as the only means of unlocking your notes. If you update your Face ID or Touch ID settings, or want to change your Notes password, you have to reenter your Notes password.

Important: If you forget your custom password, and you can't use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes, Apple can't help you regain access to those notes.

You can reset your custom password, but this doesn't give you access to previously locked notes. The new custom password applies to all notes you lock from now on. Go to Settings > Apps > Notes, then tap Password > Reset Password.

See the Apple Support article [How to lock or unlock notes on your iPhone or iPad](#)

Change the locking method

If you're using a custom password, you can switch to using your device passcode. When you change your locking method, notes that you accessed with the previous method begin using the new method.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Notes.
2. Tap Password, choose an account (if you have more than one), then tap Use Device Passcode.

Lock a note

You can only lock notes on your device and notes in iCloud. You can't lock notes that have PDF, audio, video, Keynote, Pages, or Numbers attachments; notes that sync with other accounts; or Quick Notes. You can't lock a note that's shared in iCloud.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. Open the note, then tap  (at the top-right corner).
3. Tap Lock.

When a note is locked, the title remains visible in the notes list.

To remove a lock from a note, tap  (at the top-right corner), then tap Remove.

Open your locked notes

Opening one locked note opens all your locked notes in the same account for several minutes so you can easily jump into another note or copy and paste information from other apps.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the locked note, then tap View Note.
3. To open the note, use Face ID, Touch ID, your device passcode, or your Notes password.

To lock your notes again, do any of the following:

- Tap the lock icon at the top of the screen.
- Tap Lock Now at the bottom of the notes list.
- Close the Notes app.
- Lock your iPad.

Add or remove accounts in Notes on iPad

In the Notes app , you can use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, enterprise-managed iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo—and keep all your notes in one place. Your notes stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts. You can also have an On My iPad account for notes you keep only on this device.

Note: All Notes features described in this guide are available when you use iCloud and the On My iPad account. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Keep your notes up to date on all your devices with iCloud

Your iCloud notes—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're [resigned in to your Apple Account](#).

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud.
2. Turn on Notes.

Add other accounts

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Notes.
2. Tap Notes Accounts, then tap Add Account.

3. Do one of the following:

- Choose an account provider, then enter your account information.
- If your account provider isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add Mail Account, enter your email account information, then turn on Notes for that account.

Set up an On My iPad account

Notes in this account appear only on your iPad, and they're included in your iPad backups to iCloud.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Notes.
2. Turn on "On My iPad" Account.

Remove an account

When you remove or delete an account, the notes in that account no longer appear on your iPad. The notes remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Google) and any other devices you had already set up.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Notes.
2. Tap Notes Accounts, then tap the account you want to remove.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Stop using Notes on the account:* Turn off Notes.
You can continue to use the account for other services, such as Mail.
 - *Stop using all services on the account:* Tap Sign Out (for an iCloud account) or Delete Account (for other accounts).
If you don't see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

Change the Notes view on iPad

You can change how your notes appear in the Notes app . Add lines or grids to your notes, view your notes as a list or a gallery, and see all the attachments in one place.

Change the Notes display on your iPad

- *View a note in full-screen:* While viewing a note in landscape orientation, tap  or turn iPad to portrait orientation.
- *See your accounts, notes list, and selected note all at once:* Turn iPad to landscape orientation, then tap .

Show lines or grids in notes

- *In an existing note:* Tap  (at the top-right corner), tap Lines & Grids, then choose a style.
- *In all new notes:* Go to Settings  > Apps > Notes, then tap Lines & Grids.

View notes as a list or gallery

In the notes list, tap , then tap View as List or View as Gallery.

View all attachments

In the notes list, tap , then tap View Attachments.

Change your Notes settings on iPad

In Settings, you can customize your preferences for the Notes app . Choose the default account for new notes, set a password, and more.

Customize your Notes settings

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Notes.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- **Accounts:** [Add or remove accounts in Notes](#).
- **Siri & Search:** Allow [Siri](#) to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Notes. You can also allow suggestions and content from Notes to appear in [Search](#) and [widgets](#).
- **Notifications:** [Change notification settings](#).
- **Language:** Choose your preferred languages.
- **Default Account:** Choose the [default account](#) when creating notes using Siri and the Notes widget.
- **Password:** [Lock important notes](#).
- **"On My iPad" Account:** Turn on the [On My iPad account](#).
- **Mention Notifications:** Receive notifications when your name is mentioned in [shared notes](#).
- **Viewing:** Choose [viewing options](#) such as the sort order, lines and grids, and group notes by date.
- **App Links:** Get suggested app links.
- **Auto Convert to Tag:** Automatically change #text to a [tag](#) when typing a space.
- **Save to Photos:** Save [photos and videos](#) taken in Notes to the Photos app.
- **Access Notes from Lock Screen:** Choose Always Create New Note or Resume Last Note. Or turn it off to prevent access from the Lock Screen.

Use keyboard shortcuts in Notes on iPad

If your iPad is connected to an [iPad keyboard](#), you can use keyboard shortcuts to quickly perform actions in the Notes app.

Examples of keyboard shortcuts

- **Start a new note:** Press Command-N.
- **Add a checklist:** Press Shift-Command-L.
- **Create a bulleted list:** Press Shift-Command-7.
- **Add a link:** Press Command-K.
- **Hide the sidebar:** Press Control-Command-S.

Learn keyboard shortcuts

Press and hold the Globe (🌐) key or Command (⌘) key until the shortcuts appear.

Passwords

Use passwords on iPad

In the Passwords app 🗝️, you can find all your passwords, passkeys, and verification codes in one place. You can use your passwords on all your devices where you sign in to the same [Apple Account](#) and turn on Passwords & Keychain in iCloud settings. And if you use AutoFill to sign in to apps and websites, your passwords automatically appear in Passwords.



See all your types of password credentials:

- App passwords
- Website passwords
- Sign in with Apple
- Passkeys
- Verification codes
- Wi-Fi passwords
- Passwords shared with groups

Find a password by searching or sorting. Then click Edit to reveal the password, or to change or delete the password.

Tip: In Passwords, click Security for recommendations to [change weak passwords](#).

Find your password for a website or app on iPad

You can find your password for a website or app by searching or sorting your accounts on iPad.

Find your password for a website or app by searching for the account

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Enter the name of the account in the Search field at the top of the screen.
3. Tap the account, then tap the Password field.

Find your password for a website or app by sorting your accounts

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap All.
3. Tap  in the lower-left corner, then tap how you want to sort your accounts.
4. Locate and tap the account, then tap the Password field.

Change the password for a website or app on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="GenerativeKeywords __ ">

ipde-needs-review

You can change the password you use to sign in to a website or app on your iPad.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap All, then locate the account for the website or app.
3. Tap the account.
4. Tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.

If the website or app allows you to [upgrade to Sign in with Apple](#), you can take advantage of the security and convenience of that feature. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPad to [automatically create a strong password](#) that you don't have to remember.

Note: If iPad warns you about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPad and iCloud Keychain. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad, tap All, then swipe left on the account.

Remove a password from your iPad and iCloud Keychain

<__ class="__ GenerativeKeywords" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

You can delete the password you use to sign in to a website or app on your iPad.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap All, then tap the account for the password you want to delete.
3. Tap Edit.
4. Tap Delete Password, then tap Delete Password again to confirm.

Note: This action doesn't remove the password from the website or app where you created it.

Recover a password you deleted from your iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="GenerativeKeywords __ ">

ipde-needs-review

If you delete a password from your iPad, you have 30 days to recover the password before it's permanently deleted.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Deleted.
3. Locate the account for the deleted password, then tap the account.
4. Tap Recover.

The password is returned to your iPad and iCloud Keychain.

Create a password for a website or app on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords">

ipde-needs-review

Your iPad can generate a password to use on a website or app.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap All.

3. Tap [+](#) in the lower-right corner.
A secure password is created for you.
4. Enter details about the website or app, and a user name for your account.
5. Tap Save.

You can also create a password when you sign up for services on websites and in apps. See [Create a strong password for a new account](#).

Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites on iPad

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

You can create and save passkeys to replace the passwords you use to sign in to supported apps and websites on your iPad.

Passkeys are more secure than passwords, because they're uniquely generated for every account by your own device and are less vulnerable to phishing. And they work on all your devices that are signed in to the same Apple Account.

Also, websites and apps can automatically create passkeys for your account, so you can use the passkeys the next time you sign in.

Like passwords, passkeys are encrypted and stored in your iCloud Keychain, where they aren't visible to anyone (including Apple).

Note: To use passkeys, [iCloud Keychain](#) and [two-factor authentication](#) must be turned on.

Create and save a passkey using your iPad

You can create and save passkeys for apps and websites that support them.

Note: The instructions for creating and saving a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. Go to the sign-in screen for a supported website or app on your iPad, and do one of the following:
 - *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - *If you already have an existing account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.

2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, tap Continue.

Your passkey is saved.

Note: If you don't see a passkey option, it means the website or app doesn't currently support passkeys.

The passkeys you create are stored on your iPad in the Passwords app.

You can have a passkey and password for the same website or app, and find them both under the same account in the Passwords app.

You can also save a passkey to a hardware security key. Tap "Other options," "Save on another device," or similar (if available), then follow the onscreen instructions for saving a passkey. See [Use security keys to sign in to your Apple Account](#).

Use a passkey to sign in to a website or app on your iPad

After you create and save a passkey for a website or app, you can use the passkey whenever you sign in.

Note: The instructions for signing in with a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. Go to a website or app on your iPad, and tap the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Tap the suggested account name that appears at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard. If the account name doesn't appear, or you want to use a different one, enter it.
3. Use Face ID or Touch ID to complete sign in. If you didn't set up Face ID or Touch ID on your iPad, enter your device passcode (the code you use to unlock your iPad).

The passkey you saved completes the sign-in automatically.

Use a passkey saved on your iPad to sign in on another device

If you're using a device not associated with your Apple Account (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend's house) and you have your iPad with you, you can sign in to apps or websites on that device using the passkeys you created for them.

Note: The instructions for using a passkey on another device can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the website or app and enter your user name in the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Select "Other options," "Passkey from nearby device," or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
3. Use your iPad camera to scan the QR code.

The passkey that's saved to iCloud Keychain completes the sign-in automatically.

Create a passkey on a device that's not your own

If you have your iPad with you, you can create a passkey while using a device not associated with your Apple Account (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend's house), and save it to iCloud Keychain instead of to the device you're using to create the passkey.

Note: The instructions for creating a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the sign-in page for a supported website or app, then do one of the following:
 - *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then enter a new username.
 - *If you already have an account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.
2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, select "Other options," "Save on another device," or similar (instead of Continue).

Note: If you don't see a passkey option, it means the website or app doesn't currently support passkeys.

3. Select "Save a passkey on a device with a camera," or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
4. Use your iPad camera to [scan the QR code with your camera](#).

The passkey is saved to your iPad and iCloud Keychain.

Change a passkey

You might need to create a new passkey to replace the existing one (if, for example, you previously shared it with someone to whom you no longer want to give access).

To change a passkey, follow the steps for an existing account in [Create and save a passkey](#) or [Create a passkey on a device that's not your own](#).

Delete a passkey

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the account for the passkey you want to delete.
3. Tap Edit.
4. Tap Delete Passkey.

If you delete a passkey, you can create a new one at any time.

Sign in with Apple on iPad

<__ class=" GenerativeKeywords __" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

With Sign in with Apple, you can sign in to participating websites and apps with your [Apple Account](#). You don't need to create and remember new passwords, and your account is protected with two-factor authentication. You can share your Sign in with Apple access with family and trusted contacts.

Sign in with Apple is designed to respect your privacy. Websites and apps can ask only for your name and email address to set up your account, and Apple won't track you as you use them.

Sign in with Apple requires [two-factor authentication](#) for your Apple Account. This protects your Apple Account, your app accounts, and your app content.

Set up or upgrade an account to Sign in with Apple

When a participating website or app asks you to set up or upgrade an account, do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Some apps (and websites) don't request your name and email address. In this case, you simply authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Others may ask for your name and email address to set up a personalized account. When an app asks for this information, Sign in with Apple displays your name and the personal email address from your Apple Account for you to review.

To edit your name, tap it, then use the keyboard to make changes.

To specify an email address, do one of the following:

- *Use your personal email address:* Tap Share My Email.

If you have multiple email addresses associated with your Apple Account, choose the address you want.

- *Hide your email address:* Tap Hide My Email.

This option allows you to receive email from the app without sharing your personal email address. When you choose this option, Apple creates a unique, random email address for you, and any email sent from the app to this address is forwarded to your personal address.

After you review your information and choose an email option, tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Sign in to access your account

After you set up an account with a website or app using Sign in with Apple, you typically don't need to sign in to it again on your iPad. But if you're asked to sign in (for example, after you sign out of an account), do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.

2. Review the Apple Account that appears, then tap Continue.
3. Authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model).

Change the address used to forward email

If you chose to hide your email address when you created an account and you have more than one address associated with your Apple Account, you can change the address that receives your forwarded email.

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Name, Phone Numbers, Email > Forward To.
2. Choose a different email address, then tap Done.

Review or change Sign in with Apple settings for apps

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Sign in with Apple.
2. To change a setting for an app, tap it, then do any of the following:
 - *Turn off forwarding email:* Tap Manage Hide My Email, tap the app, then turn off Forward To. You won't receive any further emails from the app.
 - *Stop using Sign in with Apple:* Tap Delete, then tap Stop Using. You may be asked to create a new account the next time you try to sign in to the app.

Share your Sign in with Apple access

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap All, then locate and tap the account where you use Sign in with Apple.
3. Tap Group, then tap New Group.
4. Enter a name for the group, then tap Add People.
5. Type the name, email address, or phone number of the person or people you want to add, then tap Add.

Note: To add someone to your group, they must be in your Contacts app and have a device using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS 14, or later. If they can be added to the group, their contact information appears in blue. If it appears in gray, their iPhone, iPad, or Mac might not support shared password groups.

6. Tap Create.

Sign in with Apple also works on your other devices—iPhone, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple TV, and iPod touch—where you're [resigned in to the same Apple Account](#).

To sign in from an Android app, a Windows app, or any web browser, tap Sign in with Apple, then enter your Apple Account password. For more information, see the Apple Support article [What is Sign in with Apple?](#)

Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust on iPad

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __ " Type="Do not translate">
ipde-needs-review

Shared password groups are an easy and secure way to share passwords and passkeys with your family and trusted contacts.

Anyone in the group can add passwords and passkeys. When a shared password changes, it changes on everyone's device.

Create a group

Note: To create a shared password group, you must be [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  in the lower-left corner.
3. Enter a name for the group, then tap Add People.
4. Type the name, email address, or phone number of the person you want to add, then tap Add.

Note: To add someone to your group, they must be in your contacts and have an iPhone, iPad, or Mac with iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS 14, or later. If they can be added to the group, their contact information appears in blue. If it appears in gray, their iPad, iPhone, or Mac might not support shared password groups.

5. Tap Create.
6. Select the passwords you want to share with the group, then tap Move in the top-right corner.

If you don't want to share any passwords yet, tap Not Now in the top-left corner.

You can notify the people you've invited to the group, and they can also see the invitation in Passwords > Group Invitations.

Your shared passwords are saved in iCloud Keychain, and you can use them like any other saved password.

You receive a notification whenever anyone else is invited to the group.

Manage a group

If you create a group, you can add or remove other members, or delete the group. Other members of the group don't have these options, but they can choose to leave at any time.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the name of your group.
You can add or remove other members, or delete the group.
3. When you're finished making changes, tap Done.

Respond to an invitation to join a group

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the invitation, then tap Accept to join the group. You can also decline the invitation.

Important: Don't accept an invitation if you don't recognize the sender.

Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPad

<__ class=" GenerativeKeywords __" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPad create strong passwords for many of your accounts.

iPad [stores the passwords in the Passwords app](#) and fills them in for you automatically, so you don't have to memorize them.

Note: Instead of requiring you to sign in with passwords, participating websites and apps support these alternatives:

- *Sign in with Apple:* Lets you use your Apple Account to sign in, and limits the information shared about you. See [Sign in with Apple](#).
- *A passkey:* Lets you use Face ID or Touch ID to securely sign in without using a password. See [Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites](#).

Create a strong password for a new account

Depending on the website or app, creating a strong password and saving it to the Passwords app usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the new account screen for the website or app, enter a new account name.
For supported websites and apps, iPad suggests a unique, complex password.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Choose the suggested password:* Tap Use Strong Password.
 - *Edit the suggested password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, tap the password text field, then make your changes.
 - *Get a different strong password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, then tap the suggested password.
 - *Get a strong password consisting of only numbers and letters:* Tap Other Options, then tap No Special Characters.
 - *Get a strong password that's easy to type:* Tap Other Options, then tap Easy to Type.
 - *Make up your own password:* Tap Other Options, then tap Choose My Own Password.
3. To copy the password so you can paste it into a Confirm Password field if asked, tap Other Options, then tap Copy Strong Password.
4. To [securely add and keep notes](#) about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details, enter them in the Notes field.
To view the notes later, go to the Passwords app  on your iPad, tap All, then tap the account.
5. To later allow iPad to automatically fill in the password for you, tap Yes when you're asked if you want to save the password.

Automatically fill in a saved password

Depending on the website or app, signing in with your saved password usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the sign-in screen for the website or app, tap the account name field.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Tap the account suggested at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard.
 - Tap , tap Other Passwords, then tap an account.

The password is filled in. To see the password, tap .

To enter an account or password that isn't saved, tap  on the sign-in screen.

Turn Password AutoFill on or off

Go to Settings  > General > AutoFill & Passwords, then turn on or off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys.

You can automatically fill passwords from up to three passwords apps.

Change weak or compromised passwords on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="GenerativeKeywords __ ">

ipde-needs-review

When you create and store your own passwords for websites and apps, iPad automatically identifies common weaknesses (for example, if they're easily guessed or used multiple times). iPad can also securely monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

Change a weak or compromised password

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.

2. Tap Security.

If an account has a weak or compromised password, a message explains the problem.

3. Tap an account.

4. Tap the Password field, then tap Copy Password, so you can paste it where it's requested—for example, when you create a new password and you're asked to enter your old password.

5. Tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.

If the website or app allows you to use a passkey or to [upgrade to Sign in with Apple](#), you can take advantage of the security and convenience of those features. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPad to [automatically create a strong password](#) that you don't have to remember.

Note: If iPad warns you about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPad and iCloud Keychain. Go to the Passwords app on your iPad, tap All, then swipe left on the account.

Hide a security recommendation

You can hide a security recommendation so that you don't have to continue reviewing it if you're unable to address it.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.

2. Tap Security.

3. Tap an account.

4. Tap Hide Alert.

Turn detection of compromised passwords on or off

iPad can monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Passwords.

2. Turn Detect Compromised Passwords on or off

View your passwords and related information on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords">

ipde-needs-review

You can view and copy passwords, add notes like security question reminders, and more with the encrypted account information stored on iPad. iCloud Keychain securely [keeps this information up to date](#) across all your approved devices.

View and copy a password for a website or app account

1. For an account that uses a password, do one of the following:

- Say something like: "Show me my passwords." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)
- Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
- On a sign-in screen, tap .

2. Tap an account, then tap the Password field.

3. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy Password.

Add notes for an account with a passkey or password

You can securely keep notes about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.

2. Tap All, then tap an account.

3. Tap Edit, tap Notes, enter your text, then tap Done.

To update the notes, tap Edit (at the top right), then tap the Notes field.

Go to the website for an account

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.

2. Tap All, then tap an account.

3. Do one of the following:

- Tap .
- Tap the website URL, tap Copy Website, then paste the URL into the address field of your browser.

Remove an account from your iPad and iCloud Keychain

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe left on the account.

For example, you might want to remove the account for a website or app that's no longer available.

Note: This action doesn't remove the account from the website or app where you created it.

Find and share your Wi-Fi password on iPad

You can find the password of the Wi-Fi network you're currently using and see all the Wi-Fi networks and passwords you've previously saved. You can share the password of the Wi-Fi network you're currently using with a nearby friend or family member.

Find a Wi-Fi password

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Wi-Fi.

If you're connected to a Wi-Fi network, its name appears at the top of the screen. You can also see all the Wi-Fi networks you've previously saved.

If you don't see Wi-Fi, tap  at the top of the screen.

3. Tap a Wi-Fi network.
4. Tap the Password field.

To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy.

Share your Wi-Fi network password with a nearby friend or family member

1. Make sure your iPad (the one sharing the password) is unlocked and connected to the Wi-Fi network.
2. Have your friend or family member go to Wi-Fi settings on their iPhone, iPad, or Mac, then choose the network.
3. When a message asks if you want to share your Wi-Fi password, tap Share Password.

Note: To share your Wi-Fi network password devices must be within Bluetooth and Wi-Fi range, not using Personal Hotspot, and added to each other's contacts.

You can also go to the Wi-Fi network and tap Show Network QR Code, which friends and family can scan to join the network.

Share passkeys and passwords securely with AirDrop on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords">

ipde-needs-review

Use AirDrop to securely share passkeys and passwords for website and app accounts with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

Note: To show someone the password you saved for a Wi-Fi network, see [Find a Wi-Fi password](#).

Check the AirDrop requirements

Compared to sharing other types of information, AirDrop has more stringent requirements for sharing passkeys and passwords.

- [iCloud Keychain must be set up](#) on your iPad.
- The person you're sharing with [must be in your contacts list](#) in the Contacts app, and they must be listed with the email address they use for iCloud.
- You must be in the other person's contacts list in the Contacts app, and you must be listed with the email address you use for iCloud.

Send a passkey or password

To share with someone on iPad or iPhone, ask them to open Control Center and [allow AirDrop to receive items](#). To share with someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered in AirDrop in the Finder.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
2. Tap All, then tap the account you want to share.
3. Tap , then select the device or picture of the person you want to send the passkey or password to.

Receive a passkey or password

1. If you haven't already done so, [allow AirDrop to receive items](#).
2. When you receive a request to accept a passkey or password from someone else, tap Accept.

The passkey or password is saved to your iPad, where you can [view its information](#) and let iPad automatically fill it in on the sign-in screen for the account. The passkey or password is also saved to your iCloud Keychain, so you can use it on other devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

Make your passkeys and passwords available on all your devices with iPad and iCloud Keychain

<__ class=" __ GenerativeKeywords" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

Use iCloud Keychain to keep your website and app passkeys and passwords, credit card information, Wi-Fi network information, and other account information up to date across all your approved devices and Mac computers. iCloud Keychain is secured with 256-bit AES encryption during storage and transmission, and its data can't be read by Apple.

iCloud Keychain can also keep the accounts you use in Mail, Contacts, Calendar, and Messages up to date across all your iPhone and iPad devices and Mac computers.

Set up iCloud Keychain

If you didn't turn on iCloud Keychain when you first set up your iPad, go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Passwords and Keychain, turn on iCloud Keychain, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Set up iCloud Keychain on an additional device

When you turn on iCloud Keychain on an additional device, your other devices using iCloud Keychain receive a notification requesting your approval of the additional device.

On one of your other devices, approve the additional device. Your iCloud Keychain automatically begins updating on the additional device.

To approve iCloud Keychain when you don't have access to your other devices, follow the onscreen instructions to use your iCloud Security Code.

Recover your iCloud Keychain if all your devices are lost or stolen

iCloud Keychain synchronization across devices provides convenience and redundancy in case you lose a single device. If all your devices are lost and you've [added a recovery contact](#) to your Apple Account, your contact can help you recover your iCloud Keychain. To learn how, go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then tap "Learn more" below Add Recovery Contact.

You can also recover your iCloud Keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, which is also protected against brute-force attacks. iCloud Keychain escrows a user's keychain data with Apple without allowing Apple to read the passwords and other data it contains. Your keychain is encrypted using a strong passcode, and the escrow service provides a copy of the keychain only if a strict set of conditions is met.

To recover your keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, authenticate with your Apple Account on a new device, then respond to an SMS [sent to a trusted phone number](#). After you authenticate and respond, you must enter the device passcode. iOS, iPadOS, and macOS allow only 10 attempts to authenticate. After several failed attempts, the record is locked and you must contact Apple Support on the [Apple Support website](#) to be granted more attempts.

To learn more about iCloud Keychain, see the Apple Support article [Set up iCloud Keychain](#).

Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPad

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __ " Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

Some websites and apps offer two-factor authentication (also known as *multifactor authentication*), which helps prevent other people from accessing your accounts even if they know your passwords. Passwords are the first authentication factor, and temporary, one-time verification codes are commonly a second factor. iPad can automatically generate these verification codes without your reliance on SMS messages or additional apps.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by scanning a QR code

If you have another device with a screen, like a computer or iPhone, you can use it to display a QR code from a website or app, then use the iPad camera to scan the code.

1. On your other device, sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.

A QR code appears to help you set up an authenticator app.

2. On iPad, use the camera to scan the QR code.

3. On iPad, select your account for the website or app.

A verification code appears below the User Name and Password fields.

4. On your other device, enter the verification code that appears on your iPad.

Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by entering a setup key

If you can't scan a QR code from another screen, you can manually enter a setup key.

1. Sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.
2. Choose the option to manually use a setup key (or setup code or similar), then [select and copy](#) the setup key.
3. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPad.
4. Tap All, then tap your account for the website or app.
5. Tap Set Up Verification Code, then tap Enter Setup Key.

6. Tap the Setup Key field, tap Paste, then tap OK.
7. Tap the Verification Code field, then tap Copy Verification Code.
8. Return to the website or app, then [paste](#) the verification code where directed.

Use a verification code on a website or in an app

1. Sign in to the website or app.
2. If prompted, select the option to use an authenticator app.
3. When asked for a verification code, tap the suggestion that appears above the keyboard.

If no suggestion appears, go to the Passwords app  on your iPad, select your account for the website or app, tap the verification code, then tap Copy Verification Code. Return to the website or app, then [paste](#) the verification code into the field.

Automatically delete one-time verification codes

One-time verification codes are filled in automatically, so you don't need to leave the website or app you're signing in to. You can choose to automatically delete the verification codes after entering them with Autofill, or keep them.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Autofill & Passwords.
2. Under Verification Codes, tap Delete After Use, then turn it on or off.

Sign in with fewer CAPTCHA challenges on iPad

Some website and app sign-in screens require you to pass CAPTCHA challenges, such as recognizing letters in unusual shapes. iCloud allows you to bypass many challenges by automatically and privately verifying your iPad and account. You can turn this bypass on or off.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then turn Automatic Verification on or off.

Use two-factor authentication for your Apple Account on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords">

ipde-needs-review

Using two-factor authentication helps prevent others from accessing your [Apple Account](#) account, even if they know your Apple Account password. When it's on, you need both your Apple Account password and a six-digit verification code to [sign in to your Apple Account](#). The verification code is sent to the phone number associated with your Apple Account, or it's displayed on your trusted devices.

Note: Certain account types might not support two-factor authentication. Two-factor authentication isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of two-factor authentication for your Apple Account](#).

Turn on two-factor authentication

1. On your iPad go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Turn On Two-Factor Authentication, then tap Continue.
3. Enter a *trusted phone number* (the number you'll use to receive verification codes), then tap Next.
A verification code is sent to your trusted phone number.
4. Enter the verification code on your iPad.
Two-factor authentication is turned on for your Apple Account, and your iPad is now a trusted device.

Add another trusted device

After you turn on two-factor authentication on your iPad, you can add other trusted devices to your Apple Account.

1. On the device you want to add, [sign in to your Apple Account](#) you used to turn on two-factor authentication.
2. When prompted, enter the six-digit verification code that appears on your iPad, another trusted device, a trusted phone number, or your Mac.
3. Enter the verification code on the new device.

You aren't asked for a verification code again unless you sign out completely, erase your device, [sign in to your Apple Account](#) in a web browser, or need to change your Apple Account password for security reasons.

Add or remove a trusted phone number

Adding trusted phone numbers can be useful if you want to use two-factor authentication but don't have access to the phone number you added when you turned it on.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Two-Factor Authentication, tap Edit (above the list of trusted phone numbers), then enter your device passcode when prompted.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Add a number:* Tap Add a Trusted Phone Number, then enter the phone number.
 - *Remove a number:* Tap  next to the phone number.

Trusted phone numbers don't automatically receive verification codes. If you can't access any trusted devices when setting up a new device for two-factor authentication, tap "Didn't get a verification code?" on the new device, then choose one of your trusted phone numbers to receive the verification code.

View or remove trusted devices

1. Go to Settings  > [your name].

A list of the devices associated with your Apple Account appears near the bottom of the screen.

2. To remove a device, tap it, then tap Remove from Account.

If you remove a trusted device, it can no longer display verification codes and its access to iCloud (and other Apple services on the device) is blocked. To add it back, use two-factor authentication to [sign in to your Apple Account](#) again.

Generate a password for an app that signs in to your Apple Account

To sign in to your Apple Account from a third-party app or service (such as an email, contacts, or calendar app) using two-factor authentication, generate an app-specific password.

1. [Sign in to your Apple Account](#).
2. Tap App-Specific Passwords, then tap "Generate an app-specific password."
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After you generate your app-specific password, enter or paste it into the password field of the app as you would normally.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Sign in to apps with your AppleID using app-specific passwords](#).

Use security keys to sign in to your Apple Account on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords ">

ipde-needs-review

Security Keys for your Apple Account is an optional security feature designed for people (such as celebrities, journalists, and members of government) who want extra protection from targeted attacks on their account, including phishing and social engineering scams.

A security key is a small third-party hardware device that you can connect to your iPad and use to verify your identity when signing in to your Apple Account. The physical key replaces the six-digit verification codes normally used in two-factor authentication, which keeps this information from being intercepted or requested by an attacker.

For details about security key requirements, see the Apple Support article [About security keys for your Apple Account](#).

Set up security keys

You need to set up at least two security keys so you can use one of them as a backup in case the other one is lost, damaged, or stolen. You can pair up to six keys with your account.

Note: NFC security keys are not currently supported on iPad.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Two-Factor Authentication, tap Security Keys, then tap Add Security Keys and follow the onscreen instructions.

Sign in to a device, website, or app using a security key

1. When prompted, insert your security key.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Use a security key to reset your Apple Account password

If you forget your Apple Account password, you can use a security key that's paired with your account to reset it.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security. (If you aren't already signed in to your Apple Account on your iPad, first use your paired security key to sign in.)
2. Tap Change Password, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Use a security key to unlock your Apple Account

If you try unsuccessfully six times in a row to sign in to your Apple Account, or if your iPad detects other signs of suspicious activity, you'll receive an onscreen notification that your Apple Account is locked. You can use your security key to unlock it.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Unlock Account, then follow the onscreen instructions to unlock your Apple Account.
3. If you think your account might have been locked because someone else knows your password, tap Change Password and enter a new one.
4. Tap Done.

Remove security keys

You can pair up to six security keys with your Apple Account. If you reach the limit and need to pair additional keys, you can remove one or more of your paired keys. You can replace keys you've removed at any time.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security.
2. Tap Security Keys.
3. To remove all keys, tap Remove All Keys, then tap Remove.

To remove individual keys, tap the ones you want to remove, then tap Remove Key.

Note: If you remove all security keys from your Apple Account, the account reverts to using six-digit verification codes for two-factor authentication.

Photo Booth

Take photos in Photo Booth on iPad

Use the Photo Booth app  to take selfies and photos with fun effects.

Take a photo

Photo Booth uses the front camera to display the subject in multiple tiles, each with a different effect, on the iPad screen. Effects include Kaleidoscope, Stretch, X-Ray, and more. The tile in the center of the screen displays Normal view.

1. Aim iPad at your subject to frame your shot.
2. Tap the tile of the effect you want to capture, then do any of the following:
 - *Switch between the front and rear-facing cameras:* Tap  at the bottom of the screen.
 - *Change the effect:* Tap  at the bottom left of the screen.

With some effects, you can drag your finger across the screen, or pinch, swipe, or rotate the image to alter the appearance.

3. Tap the shutter button to take the shot.

When you take a photo, iPad makes a shutter sound. You can use the volume buttons to control the volume of the shutter sound. See [Adjust the volume](#).

Note: In some regions, sound effects are played even if your iPad is set to silent.

Delete, share, or copy a photo in Photo Booth on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords">

ipde-needs-review

You can delete, copy, and share the photos you take in the Photo Booth app .

Delete a photo in Photo Booth

1. Tap a photo thumbnail at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap , then tap Delete Photo.

Share or copy a photo in Photo Booth

1. Tap a photo thumbnail at the bottom of the screen.
2. Tap , then choose a share option.

You can also choose Copy Photo to paste the photo into another document or Add to Shared Album to add the photo to a shared album in the Photos app, see [Create shared albums in Photos](#).

View and edit Photo Booth photos in the Photos app on iPad

Photos you take in the Photo Booth app  are saved in the Photos app, where you can view and edit them.

View and edit photos in the Photos app

1. Open the Photos app, then tap Library.
2. Tap the thumbnail to view the photo in full screen, tap Edit, then use the edit controls to make changes.
3. Tap Done.

See [View photos and videos in Photos](#) and [Edit photos and videos](#).

View photos on all your devices

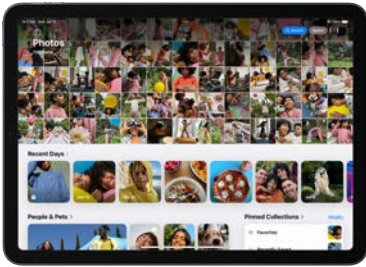
If you use iCloud Photos, you can view your photos on other devices that meet these minimum system requirements: iOS 11, iPadOS 13, and macOS 10.13. You must be signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) on all devices.

Photos

Get started with Photos on iPad

Use Photos on your iPad to find your photos, enjoy your memories, and share your best shots. Here's how to get started.

Browse the photos in your library



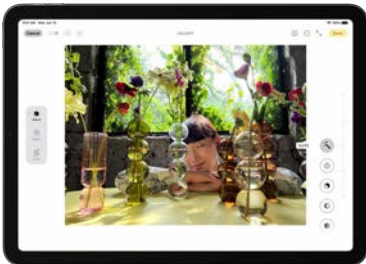
To get started viewing your photos and videos, go to the Photos app. Swipe down on the photo grid to browse through your library. The most recent photos are at the bottom; keep swiping down to go back in time. Pinch the screen to zoom in or out.

Enjoy your memories



Relive your favorite memories with personalized collections of photos and videos that are set to music and play like a movie. In the sidebar, tap Memories. Each memory features photos from your library curated around a theme—like a person, pet, place, event, or activity.

Edit your photos



To make your photos stand out, adjust light and color, crop, rotate, add a filter, and more. Open a photo or video, then tap  to start editing.

Share your photos



Open a photo or video, tap , then choose a share option like Mail, Messages, or AirDrop. To share all the photos and videos in a collection, tap , then tap Share Photos.

Want to learn more?

- [View photos and videos](#)
- [Find and name people and pets](#)
- [Customize the Photos app](#)
- [Watch memories](#)
- [Edit photos and videos](#)

View photos and videos on iPad

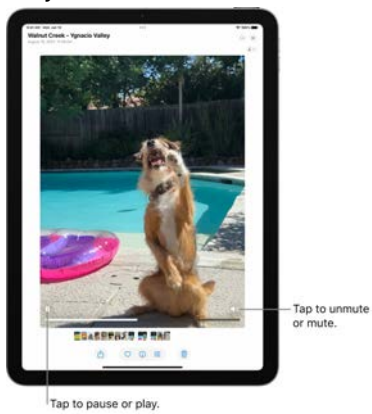
Use the Photos app to view photos and videos on your iPad.

View individual photos



1. Go to the Photos app 📷 on your iPad.
2. Tap a photo to view it in full screen.
Tip: When viewing a [Live Photo](#) 📷, touch and hold the photo to play it.
3. Tap 🏠 to close the photo and continue browsing your library.

Play a video

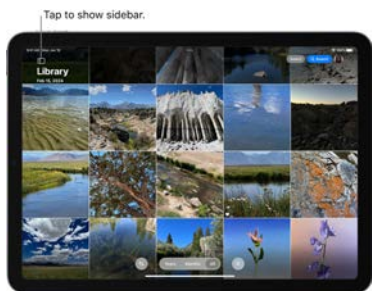


1. Go to the Photos app 📷 on your iPad.
2. Tap a video to play it.
3. Tap 🏠 to close the video and continue browsing your library.

Browse the library

In the Photos app 📷, swipe down to see more photos. The most recent photos are at the bottom; continue swiping down to go back in time.

Tip: When viewing the library, pinch the screen to zoom in or out.



Browse collections

Below your library, your photos and videos are organized into curated collections like Recent Days, Trips, and People & Pets. Under each heading, you can scroll through recent collections, or tap the heading to see more.

Tap a collection to open it and see the detailed view with highlights. Swipe right or left to see other collections.



See photo and video information on iPad

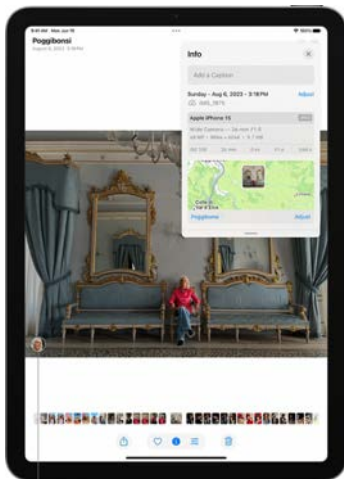
You can see saved metadata information about a photo or video in the Photos app. You can also change the date, time, and location stored within an item's metadata information.

View photo and video metadata

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 on your iPad.
2. Tap the photo or video whose metadata you want to see, then swipe up or tap ⓘ.

Depending on the photo or video, you see the following details:

- People identified in the photo
- A caption field to describe the photo or video, and make it easier to find in Search
- Items detected by [Visual Look Up](#)
- What device captured the photo or video
- The date and time the photo or video was taken (tap Adjust to edit the date and time)
- Camera metadata such as lens, shutter speed, file size, and more
- Where the photo or video was taken (tap the link to view the location in Maps; tap Adjust to edit the location)
- Who shared the photo or video with you, if it was shared
- What albums this photo is in



Tap a circle to name someone in the photo.

Change the date, time, or location

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 on your iPad.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap ⓘ.
3. Tap Adjust Date & Time or Adjust Location, then enter the new information.

To change the date, time, or location of a batch of photos, tap Select, tap the thumbnails you want to change, then follow the steps above.

To revert a photo or video to its original date, time, or location, tap ⏮️, tap Adjust Date & Time or Adjust Location, then tap Revert.

Find your photos and videos

Find photos and videos by date on iPad

You can find photos and videos taken on a particular date—year, month, or day—in the Photos app.



View the photos and videos you took on a recent day

You can find the photos and videos you took on a particular day in the Recent Days collection below the photo library.

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 on your iPad.
2. Scroll down to Recent Days, then tap a day to see all the photos and videos from that day.
Swipe left or right to quickly move to other days.

When you open a day from Recent Days, you see a summary of the best photos from the day. To see all the photos you took that day, tap 📷, then tap All.

Browse through your library by year or month

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 on your iPad.
2. Swipe down to scroll through your library, then select one of the following:
 - **Years:** Quickly locate a specific year in your photo library.
 - **Months:** View collections of photos that you took throughout a month, organized by significant events—like a family outing, social occasion, birthday party, or trip.

Years and Months views are curated to show your best shots, and visual clutter like similar photos, screenshots, whiteboards, and receipts aren't shown. To see every photo and video, tap All.

You can also search for a specific date. See [Search for photos and videos](#).

Find and name people and pets in Photos on iPad

The Photos app sorts photos and videos of people, dogs, and cats in the People & Pets collection (or the People collection if no pets appear). You can name a person, dog, or cat directly from a photo or video in your photo library, or in People & Pets.



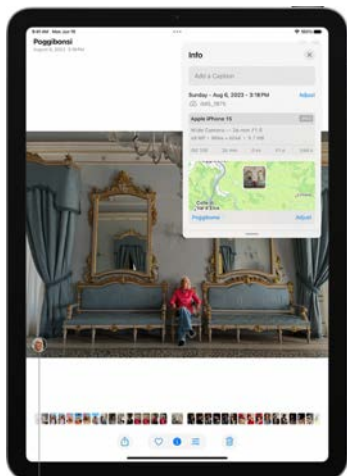
Name a person or pet in a photo or video

When you name a person or pet in a photo or video, they're automatically added to People & Pets and named in other photos and videos in your library.

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 on your iPad.
2. Open a photo or video, then swipe up to see the details.

People or pets in the photo or video appear in the bottom-left corner. A question mark appears next to those you haven't named.

3. Tap the person or pet with a question mark next to their picture, then tap Name This Person or Name This Pet.

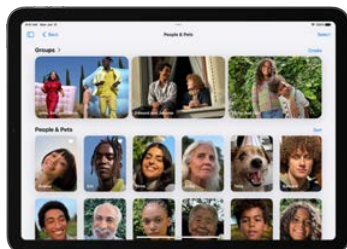


Tap a circle to name someone in the photo.

4. Enter their name, tap Next, then tap Done.

Name a person or pet in the People & Pets collection

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 on your iPad.
2. Tap People & Pets in the sidebar, then tap the person or pet you want to name.



3. Tap Name This Person or Name This Pet, then enter their name.
4. Tap Done.

If the person or pet you want to name doesn't appear, tap Add People at the bottom of People & Pets to see more faces.

To create and edit groups, see [Find group photos](#).

Change the key photo for a person or pet

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 on your iPad.
2. Tap People & Pets in the sidebar, then tap a person or pet.
3. Tap ⓘ, then tap Show Faces.
4. Touch and hold a photo, then tap Make Key Photo.

Mark a person or pet as a favorite

Mark the people or pets that you interact with the most as favorites so that it's easier to find them.

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 on your iPad.
2. Tap People & Pets in the sidebar.
3. Touch and hold a person or pet, then tap Favorite.

To unfavorite a person or pet, touch and hold their key photo in People & Pets, then tap Unfavorite.

Fix incorrect names

1. Go to the Photos app 📷 on your iPad.
2. Tap People & Pets in the sidebar, then tap the person or pet with the incorrect name.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Rename the person or pet for all items:* Tap ⓘ, tap Edit Name and Photos, tap the name, then edit it. Tap Done.
 - *Fix a specific item:* Tap the photo or video with the incorrect name, tap ⓘ, then tap This is Not [name].

You can also fix incorrect names while viewing a photo in your library. Swipe up to see the photo information. Tap the incorrectly named person or pet in the bottom-left corner of the photo, then tap This is Not *[name]*.

Sort People & Pets alphabetically or manually

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap People & Pets in the sidebar.
3. Tap Sort, then choose one of the following:
 - *Sort alphabetically*: Tap Name.
 - *Sort manually*: Tap Custom, then touch and hold a key photo and drag it to a new position.

Remove a person or pet

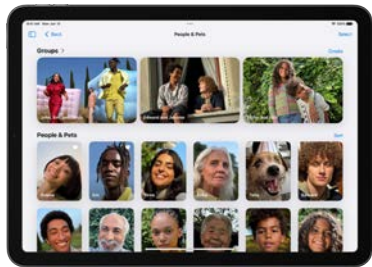
1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap People & Pets, then touch and hold the person or pet you want to remove.
3. Tap Hide *[name]*.

Tip: If you prefer, you can feature a person or pet less frequently instead of removing them. See [Show a person less frequently or not at all](#)

When you use [iCloud Photos](#), People & Pets is kept up to date on all your devices.

Find group photos on iPad

The Photos app recognizes groups of people and pets who often appear together in pictures and videos, and sorts them into group collections. For example, if you have many pictures of your family or group of friends, Photos creates a collection for each of those groups.



Find group photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
 2. Tap People & Pets in the sidebar.
 3. Below Groups, swipe to find the group you're looking for, then tap to see all your photos with that group.
- Tip:** To see photos with the group members and other people, tap , tap View Options, then tap Include Other People.

To share the photos in the group, tap , then tap Share Photos.

Create a group

You can create a group with any combination of people and pets from the People & Pets collection.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap People & Pets in the sidebar.
3. To the right of Groups, tap Create.
4. Select the people and pets you want in the group, then tap Add.
5. Tap the default name and type a custom name for the group, then tap Done.

Edit or delete a group

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap People & Pets in the sidebar.
3. Below Groups, touch and hold the group you want to edit, then do one of the following:
 - *Rename the group*: Tap Edit Name and People, then type a new name.
 - *Add or remove people*: Tap Edit Name and People. To remove someone, tap  at the top-left corner of their picture. Tap Add People & Pets to add someone.
 - *Edit the Group photo*: Tap Edit Name and People, then tap Edit Key Photo.
 - *Delete the Group*: Tap Delete This Group.

Change the order of groups

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap People & Pets in the sidebar.
3. Touch and hold a group, then drag it to a new position.

Browse photos by location on iPad

The Photos app creates collections of your photos and videos based on where they were taken. You can use the Map view to see photos taken in a specific location, look for photos taken nearby, and see collections of photos on a map.

Browse photos by location

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. In the sidebar, tap Pinned Collections, then tap Map.
Only pictures and videos that have embedded location information (GPS data) are included.
Tip: Pinch the map to zoom in and out, or drag to see more locations.

See where a photo was taken

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a photo, then swipe up to [see photo and video information](#).
3. Tap the map or address link to see more details.
Tip: To see more photos from this location, tap Show Nearby Photos.

To change the location or address where the photo was taken, see [Change the date, time, or location](#).

Find recently saved photos on iPad

You can find all the photos you've saved from other apps—like Messages, Safari, and Mail—in the Recently Saved collection. Photos and videos that were sent to you using AirDrop also appear here.



1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - In the sidebar, tap Pinned Collections, then tap Recently Saved.
 - Swipe down on the grid, tap , then tap Sort by Recently Added.

To see where you saved a photo or video from, open it, then swipe up to see information about the photo.

Tip: To see photos you saved today, tap  in Recent Days.

Find your travel photos on iPad

In the Photos app, you can quickly find photos and videos from your trips grouped into collections, based on location data from the photos.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Scroll down to Trips, then tap the trip collection you want to view.
To find travel photos from an older trip, tap Trips, then choose a year to browse.

Find receipts, QR codes, recently edited photos, and more on iPad

In the Photos app, you can find collections of photos and videos in Utilities. You can easily revisit photos you recently edited, saved, viewed, or shared, or find collections of photos based on the content of the photo—like documents, receipts, handwriting, illustrations, and QR codes.

Find receipts, QR codes, and more in Utilities

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Scroll down, then tap Utilities.
3. Tap the collection you want to view.

Note: Some Utilities collections, like Hidden and Recently Deleted, are locked by default for your privacy. See [Lock and unlock the Recently Deleted and Hidden collections](#).

Find recovered items and save or delete them

If a photo or video wasn't saved properly and couldn't be added to your library, you may find a copy of it in Recovered.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Scroll down, then tap Utilities.
3. Tap Recovered, then tap the photo or video you want to recover.
4. Tap Permanently Delete or Restore to Library.

Important: When you delete a recovered photo or video, it's deleted permanently. You can't recover photos that you deleted from the Recovered collection in Utilities.

Find screenshots, Live Photos, and more by media type on iPad

In the Photos app, you can find what you're looking for by media type. For example, browse all your portrait photos or time-lapse videos in one place.



1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Scroll down, then tap Media Types.
3. Tap the type of photo or video you want to view.

Customize the Photos app on iPad

You can remove, reorder, and pin collections to organize them the way you want.

Reorder collections

You can change the order of collections so that the items you use most frequently are the first ones you see below the photo grid. For example, if you frequently view your photo albums, you can move them above other collections.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the app, then tap Customize & Reorder.
3. Drag the collections into a new order.

Hide or unhide a collection

You can hide any collections you don't want displayed. When you hide a collection, none of your photos are lost. You can unhide the collection at any time to view the photos in it.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the app, then tap Customize & Reorder.
3. Deselect the collections you want to hide.
4. To unhide a collection, select its checkbox.

To reset all your collections back to the default, tap Reset.

Pin a collection

You can choose what albums and collections appear in Pinned Collections, to make them easy to find.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Scroll down, then tap Pinned Collections.
3. Tap Modify, then do any of the following:
 - *Remove a pinned collection:* Tap , then tap Delete.
 - *Pin a collection:* Tap the suggested collection you want to add, or tap Any Collection or Album to see more options.
 - *Reorder pinned collections:* Drag the collections into a new order.

Note: The collections with next to them are currently in your pinned collections. The collections with next to them are not yet pinned.

Set the background color of Edit mode

By default, the background of Edit mode matches the light or dark appearance of your iPad. You can change the background color of Edit mode—for example, set it to always appear dark if you prefer to edit photos against a dark background.

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPad.

2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap .
3. Tap , tap Appearance, then do one of the following:
 - *Match edit mode to the light or dark appearance of your iPad:* Tap System.
 - *Make Edit mode always appear dark:* Tap Dark.
 - *Make Edit mode always appear light:* Tap Light.

Reset suggestions and hide or show featured content

You can reset suggested memories and People & Pets suggestions, and turn featured content and holiday events on or off.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Hide featured content and memories:* Turn off Show Featured Content to prevent Photos from automatically generating featured photos and memories.
 - *Turn off holiday events:* Turn off Show Holiday Events to prevent Photos from creating memories and featured content about holidays.
 - *Reset memories:* Tap Reset Suggested Memories to bring back any memories you altered or featured less.
 - *Reset people and pets:* Tap Reset People & Pets Suggestions to bring back any people or pets you featured less.

Turn off autoplay of videos and Live Photos

By default, videos and Live Photos automatically play when you open collections and albums. You can turn autoplay on or off.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Turn Auto-Play Motion on or off.

Turn off the preview view in collections and albums

By default, a preview of your best shots automatically plays at the top of the screen when you open collections and albums. You can turn automatic previewing on or off.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a collection or album, then tap .
3. Tap Hide Preview.
To turn it back on, tap , then tap Show Preview.

Filter and sort the photo library on iPad

To help you find the photos and videos you're looking for, you can change how items in the library are sorted, filter the library to show only particular items, and change the layout of the photo grid.

Choose how to sort the library

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe down on the photo grid to browse through your library.
3. Tap , then choose how to sort the items in your library:
 - *By when you took, imported, or saved each item:* Tap Sort by Recently Added. Photos and videos you added most recently appear at the bottom of the library.
 - *By when each item was originally captured:* Tap Sort by Date Captured. Photos and videos you save or import are organized by the date they were taken, not the date you saved them to the Photos app.

Filter the library

You can filter the library to only see particular items, and temporarily hide everything else.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe down on the photo grid to browse through your library.
3. Tap , then tap Filter.
4. Choose one or more filters to apply.
You can apply multiple filters at the same time. For example, select Photos and Edited to see only photos you've edited.
5. To remove the filters and return to the full library, tap All Items.

Hide or unhide screenshots from the photo library

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe down on the photo grid to browse through your library.
3. Tap , then tap View Options.
4. Select Screenshots to show screenshots in the photo library.

You can deselect screenshots at any time to hide them.

Change the layout of the photo grid

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe down on the photo grid to browse through your library.
3. Tap , then tap View Options.
4. Choose any of the following:
 - *Zoom In*: See each photo or video thumbnail larger.
 - *Zoom Out*: See more photos and video thumbnails at the same time.
 - *Aspect Ratio Grid*: View each photo or video thumbnail in its actual shape, horizontal or vertical. To return to square thumbnails, tap Square Photo Grid.
 - *Unhide Screenshots*: By default, screenshots are hidden in the library. Select Screenshots to unhide them.
 - *Show Shared with You*: Show photos and videos in the library that someone shared with you in Messages.

Back up and sync your photos with iCloud

You can use iCloud Photos to keep your photos and videos securely stored in iCloud. If you turn on iCloud Photos on all your devices, you can see the photos and videos you took on iPad on any device. You can also access your iCloud photos and videos in a web browser.

When iCloud Photos is turned on, the photos and videos you take are uploaded automatically and stored in their original format at full resolution. Any changes you make to your photo collection on one device are reflected on your other devices, too.

Note: Make sure that you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) on all your devices, and that your devices meet these minimum system requirements: iOS 8.3, iPadOS 13.1, macOS 10.10.3, or later, or a Windows device with iCloud for Windows 7.x or later.

To learn more, see [Set up iCloud Photos on all your devices](#).

Turn on iCloud Photos

1. Tap Settings  > [your name] > iCloud.
2. Tap Photos, then turn on Sync this iPad.

iCloud automatically uploads every photo and video you take to iCloud, so your photos are backed up and in sync, and you can access your library from any device, anytime.

Check if your photos are backed up to iCloud

You can check that iCloud Photos is syncing your photos to iCloud, so that you have copies if something happens to your iPad. If syncing is paused, it means your photos are not being backed up to iCloud.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. In the top-right corner of the screen, you can see a preview of your syncing status. You may see any of the following:
 - *Yellow badge*: iCloud syncing is paused. Tap your account icon to see the details.
 - *Yellow warning icon*: Your iCloud storage is almost full. Tap your account icon to see the details.
 - *Red exclamation mark*: Your iCloud storage is full. See [Save space](#) or [Get more iCloud storage](#).
 - *Blue badge*: You have notifications from a shared library or shared album. Tap your account icon to see the details.
 - *Partially filled blue circle around your account icon*: Photos are actively uploading to iCloud. Tap your account icon to see the details.
 - *Partially filled gray outline around your account icon*: Uploads are paused. Tap your account icon to see the details.
3. Tap your account to see more details. The last time your iPad synced with iCloud appears below the account profile.

Save space on your iPad

iCloud Photos can help you make the most of the storage space on your iPad. When Optimize iPad Storage is turned on, all your full-resolution photos and videos are stored in iCloud in their original formats, with storage-saving versions kept on your iPad. Optimize iPad Storage is turned on by default.

To turn it off, go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud. Tap Photos, then tap Download and Keep Originals.

Get more iCloud storage

If your uploaded photos and videos exceed your storage plan, you can upgrade to iCloud+ for more storage and additional features. See [Subscribe to iCloud+](#).

Delete or hide photos and videos on iPad

<__ class=" __ GenerativeKeywords" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

In the Photos app, you can delete photos and videos from your iPad or hide them. You can also recover photos you recently deleted. Photos you delete and hide are saved in Recently Deleted and Hidden, which you unlock using Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

When you [use iCloud Photos](#), any photos you delete or hide are deleted or hidden on all your devices.

Delete or hide a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. While viewing a photo or video, do any of the following:
 - **Delete:** Tap  to delete a photo from your iPad and other devices where iCloud Photos is turned on and you're signed in to the same Apple Account.
Deleted photos and videos are kept in Recently Deleted for 30 days. During that time, you can recover or permanently remove them from all devices.
 - **Hide:** Tap , then tap Hide.
Hidden photos are moved to the Hidden collection. You can't view them anywhere else.
To turn off the Hidden collection so it doesn't appear in the Photos app, see [Hide the Hidden collection from view](#).

Delete or hide multiple photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe down to see the full photo grid.
3. Tap Select, then tap the photos and videos you want to delete or hide.
4. Do any of the following:
 - **Delete:** Tap  to delete the items from your iPad and other devices where iCloud Photos is turned on and you're signed in to the same Apple Account.
Deleted photos and videos are kept in Recently Deleted, below Utilities in the sidebar, for 30 days. During that time, you can recover or permanently remove them from all devices.
 - **Hide:** Tap , then tap Hide.
Hidden photos and videos are kept in Hidden, below Utilities in the sidebar.

Unhide photos

You can unhide a photo you previously hid, so that it reappears in your photo library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Utilities in the sidebar, then tap Hidden.
3. Tap the photo you want to unhide.
4. Tap , then tap Unhide.

Recover or permanently delete deleted photos

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Utilities in the sidebar, then tap Recently Deleted.
3. Tap Select, then choose the photos and videos you want to recover or delete.
4. Tap  at the bottom of the screen, then tap Recover or Delete.

Note: If the photos you're looking for don't appear in Recently Deleted, they may be in Recovered. See [Find recovered items and save or delete them](#).

Lock and unlock the Recently Deleted and Hidden collections

Recently Deleted and Hidden are locked by default. You unlock these collections using Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

To change the default setting from locked to unlocked, go to Settings >  > Apps > Photos, then turn off Use Touch ID, Use Face ID, or Use Passcode.

Hide the Hidden collection from view

By default, the Hidden collection is locked. You can add an extra layer of privacy by removing it from view.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Turn off Hidden Album.

Search for photos and videos on iPad

When you tap Search in the Photos app, you see suggestions of dates, people, and locations to help you find what you're looking for.

Tap the suggestions or type keywords into the search field—for example, a person’s name, date, or location—to help you find a specific photo.

Tip: You can also find photos and videos in your photo library when you [search with Spotlight on iPad](#).



Search for photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. In the top-right corner of the screen, tap Search.
3. Search by any of the following:
 - Date (month or year)
 - Place (city or state)
 - Business names (museums or restaurants, for example)
 - Category (beach or sunset, for example)
 - Events (sports games or concerts, for example)
 - A person identified in People & Pets (see [Find and name people and pets](#))
 - Text (an email address or phone number, for example)
 - Caption (see [See photo and video information](#))

Tip: Looking for something more specific? Refine your search with multiple keywords—keep adding keywords until you find the right photo. Search also suggests keywords to add to your search.

Search by shared library participant

If you’re a participant in an [iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), you can also search by the person who added the photo or video to the library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. In the top-right corner of the screen, tap Search, then enter “Shared by.”
3. Tap a suggested name.

Get wallpaper suggestions in Photos on iPad

You can get wallpaper suggestions for your Lock Screen or Home Screen that stylize photos of your favorite people and pets.



1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Scroll down, then tap a suggested wallpaper (below Wallpaper Suggestions).

To customize the Lock Screen, including choosing colors, clock font, and more, see [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).

Watch and personalize memories

Watch memories in Photos on iPad

The Memories feature in the Photos app creates personalized collections of photos and videos that are set to music and play like a movie. Each memory features a significant person, place, or event from your photo library. You can also create your own memories and share them with your friends and family.



Play a memory

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then tap a memory to play it.
3. As you watch, you can do any of the following:
 - *Pause:* Tap the screen, then tap .
 - *Go backward or forward:* Swipe left or right on the screen. Or tap the screen, then slide the frames at the bottom of the screen left or right.
 - *Close a memory:* Tap the screen, then tap .

Tip: To set a memory to loop, tap , then tap Loop Movie.

Create a memory

You can create your own memory from an event, a specific day in your library, or an album.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap an existing collection or album, then tap Movie to watch the photos and videos as a memory.
To create a memory from scratch, [create a photo album](#), then follow the steps above to watch it as a memory.

Share a memory as a video

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then tap the memory you want to share.
3. While the memory plays, tap the screen, then tap .
4. Tap Share Movie, then choose a sharing method, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.

Tip: To send just the photos in the memory, not the full movie, tap Photos at the bottom of the screen, tap , then tap Share Photos.

Share all the photos from a memory

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then tap the memory you want to share.
3. While the memory plays, tap the screen, then tap Photos.
4. Tap , then tap Share Photos.
5. Choose a sharing method, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.

Add a memory to Favorites

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then tap  in the top-right corner of the memory.

To view your favorite memories, tap Memories, then tap Favorites.

Delete a memory

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then touch and hold the memory you want to delete.
3. Tap Delete Memory.

Personalize your memories in Photos on iPad

In the Photos app, you can edit your memory movies to make them even more personal. Try out Memory mixes, which let you apply different songs with a matching photographic look. You can also choose new songs, edit the title of a memory, change the length, and add, reorder, or remove photos.

Apple Music subscribers can add songs from the millions of songs available in the Apple Music catalog.



Add a Memory mix

Memory mixes are curated combinations of different songs, pacing, and styles that change the look and feel of a memory.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, then tap .
4. Swipe left to view different Memory mixes.
5. Tap the screen to apply a Memory mix.

Change the Memory look

Use Memory looks to apply consistent color and style adjustments to all the photos in a memory.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, then tap .
4. Tap .
5. Tap a Memory look, then tap Done.

Change the music

You can change a memory's music by choosing from memory soundtracks or suggested songs in Apple Music. Apple Music subscribers can also access their Apple Music library and view suggested songs based on musical preferences or the content of the memory.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, then tap .
4. Tap .
- Apple Music subscribers can tap  to search for songs in the Apple Music library.
5. Tap a song, then tap Done.

Add or remove photos

You can choose the photos that appear in a memory—add or remove suggested featured photos, or choose photos and videos directly from your library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, tap Photos, then tap .
4. Tap Edit Title and Photos, then tap Add Photos.
5. Do any of the following:
 - *Add a photo from your photo library:* Tap All, scroll through your library, then tap the photos you want to add.
 - *Remove photos:* Deselect a photo to remove it from the memory.
 - *Search for photos in your photo library:* Tap the search bar, then type the name of a person, place, or date. Tap a search result, then tap the photos you want to add.
6. Tap Done.

Edit the title, subtitle, and key photo

You can edit the title or subtitle of a memory movie, or change the key photo that appears with the title of the memory movie.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, then tap .

4. Tap Edit Movie Title, then do any of the following:
 - *Edit the memory title or subtitle*: Enter a new title or subtitle in the text fields.
 - *Change the key photo*: Tap Edit Key Photo, then tap a photo.
5. Tap Done.

Reorder photos in a memory

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then tap a memory to play it.
3. While the memory plays, tap the screen, then tap .
4. Tap Edit Movie Timeline, touch and hold a photo, then drag it to a new position in the grid.
5. Tap < to return to the memory.

Change the length of a memory

Depending on the number of photos in a memory, you can change the length of a memory to be short, medium, or long. Your choice automatically adjusts the number of photos included.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Memories in the sidebar, then tap a memory to play it.
3. Tap the screen, then tap .
4. Tap Short, Medium, or Long.

If you customized the length of the movie by adding or removing photos yourself, Custom is selected as the length.

Make and play slideshows in Photos on iPad

In the Photos app, you can create a slideshow to view a collection of photos and videos that you choose from your library. Slideshows are automatically formatted and set to music.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe down to see the photo grid, then tap Select.
3. Tap each photo you want to include in the slideshow, then tap .
4. Tap Play as Slideshow.

Note: Your slideshow is automatically saved as a memory. To view it later, scroll down to the Memories section of the Photos app.

To change the slideshow music, theme, and more, see [Personalize your memories](#).

Feature a person or holidays less often in Photos on iPad

The Photos app can show certain people, days, and holidays less frequently or not at all in your memories, in featured photos, and in the Photos widget. You can also turn off memories and featured photos in the Photos app and the widget on your iPad Home Screen.

Show a person less frequently or not at all

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a photo of the person you want to show less often.
3. Tap , then tap Feature This Person Less.
4. Choose Feature This Person Less, then choose an option.
5. Tap Confirm.

Turn off holiday memories

You can turn off all memories that feature holiday events in your home country or region.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Photos.
2. Turn off Show Holiday Events.

Turn off Memories and Featured Photos

You can turn off Memories and Featured Photos in the For You section of the Photos app and the Photos widget.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Photos.
2. Turn off Show Featured Content.

Use photo albums

Create photo albums on iPad

Use albums in the Photos app to view and organize your photos and videos.



If you use iCloud Photos, albums are stored in iCloud. They're up to date and accessible on devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. See [Back up and sync your photos with iCloud](#).

Create a new album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Albums, then tap Create.
3. Tap New Album, then add a name for your album, add photos, and choose a key photo to represent the album.
4. Tap Done.

To create an album you collaborate on with other people, see [Create shared albums](#).

Add a photo or video from your library to an album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the photo or video you want to add, then tap .
- If you want to add multiple photos and videos at once, tap Select, tap the photo and video thumbnails you want to add, then tap .
3. Tap Add to Album, then do one of the following:
 - *Add to an existing album:* Tap an existing album below My Albums.
 - *Start a new album:* Tap , then give the album a name.

Edit and organize albums in iPad

You can update, rename, rearrange, and delete albums in the Photos app. You can also create folders to contain multiple albums. For example, you could create a folder named "Vacations," and then create multiple albums within the folder of all your vacations.

Add photos to an album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
 2. Tap Albums, then tap the album.
 3. Tap  after the last photo in the album's photo grid.
 4. Select the photos or videos you want to add to the album, then tap Add.
- Tip:** Use the search field at the top of the screen to find photos from a specific time or place.

Remove photos from an album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Albums, then tap the album to open it.
3. Tap the photo or video you want to remove to view it in full screen, then tap .
4. Choose one of the following:
 - *Remove from Album:* The photo is removed from that album, but remains in other albums and your library.
 - *Delete from Library:* The photo is removed from all albums and your library and moved to Recently Deleted.

To remove multiple photos or videos from an album, tap Select, tap the photo and video thumbnails you want to remove, then tap .

Rename an album

You can rename an album that you created in Photos.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Albums, then tap the album to open it.
3. Tap , then tap Edit Title and Photos.
4. Enter the new name in the text field, then tap Done.

Delete albums

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.

2. Tap Albums, then touch and hold the album you want to delete.
3. Tap Delete Album.

Organize albums in folders

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Albums, tap Create, then choose New Folder.
3. Name the folder, then tap .

To remove an album from a folder, tap the folder to open it, touch and hold an album, then tap Move Album out of "[name]."

Filter and sort photos and videos in albums on iPad

You can filter and sort photos and videos in the albums you create in the Photos app. For example, you can filter an album to show only photos, only videos, or photos and videos you marked as favorites. You can also sort photos and videos in an album by newest to oldest, oldest to newest, or in a custom order.

Filter photos and videos in an album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Albums, then open an album.
3. Tap , tap Filter, then choose an option.
4. Tap Done.

To remove a filter from an album, tap the icon that replaced  in the bottom-left corner of the screen, tap Filter, then tap All Items.

Sort photos and videos by oldest or newest

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Albums, then open an album.
3. Tap , then choose an option.

To quickly customize the order, you can also touch and hold a photo or video thumbnail, then drag it where you want it to appear.

Share photos and videos

Share photos and videos on iPad

You can share photos and videos in Mail or Messages, or other apps you install. You can also use [AirDrop](#) to instantly share photos with anyone nearby on an iPhone, iPad, Mac, or Apple Vision Pro.

To learn about transferring photos and videos to an external storage device, see [Import and export photos and videos](#).

Share photos and videos

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Share a single photo or video:* Open the photo or video, tap , then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.



- *Share multiple photos or videos:* When viewing a screen with multiple thumbnails, tap Select, then tap the thumbnails of the photos and videos you want to share. Tap , then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.
- *Share all the photos in a collection:* While viewing a collection—like a collection from Recent Days, Memories, or Trips—tap , tap Share Photos, then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.

You can also create a shared album so that you can collaborate on the album with just the people you choose. See [Create shared albums](#).

Note: The size limit of attachments is determined by your service provider. For devices or services that don't support Live Photos, a Live Photo is shared as a still photo.

Adjust the information you share about a photo

Before you share a photo or video, you can adjust the format, file type, and information that gets shared with it.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.

2. Open the photo or video, tap , tap Options, then do any of the following:

- *Turn off location data:* Turn off Location.
- *Adjust the file format:* Tap Automatic for the best file format for the destination, tap Current to prevent a file format conversion, or tap Most Compatible and files may convert to JPEG or MOV.
- *Send as iCloud link:* Turn on iCloud Link to share a URL to view or download the photos or videos. iCloud links are available for 30 days.
- *Send all photo data:* Turn on All Photos Data to share the original file with edit history and metadata; the recipient can view and modify the current version (available with AirDrop and iCloud links only).

3. Tap Done.

Save or share a photo or video you receive

You can save photos shared with you from other apps, like Messages or Mail.

Touch and hold the photo or video, then tap .

To view your saved photos and videos, see [Find recently saved photos](#).

See photos and videos shared with you in Messages

You can see photos shared with you in conversations in Messages—even if you haven't saved them.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Shared with You.

To save a photo, tap it, then tap Save Shared Photo.

Share long videos on iPad

Some long video files are too large to send in a standard text message. You can use AirDrop, iCloud, or Mail Drop to send long videos that you record with your iPad camera.

Send a video using AirDrop

The simplest way to send a large video to a nearby iPhone, iPad, Mac, or Apple Vision Pro is with AirDrop[®]. AirDrop sends information using Wi-Fi and Bluetooth[®], so before sending, make sure both you and the recipient have these controls turned on in [Control Center](#).

1. If the person you're sending the video to isn't in your contacts, have them do one of the following:
 - *On iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings  > General > AirDrop, then tap Everyone for 10 Minutes.
 - *On a Mac:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click General in the sidebar. Click AirDrop & Handoff, then click the pop-up menu next to AirDrop and choose Everyone.

2. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.

3. Tap the video you want to send, then tap .

If you want to send the video in its original format, including metadata, location, and any associated edit history or captions, tap Options, then turn on All Photos Data.

4. Tap AirDrop, then tap the contact or device you want to share with.

After you share, the recipient receives an alert to accept or decline the AirDrop transfer.

Send a video using an iCloud link

An iCloud link is a URL that you can use to send a large video with Messages or Mail.

To send an iCloud link, make sure you have [iCloud Photos turned on](#). Then follow these steps:

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the video you want to send, then tap .
3. Tap Options, then tap iCloud Link.
4. Go to Messages , Mail , or another communication app, then enter the recipient of the iCloud link. Paste the iCloud link into a message, and send it.

Recipients have 30 days to download a video sent with an iCloud link.

Send a video using Mail Drop

With Mail Drop, you can send a large video as an attachment in Mail.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the video you want to send, tap , then tap Mail.
3. Tap the To field, then enter the name or email of the recipient.

If you want to add a subject or message, tap the Subject field or message body.

4. Tap  to send.

Recipients have 30 days to download Mail Drop attachments.

Create shared albums in Photos on iPad

With the Shared Albums feature, you can create albums to share photos and videos with just the subscribers you choose—and they can add their own photos, videos, and comments for everyone to see. If you set up a shared album, you can also rename or delete it.

Before you begin

1. Make sure you're signed in to your [Apple Account](#) on your iPad and any other devices you want to use with Shared Albums.
2. Go to Settings  > *[your name]* > iCloud > Photos, then turn on Shared Albums.

Create a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  to show the sidebar, then tap Shared Albums.
3. Tap Shared Albums, then tap Create.
4. Enter a name for the album, then tap Done.
5. To invite people, tap Invite. Enter the name of a contact you want to add, or type the email address or phone number associated with the recipient's Apple Account. See [Invite or remove people](#).

Join a shared album

When you're invited to join a shared album, a notification appears on your iPad screen.

Tap the notification, then tap Accept on the album in the Photos app.

If you don't join the shared album by tapping the notification, you can also do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap For You.
3. Tap Accept on the new album, below Shared Album Activity.

Note: The person who created the album receives a notification when a subscriber accepts the invitation to join the shared album.

Rename a shared album

The creator of a shared album can change its name.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Shared Albums in the sidebar, then tap an album.
3. Tap , then tap Shared Album Details.
4. Enter a new name, then tap Done.

Delete or remove yourself from a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Shared Albums in the sidebar, then tap an album.
3. Tap .
4. Tap Delete Shared Album if you created the album, or tap Unsubscribe if you're a subscriber.

Photos that you saved or downloaded from a shared album to your photo library stay in your library even if the shared album is deleted, or the person who created the album stops sharing it. See [Save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library](#).

Add and remove people in a shared album in Photos on iPad

If you're the creator of a shared album, you can invite more subscribers to join the album. You can also remove subscribers from the album, manage album notifications, and turn posting for subscribers off and on. If you have friends and family who don't use iCloud, you can share the album with them by sending an iCloud URL.

Invite or remove people

The creator of a shared album can invite new subscribers to join the shared album.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Shared Albums in the sidebar, then tap an album.
3. Tap .
4. Do any of the following:
 - *Invite someone:* Tap Invite, then enter the name of the contact you want to add, or type an email address or phone number.
 - *Remove someone:* Tap the name, then tap Remove Subscriber.

Share an album with people who don't use iCloud

The creator of a shared album can create a unique iCloud URL to share the album with people who don't use iCloud.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Shared Albums in the sidebar, then tap an album.
3. Tap , then tap Shared Album Details.
4. Turn on Public Website.
5. Tap Share Link, then choose how you want to share—Mail or Messages, for example.
6. Enter the names, phone numbers, or email addresses of the people you want to share the link with, then send the link.

When Public Website is turned on, anyone with the URL can access the album.

Manage posts and notifications

The creator of a shared album can turn subscriber posting and album activity notifications off and on.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Shared Albums in the sidebar, then tap an album.
3. Tap , tap Shared Album Details, then do any of the following:
 - *Only allow yourself to post photos and videos:* Turn off Participants Can Add Photos; tap again to turn participant posting back on.
 - *Turn off notifications:* Turn off Notifications to stop notifications when subscribers like, comment, or add photos and videos to the album; tap again to turn album notifications back on.
4. Tap Done.

When participants post or comment in a shared album you're a part of, notifications about the activity appear just below the photo grid. To stop getting activity updates, tap your account in the top-right corner, then turn off Shared Albums Activity.

Add and delete photos and videos in a shared album on iPad

You can add and delete photos and videos in a shared album. You can also save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library.

Add photos and videos to a shared album

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Shared Albums in the sidebar, then tap the album.
3. Tap , then tap Add Photos.
4. Select photos and videos, then tap Add.

When you add new photos, the people you share the album with are automatically notified.

Delete photos, videos, and comments from a shared album

The creator of a shared album can delete any photos, videos, or comments in the album. Subscribers can delete anything that they personally added. Anything that gets deleted is automatically deleted from the shared album on all your devices and the devices of all subscribers.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Shared Albums in the sidebar, then tap the album.
3. Touch and hold a photo or video, then tap Delete from Shared Album.

To delete a comment, touch and hold it, then tap Delete.

Save photos and videos from a shared album to your photo library

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the shared album in the sidebar, then tap a photo or video.
3. Tap , swipe up, then tap Save Image or Save Video.

Set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPad

With the iCloud Shared Photo Library feature, you can set up or join a shared library to share photos and videos with up to five friends or family members. You and those close to you can collaborate on the photo collection and enjoy more complete memories, all in one place. You can belong to one shared library at a time.

When you join a shared library, the photos and videos that you contribute move from your personal library to the shared library, and all members of the library can view, edit, and delete them. Shared library photos and videos are integrated seamlessly in the Photos app alongside your personal content, but you can also use a filter to quickly [switch between your personal and shared libraries](#).

Note: iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, or later are required to use iCloud Shared Photo Library. Photos and videos added to a shared library won't be available on devices with earlier versions of the software.

Before you begin

Before you set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, make sure you have iCloud Photos turned on.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Photos, then make sure Sync this iPad is on.

Note: You don't need [Family Sharing](#) turned on to set up a shared library.

Set up an iCloud Shared Photo Library

The person who sets up an iCloud Shared Photo Library is the organizer.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Shared Library, then follow the instructions onscreen to add participants and move photos and videos into the shared library.

Note: Photos and videos you add to the shared library don't appear in your personal library; see [Switch between viewing your iCloud Shared Photo Library and personal library](#).

You can preview the photos and videos you add to the shared library and make changes before you invite participants using Messages or a web link.

Join an iCloud Shared Photo Library

To join an iCloud Shared Photo Library, tap the invitation sent from the organizer, tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions. During setup, you can add photos and videos to the shared library the same way as the organizer (see [Set up an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#)).

After you join a shared library, you can add photos and videos to the shared library in several ways, and access the same content within the shared library as the organizer and other participants. See [Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#).

Add participants to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

The person who sets up an iCloud Shared Photo Library (the organizer) can add new participants to the shared library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Manage to the right of Shared Library, then tap Add Participants.

Note: A shared library can include up to six participants including the organizer; you can belong to one shared library at a time.

Delete or leave an iCloud Shared Photo Library

If you're the organizer of an iCloud Shared Photo Library, you can delete it. If you aren't the organizer, you can leave the shared library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Manage to the right of Shared Library, then tap one of the following:
 - *Delete Shared Library:* When a shared library is deleted, participants who have been members of the shared library for more than 7 days can copy everything from the shared library into their own libraries. Participants who have been members for less than 7 days can copy only the content they contributed.
 - *Leave Shared Library:* When you leave a shared library, you can copy everything from the shared library into your own library, or just the content you contributed.

All content added to a shared library counts toward the iCloud storage space of the library organizer. See [Add storage space to your iCloud Shared Photo Library](#).

Use iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPad

After you [set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), you can share photos and videos with friends and family in the Photos app. You and up to five other participants can add photos and videos to the library, and any edits, comments, or other adjustments made to them are seen by everyone in real time. Content in a shared library is also added to everyone's memories, featured photos, and the Photos widget.

Photos and videos added to the shared library are separate from your personal library. You can easily switch between viewing the shared library, your personal library, or both in the Photos app.

Switch between viewing your iCloud Shared Photo Library and personal library

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner, then do any of the following:
 - *View your Photos content and iCloud Shared Photo Library content:* Tap  Both Libraries.
 - *View only your personal Photos content:* Tap  Personal Library.
 - *View only iCloud Shared Photo Library content:* Tap  Shared Library.

Content that's part of the shared library has a badge  in the top-right corner of the thumbnail when you select the All Photos option at the top of the screen.

Make edits and changes to content in an iCloud Shared Photo Library

When you make the following changes to photos and videos in an iCloud Shared Photo Library, all participants see the changes:

- Edits; see [Edit photos and videos](#).

- Favorites, captions, keywords, or date and time adjustments; see [See photo and video information](#).
- Deleted content; see [Delete or hide a photo or video](#).

Note: You receive notifications if content you added to the shared library is deleted. To turn off notifications, tap your account in the top-right corner of the screen in Photos, tap Shared Library, then turn off Deletion Notifications. If content you added is deleted, you can move it from Recently Deleted back to your personal library within 30 days.

Move shared content from an iCloud Shared Photo Library to your personal library

Photos that are stored in your shared library have a badge  in their top-right corner. You can move photos and videos that you contributed to the shared library back to your personal library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap the Shared Library button  at the top of the screen.
3. Tap Move to Personal Library.

Add storage space to your iCloud Shared Photo Library

The content in an iCloud Shared Photo Library is available to all participants, but the iCloud storage used to store the content counts against the library organizer's storage space.

If the shared library content exceeds the organizer's available storage space, the organizer can upgrade to iCloud+ or add additional storage to their existing iCloud+ subscription. See [Subscribe to iCloud+](#).

Add content to an iCloud Shared Photo Library on iPad

After you [set up or join](#) an iCloud Shared Photo Library in the Photos app, you can continue to add photos and videos in several ways:

- Manually move photos from your personal library
- Save photos and videos you take directly to the shared library from Camera 
- Share photos you take when other members of the shared library are nearby
- Share photos and videos you take at home

Note: iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, or later are required to use iCloud Shared Photo Library. Photos and videos added to a shared library won't be available on devices with earlier versions of the software.

Manually add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

You can add individual photos and videos from your personal library to the iCloud Shared Photo Library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the photo or video you want to add to view it in full screen on your iPad. Or, to add multiple photos and videos at the same time, tap Select, then tap the thumbnails you want to add.
3. Tap , then tap Move to Shared Library.

After content is moved to the shared library, it's no longer in your personal library and is visible to all of the shared library participants. To move content from the shared library back to your personal library, follow the steps above, but tap Move to Personal Library instead of Move to Shared Library.

Add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library directly from Camera

After you [set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), when you open Camera , a Shared Library button appears on the side of the screen to let you switch between saving photos and videos to your personal library and saving them to the shared library. By default, Camera saves to your personal library. To switch, tap  to save to the shared library; tap  to switch back to your personal library.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, go to Settings  > Photos > Shared Library > Sharing from Camera, then turn Sharing from Camera on or off.

Add photos and videos to an iCloud Shared Photo Library when participants are nearby

When you [set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), you can choose an option so that photos you take when you're near other participants of the shared library are automatically added to the shared library.

To allow iPad to detect when participants of your shared library are nearby, participants need to be [signed in](#) to their Apple Account on their device and have Bluetooth® turned on in Settings  > Bluetooth.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Shared Library, then tap Sharing from Camera.
4. Tap Share Automatically.

Automatically add photos and videos taken at home to an iCloud Shared Photo Library

When you [set up or join an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#), you can have photos and videos you take at home automatically added to the shared library.

To turn the feature on or off after you complete the setup process, do the following:

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Shared Library, then tap Sharing from Camera.
4. Turn Share When At Home on or off.

Turn iCloud Shared Photo Library sharing suggestions on or off

Sharing suggestions recommends photos you might want to add to your iCloud Shared Photo Library, such as photos you took when participants of the shared library were nearby, or photos of people you indicated interest in during the setup process. iPad sends a notification to review sharing suggestions. To turn suggestions on or off, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap For You in the sidebar.
3. Tap your account in the top-right corner.
4. Tap Shared Library, then turn Shared Library Suggestions on or off.

If you want to get sharing suggestions for additional people, tap Add People, tap a person, then tap Add. The person doesn't have to be a member of the shared library.

For more information about accessing content in a shared library, see the Apple Support article [If you are missing photos after joining an iCloud Shared Photo Library](#).

Edit photos and videos

Edit photos and videos on iPad

After you take a photo or video, use the tools in the Photos app to edit it on your iPad. You can adjust the light and color, add a filter, and more.

When you use [iCloud Photos](#), any edits you make are saved across all your devices.

Tip: To choose the background color of Edit mode—for example, to set it to always be dark—see [Set the background color of Edit mode](#).

Adjust light and color

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap .



3. Swipe left under the photo to view the lighting adjustments you can make—for example, Exposure, Brilliance, Highlights, and Shadows.
4. Tap the lighting setting you want to edit, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

The level of adjustment you make for each lighting setting is indicated by the outline around the button, so you can see at a glance which lighting settings have been increased or decreased. Tap the lighting button to switch between the edited photo or video and the original so you can see the difference your edits made.

5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Tip: Tap  to automatically enhance light and color in a photo or video.

Change the Photographic Style of photos captured on iPhone 16 models

If you took a photo with an iPhone 16 model, you can change or edit the Photographic Style in the Photos app.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a photo taken with an iPhone 16, then tap .
3. Make sure Styles is selected on the left side of the screen, then do one of the following:
 - *Choose a style:* Tap a style or slide to select one of the style options on the right side of the screen.
 - *Adjust the tone and color:* Tap , then slide your finger on  to simultaneously adjust the tone and color. Drag your finger on the slider below to adjust the intensity level.

As you make adjustments, the values for tone, color, and intensity are shown at the top of the screen. Tap the round arrow to reset these values.
4. Tap Done.

Apply filter effects

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap .
3. Tap  on the left side of the screen to apply filter effects such as Vivid or Dramatic.
To remove a filter that was applied when you took the photo, choose Original.
4. Tap a filter on the right side of the screen, then drag the slider to adjust the effect.
To compare the edited photo to the original, tap the photo.



5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

Note: For photos taken with an iPhone 16 model, use Photographic Styles instead of filters to give your photos a customized look. See [Change the Photographic Style of photos captured on iPhone 16 models](#).

Copy and paste edits to multiple photos

You can copy the edits you made to one photo (or video) and paste them onto another photo, or a batch or photos, all at once.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open the photo or video that contains the edits you want to copy.
3. Tap , then tap Copy Edits.
4. Review and turn off any edits you don't want to copy, then tap Copy.
5. Tap  to return to your library.
6. Tap Select, then tap the thumbnails of the photos you want to paste the edits onto, or open a single photo or video.
7. Tap , then tap Paste Edits.

Note: Photos automatically adjusts the white balance and exposure of the edited photos to create a better match and make the photos look even more similar.

Add stickers, text, and more to a photo

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it.
3. Tap , then tap .
4. Tap  to add stickers, captions, text, shapes, or even your signature.
5. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel.

Crop, rotate, flip, or straighten photos and videos on iPad

You can use the tools in the Photos app to crop, rotate, flip, straighten, or adjust the size of a photo or video on iPad.

When you use [iCloud Photos](#), any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

Crop, rotate, or flip a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap .

3. Tap  on the left side of the screen, then do any of the following:



- **Crop manually:** Drag the rectangle corners to enclose the area you want to keep in the image, or pinch open or closed.
Note: When you drag a corner, the crop tool keeps the original aspect ratio of the photo. To change the aspect ratio, tap the lock at the top-right corner of the photo to unlock the aspect ratio.
- **Crop to a standard preset ratio:** Tap  at the top of the screen, then choose an option at the bottom of the screen such as, Square, Wallpaper, 9:16, or 5:7.
- **Rotate:** Tap  to rotate the image 90 degrees.
- **Flip:** Tap  to flip the image horizontally.

4. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel, then tap Discard Changes.

To quickly crop a photo while you're viewing it, pinch the photo to zoom in. When the photo appears as you want it cropped, tap Crop in the top-right corner of the screen. Make any further adjustments with the crop tools, then tap Done.

Straighten a photo or video and adjust its perspective

You can straighten a photo or video, or tilt it vertically or horizontally.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap .
3. Tap .
4. Swipe left under the photo to view editing options.
5. Tap the effect you want to edit, then drag the slider to make precise adjustments.

The level of adjustment you make is displayed by the slider. Tap the button to switch between the edited photo or video and the original.

6. Tap Done to save your edits.

Tip: To undo edits after you save, open the photo or video, tap , then tap Revert.

Undo and revert photo edits on iPad

While you edit a photo or video, you can undo and redo changes. After saving, if you don't like how your changes look, you can revert back to the original.

When you use [iCloud Photos](#), any edits you make to your photos and videos are saved across all your devices.

Undo and redo as you edit

As you edit a photo or video, tap  and  at the top of the screen to undo and redo multiple edit steps.

Tip: You can tap the photo or video to compare the edited version to the original.

Revert an edited photo or video

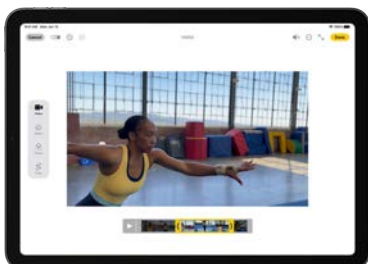
After you edit a photo or video and save your changes, you can revert to the original.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open the edited photo or video, then tap .
3. Tap Revert to Original.

Trim video length, adjust speed, and edit audio on iPad

In the Photos app, you can trim a video you recorded on your iPad to change where it starts and stops. You can also adjust the playback speed, and change the portion of a video that appears in slow motion when you record in Slo-mo mode.

When you capture a video on any iPhone 16 model, you can edit Spatial Audio in the Photos app.



Trim a video

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a video, then tap .
3. Drag either end of the frame viewer to adjust the length, then tap Done.
4. Tap Save Video to save only the trimmed video, or Save Video as New Clip to save both versions of the video.

To undo the trim after you save, open the video, tap , then tap Revert to Original.

Note: A video saved as a new clip can't be reverted to the original.

Edit the video playback speed

You can slow down videos that were captured at a high frame rate for a dramatic effect.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a video, tap , then tap Video.
3. Tap , then tap a playback speed.

Note: The playback options available depend on the format of the video you captured. The larger the format you capture, the more options are available.

Change the slow-motion section of a video shot in Slo-mo mode

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a video shot in Slo-mo mode, then tap .
3. Drag the white vertical bars beneath the frame viewer to set where the video is played in slow motion.
4. Tap Done to save your edits, or if you don't like your changes, tap Cancel.

Edit Spatial Audio captured on iPhone 16 models

When you capture a video on iPhone 16, iPhone 16 Plus, iPhone 16 Pro, or iPhone 16 Pro Max, it records multiple formats like Spatial Audio and Stereo to allow more audio customization. If you record video with Spatial Audio turned on, you can later edit the video sound on your iPad—for example, reduce background noise to focus on the person speaking on camera.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a video, then tap .
3. Tap Audio Mix, then choose one of the following:
 - *Standard*: Play the original audio you recorded.
 - *In-Frame*: Reduce sounds and voices from sources not visible in the video frame.
 - *Studio*: Reduce background sounds and reverb, to make it sound more like you're recording in a professional studio.
 - *Cinematic*: Put all the voices onto a front-facing track and leave environmental noises in surround, like the audio in movies.
4. Drag the slider next to the mix options to increase or decrease the effect and background noise levels.
5. Tap Done.

Edit Cinematic mode videos on iPad

On iPhone 13 and later, Cinematic mode in Camera applies a depth-of-field effect that keeps the subject of your video sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. After capturing the video, you can adjust or remove the Cinematic mode effects in the Photos app.

Cinematic mode videos can be edited on iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation and later), iPad Pro 11-inch (all generations), iPad Air (3rd generation and later), and iPad mini (5th generation and later).

Turn off the Cinematic effect

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap .
3. Tap Cinematic at the top of the screen, then tap Done.

To turn Cinematic mode back on, repeat these steps.

Change the focus subject in a Cinematic mode video

Camera automatically identifies where to focus while you record in Cinematic mode and can automatically change focus if a new subject is identified. You can also change the focus subject manually.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap .

White dots under the frame viewer indicate where Camera automatically changed the focus while recording. Yellow dots indicate where the focus was manually changed.

3. Play the video, or slide the white vertical bar in the frame viewer, to the point where you want to change the focus.

4. Tap the new subject, outlined in yellow, on the screen to change the focus; double-tap to set automatic focus tracking on the subject.
A yellow dot appears under the frame viewer to indicate the focus was changed.
Note: You can also touch and hold the screen to lock the focus at a specific distance from the camera.
5. Repeat the steps above to change focus points throughout the video.
To remove a manual focus change, tap the yellow dot under the frame viewer, then tap .
6. Tap Done to save your changes.

Tap  to switch between automatic focus tracking and the manually selected focus points.

After you save changes, you can revert a Cinematic mode video to the original if you don't like your edits. Open the video, tap , then tap Revert to Original.

Adjust the depth of field in a Cinematic mode video

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a video you recorded in Cinematic mode, then tap .
3. Tap  at the top of the screen.
A slider appears below the video.
4. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the depth of field effect, then tap Done.

To undo the change after you save, open the video, tap , then tap Revert to Original.

Export Cinematic mode videos to your Mac

You can transfer Cinematic mode videos—with depth and focus metadata—from your iPhone to your Mac to edit in other apps.

Note: To edit Cinematic mode videos recorded on an iPhone with iOS 16 or later, make sure your Mac is using macOS 13 or later.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a Cinematic mode video, then tap .
3. Tap Options at the top of the screen, turn on All Photos Data, then tap Done.
4. Tap AirDrop, then tap the device you want to share with (make sure the device you're sharing with has AirDrop turned on).

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Photos, see [Edit a Cinematic mode video](#).

For information about editing Cinematic mode videos on your Mac using Final Cut Pro, iMovie, or Motion, see the Apple Support article [Edit Cinematic mode video in Final Cut Pro, iMovie, and Motion](#).

Export Cinematic mode videos to an external storage device

You can export Cinematic mode videos directly to an external drive, a memory card, or other storage device.

Note: For photos and videos that have been edited, the unmodified original version will be exported.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Select the video you want to export.
3. Tap , then tap Export Unmodified Original.
4. Tap your storage device (below Locations), then tap Save.

Edit Live Photos on iPad

In the Photos app, you can edit Live Photos, change the key photo, and add fun effects like Bounce and Loop.

Make Live Photo edits

In addition to using the [photo editing tools](#), you can also change a Live Photo's key photo, trim its length, mute the sound, and turn a Live Photo into a still photo.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a Live Photo, then tap .

3. Tap , then do any of the following:

- *Set a key photo*: Move the white frame on the frame viewer, tap Make Key Photo, then tap Done.
- *Trim a Live Photo*: Drag either end of the frame viewer to choose the frames the Live Photo plays.
- *Make a still photo*: Tap the Live button at the top of the screen to turn off the Live feature. The Live Photo becomes a still of its key photo.
- *Mute a Live Photo*: Tap  at the top of the screen. Tap again to unmute.



Add effects to a Live Photo

You can add effects to Live Photos to turn them into fun videos.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a Live Photo.
3. Tap  in the top-left corner, then choose one of the following:
 - *Live*: Applies the Live video playback feature.
 - *Loop*: Repeats the action in a continuous looping video.
 - *Bounce*: Rewinds the action backward and forward.
 - *Long Exposure*: Simulates a DSLR-like long exposure effect by blurring motion.
 - *Off*: Turns off the Live video playback feature or applied effect.

Turn a Live Photo into a video

You can turn a Live Photo into a short video to save or share—for example, to share with people not on Apple devices.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a Live Photo, then tap  in the top-right corner.
3. Tap Save as Video.

Edit portraits on iPad

In the Photos app, you can change and adjust the lighting effects, depth of field, and focus point of your portraits.

Change the Portrait Lighting effect

You can apply, change, or remove the Portrait Lighting effects in portraits. You can also edit portraits taken on other devices.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a portrait photo to open it, then tap .
3. Tap , then drag  to choose a lighting effect.
 - *Natural Light*: The face is in sharp focus against a blurred background.
 - *Studio Light*: The face is brightly lit, and the photo has an overall clean look.
 - *Contour Light*: The face has dramatic shadows with highlights and lowlights.
 - *Stage Light*: The face is spotlighted against a deep black background.
 - *Stage Light Mono*: The effect is like Stage Light, but the photo is in classic black and white.
 - *High-Key Light Mono*: Creates a grayscale subject on a white background—iPad Pro 11-inch (2nd generation or later) and iPad Pro 12.9-inch (4th generation or later) only.
4. Drag the slider left or right to adjust the intensity of the lighting effect.

5. Tap Done to save your changes.



Note: To remove Portrait Lighting from a photo, tap , then tap Portrait at the top of the screen.

Blur the background in portraits

On [models that support Depth Control](#), use the Depth Control slider to adjust the level of background blur in your portraits.



1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a portrait photo to open it, then tap .
3. Drag the Depth Control slider to increase or decrease the background blur effect.
A white dot marks the original depth value for the photo.
4. Tap Done.

Change the focus point of a portrait

On your iPad, you can change the subject (or focus point) in a portrait taken on an iPhone 13 or later, with iOS 16 or later using Depth and Focus Control. When you select a new subject, the depth of field (or blur) automatically adjusts so the new subject appears sharp and in focus. Make sure that the new subject isn't blurred or too far in the distance.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a portrait photo to open it, then tap .
3. Tap a new subject or focus point in the photo.
4. Tap Done.

Make stickers from your photos on iPad

In the Photos app, you can make stickers from the subjects in your photos and animated stickers from the subjects in your Live Photos. Then use your stickers to decorate messages, photos, notes, and more.

Turn a photo into a sticker

You can turn the main subject of a photo into a sticker.



1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a photo to open it in full screen.
3. Touch and hold the subject, then let go.
4. Tap Add Sticker.

The sticker appears in your stickers menu, which you can access when you use the iPad onscreen keyboard or Markup tools.

5. Tap Add Effect if you want to apply a visual effect such as Outline, Comic, or Puffy.

Tip: You can use stickers you've created to decorate a photo. See [Edit photos and videos](#).

Turn a Live Photo into an animated sticker

You can turn the moving subject of a Live Photo into an animated sticker.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a Live Photo to open it in full screen.
3. Touch and hold the subject of the Live Photo, slide it up until you see a duplicate image of the subject, then release it.
4. Tap Add Sticker.

The animated sticker appears in your stickers menu, which you can access when you use the iPad onscreen keyboard or Markup tools.

5. Tap Add Effect if you want to apply a visual effect such as Outline, Comic, or Puffy.

Delete a sticker

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a photo, then tap Edit.
3. Tap , then tap .
4. Tap Add Sticker, touch and hold the sticker you want to delete, then tap Remove.

Your stickers sync with iCloud, so they're available on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, and Apple Vision Pro devices where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

Duplicate and copy photos and videos on iPad

In the Photos app on iPad, you can duplicate a photo or video while preserving the original version. You can also copy a photo and then paste it into another document such as an email, text message, or presentation.

Duplicate a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a photo or video, then tap .
3. Tap Duplicate.

A duplicate copy appears next to the original in your library.

Copy a photo

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a photo, then tap .
3. Tap Copy, then paste the photo into another document.

Copy multiple photos or videos

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Library in the sidebar, tap Select, then tap the thumbnails you want to copy.
3. Tap , then tap Copy.
4. Paste the copies into another document.

Merge duplicate photos and videos on iPad

The Photos app identifies duplicate photos and videos in your photo library in Duplicates. You can merge duplicate photos and videos to save space and clean up your library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe from the left edge of the screen or tap  to show the sidebar.
3. Tap Utilities, then tap Duplicates.
4. Tap Merge to combine the duplicates, then tap Merge *[number]* Items.

If you don't have any duplicate photos or videos in your library, Duplicates doesn't appear.

Import and export photos and videos on iPad

You can import photos and videos directly to the Photos app from a digital camera, an SD memory card, or another iPad or iPhone that has a camera. You can also export unmodified versions of your photos and videos directly to an external drive, memory card, or other storage device that's connected to your iPad.

Import photos and videos to your iPad

Import photos and videos saved on another device such as a digital camera or an external drive to the Photos app on your iPad.

1. Insert the camera adapter or card reader into the Lightning connector or USB-C connector, or connect the device directly to your iPad.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Connect a camera:* Connect the adapter to the camera, then turn on the camera and make sure it's in transfer mode. For more information, see the documentation that came with the camera.
 - *Connect an external storage device or insert an SD memory card into the card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.
 - *Connect an iPhone or iPad:* Use the Lightning adapter or the USB-C cable that came with the device to connect it to the camera adapter. Turn on and unlock the device.
3. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
4. Tap Import.
5. Select the photos and videos you want to import, then select your import destination.
 - *Import all items:* Tap Import All.
 - *Import selected items:* Tap the items you want to import (a checkmark appears for each), tap Import, then tap Import Selected.
6. After the photos and videos have been imported, keep or delete them on the camera, card, iPhone, or iPad.
7. Disconnect the camera adapter or card reader.

Export photos and videos to an external storage device

You can export photos and videos you took on your iPad directly to an external drive, a memory card, or other storage device.

Note: For photos and videos that have been edited, the unmodified original version will be exported.

1. Connect your iPad to the storage device using the Lightning or USB-C connector, or connect the device directly to your iPad.
2. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
3. Select the photos and videos you want to export.
4. Tap , then tap Export Unmodified Original.
5. Tap your storage device (below Locations), then tap Save.

Print photos on iPad to an AirPrint-enabled printer

Print your photos directly from the Photos app on your iPad with any AirPrint-enabled device.

Print a photo

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Open a photo, then tap .
3. Tap Print.

Print multiple photos at once

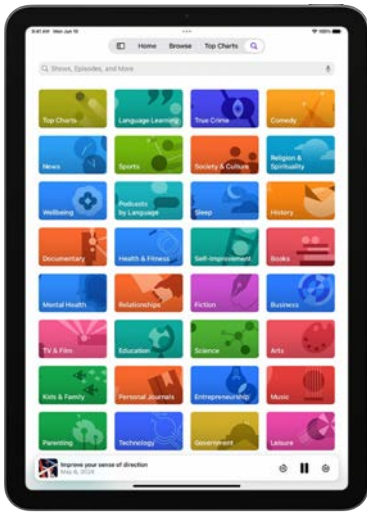
1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe down to view your photo library, then tap Select.
3. Select each photo you want to print, then tap .
4. Tap Print.

Podcasts

Find podcasts on iPad

Use the Podcasts app to find shows about science, news, politics, comedy, and more. If you find a show you like, you can *follow* it to add it to your library. Then you can easily listen offline, get notified about new episodes, access followed shows on your other Apple devices and on the [Apple Podcasts app](#), and more.

Note: Shows may offer paid subscriptions that give you access to exclusive shows and episodes, new releases, episodes without ads, and more. You can [subscribe to a show or channel](#) and manage your subscriptions. If you already subscribe to Apple Music, Apple News+, or an eligible third-party app, you can listen to its subscriber content in Podcasts. See [Listen to subscriber-only content](#).



Find podcasts

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - **Search by title, person, or topic:** Tap  (or tap Search in the sidebar), then enter a word or phrase in the search field. Suggestions appear as you type; you can tap a suggested result, or tap Search on the onscreen keyboard to view all results.
 - **Discover new shows:** Tap Browse to see new and trending shows, and the Apple editorial collections. You can also tap  or Search without typing anything; you see Top Charts and other featured categories.
 - **Add shows by URL:** Below Library in the sidebar, tap Shows, tap , then tap Follow a Show by URL. Enter the URL, then tap Follow.
Note: The URL must be for a valid podcast RSS feed.

Get personalized recommendations

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home.

Suggested shows appear in the You Might Like row. Suggested episodes based on your listening appear in the More to Discover row. Other recommendations are available based on topics you've explored before and any subscriptions you've already purchased.

To opt out of personalized recommendations for Podcasts, tap Home, then tap your profile picture. Tap your name, then turn off Personalized Recommendations.

Note: Your Personalized Recommendations setting also applies to the App Store, Apple Books, iTunes Store, Apple TV, and subscriptions from Apple.

View shared podcasts

When a friend shares a show with you in Messages, you can easily find it in the Podcasts app.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home, then scroll to the Shared with You section.

If you don't see Shared with You, check to make sure your friend is in your contacts, and that Podcasts is turned on in Settings  > Apps > Messages > Shared with You.

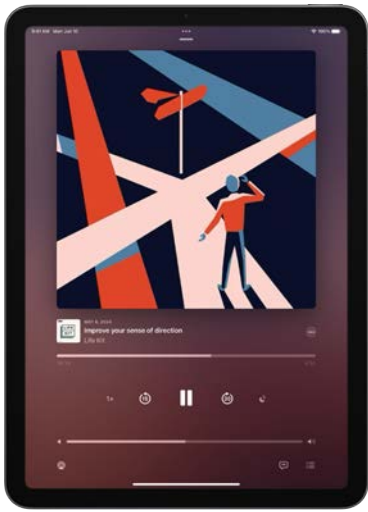
See also [Find all the content someone shared with you.](#)

Browse episodes within a specific podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. [Search or browse](#) to find a show.
3. Tap the show to see its information page.
4. Scroll to see recent episodes or tap See All (if available).

Listen to podcasts on iPad

In the Podcasts app, you can play an episode, see what's playing next, listen to an episode when you're offline, set a sleep timer, and use the playback controls.



Play a podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. [Search or browse](#) to find an episode, then tap ► below the episode title. You can also do any of the following:
 - *Jump to a specific time:* Drag the slider below the episode’s artwork. (If the slider doesn’t appear, tap the player at the bottom to open the Now Playing screen.)
 - *Resume playing a previous show or episode:* Tap Home, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then tap an episode below Recently Played.

Resume playing a previous podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home, scroll to the Recently Played section, then tap ► below an episode title.

Choose what to play next

You can add episodes to Playing Next, then listen to them later.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. [Search or browse](#) to find an episode.
3. Tap ⋮ near an episode, then tap Play Next.
4. Tap the player at the bottom of the screen to open the Now Playing screen, then tap ≡.
5. In the Queue section, do any of the following:
 - *Play an episode:* Tap the episode. The next episode in the queue plays immediately after the previous episode finishes.
 - *Reorder episodes:* Drag ≡ to move an episode up or down in the list.
 - *Remove an episode from the queue:* Swipe left on the episode, then tap Delete.
 - *Remove all episodes from the queue:* Tap Clear.

If you listen to multiple episodes of a show in a row, additional episodes appear in the Continue Playing section of Now Playing. These episodes play after the ones you added to the Queue section, so you can easily pick up where you left off in a show. You can also tap an episode in Continue Playing to start listening right away.

Set a sleep timer

You can set a sleep timer so that playback stops automatically after a specified period of time.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the player at the bottom of the screen to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then choose an option.

Use the playback controls

Tap the player at the bottom of the screen to open the Now Playing screen, then use any of the following controls.

Control	Description
---------	-------------

Control	Description
	Play the current episode.
	Pause playback.
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed.
	Jump back 15 seconds. To change the number of seconds you skip back, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then tap Back.
	Jump forward 30 seconds. To change the number of seconds you skip forward, go to Settings > Apps > Podcasts, then tap Forward.
	Set a timer for podcasts to stop playing.
	Stream the audio to other devices.
	View the episode transcript.
	See what's playing next, or play more episodes from a show you've recently listened to.
	Choose more actions such as sharing or downloading the episode.

View podcast transcripts on iPad

In the Podcasts app, you can view and search episode transcripts.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.

2. Do any of the following:

- *While playing an episode:* Tap . (You may need to tap the player at the bottom of the screen to open Now Playing.)
- *While viewing episode information:* Scroll down to the Transcripts section. You can also tap , then tap View Transcript.
- *From Up Next:* Tap , then tap View Transcript.

You can read along with an episode as you play it. Tap a paragraph to jump to that point in the episode. Tap  to find a specific word or phrase.

Note: Transcript availability may vary by language, and by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Follow and play shows in Apple Podcasts on iPhone and iPad](#).

Follow your favorite podcasts on iPad

When you find a show you like in the Podcasts app, follow it to add it to your library so you can get notified about new episodes, change the playback order, and more.

Follow a podcast

When you follow a podcast, it's added to your library. You can access podcasts you follow on your other Apple devices, or on the [Apple Podcasts app](#).

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. [Search or browse](#) to find a show.
3. Tap the show to see its information page.
4. Tap Follow near the top right.

Or tap , then tap Follow Show.

Unfollow a podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. In the sidebar, below Library, tap Shows.
3. Tap a show to see its information page.
4. Tap  near the top right, then tap Unfollow Show.

Or tap  near the top right, then tap Unfollow Show.

Get notifications for new episodes

Get notified when new episodes are available for podcasts you follow.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home.
3. Tap  or your picture.
4. Tap Notifications, then turn Allow Notifications on or off.

Use the Podcasts widget on iPad

You can add the Podcasts widget to your Home Screen to view and play episodes in your Up Next queue without opening the Podcasts app .

Add a Podcasts widget to the Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap Edit at the top of the screen, then tap Add Widget to open the widget gallery.
3. Scroll down, then tap Podcasts.
4. Swipe left and right to view the different widget sizes and layouts. When you see the option you want, tap Add Widget, then tap Done.

To move the widget on your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle. Drag the widget to a new location, then tap Done.

To remove the widget from your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle, tap  at the top left of the widget, then tap Remove.

Organize your podcast library on iPad

In the Podcasts app, you can customize the podcasts you follow, catch up on the latest episodes, and create your own stations.

View your podcast library

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.

2. In the sidebar, below Library, tap any of the following:

- *Recently Updated*: See shows you follow with recently released episodes.
- *Shows*: See shows that are in your library. If you downloaded or saved individual episodes from podcasts you don't follow, tap All to see them. Tap Followed to view only shows you follow. You can tap any show to see the information page and the episodes you saved or downloaded.
- *Channels*: See channels for shows you follow and browse shows in a channel.
- *Saved*: Episodes you saved appear here.
- *Downloaded*: Episodes you downloaded appear here. You can listen to these episodes without an internet connection.
- *Latest Episodes*: The most recent episodes from each show you follow are displayed here. To change how long episodes stay in this playlist, tap .
- *Stations*: If you created stations, each one is listed.

Filter episodes by unplayed, saved, downloaded, and season

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. [Search or browse](#) to find a show.
3. Tap the show to see its information page.
4. Tap Episodes (or the current filter) above the list of episodes.
5. Choose an option, like Unplayed or Season 1.

Note: Some filter options, such as Unplayed, Downloaded, Saved, and Played, are only available for shows that you follow or shows with saved or downloaded episodes.

Change the episode playback order

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. In the sidebar, below Library, tap Shows.
3. Tap a show you follow to view its information page.
4. Tap , then tap Settings.
5. Choose an episode order option.

Limit the number of downloads from each podcast

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. In the sidebar, below Library, tap Shows.
3. Tap a show you follow to view its information page.
4. Tap , then tap Settings.
5. Tap Automatically Download, then choose an option.

Mark an episode as played

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. [Search or browse](#) to find a show.
3. Tap the show to view its information page.
4. Tap  under an episode, then tap Mark as Played.

If you're already looking at a specific episode, tap , then tap Mark as Played.

Hide episodes you've already played

You can change a show's settings to hide episodes you've already played.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. In the sidebar, below Library, tap Shows.
3. Tap a show you follow to view its information page.
4. Tap , then tap Hide Played Episodes.

To automatically hide played episodes for all shows you follow, go to Settings  > Apps > Podcasts, then turn on Hide Played Episodes.

Create your own station

Use stations (similar to a music playlist) to group shows you follow based on themes like news, comedy, or morning commute. Episodes from the podcasts you choose are automatically added to your station regularly.

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. In the sidebar, below Stations, tap New Station.
3. Add a title, then tap Save.
4. Tap Choose Podcasts, then tap the shows you want to add to the station (or turn on Include All Podcasts).

Tip: You can adjust the number of episodes from each podcast that are added to your station. Tap the station, tap , then tap Station Settings. To use the same settings for all podcasts in a station, tap Episodes, then choose an option. To adjust the settings for a single show, tap the show in the Podcasts list, then choose an option.

Download, save, remove, and share podcast episodes on iPad

In the Podcasts app, you can download, save, and share podcast episodes.

Download an episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
 2. [Search or browse](#) to find a show.
 3. Tap the show to see its information page.
 4. Swipe left on an episode, then tap .
- You can also tap  under an episode, then tap Download Episode.

Save an episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
 2. [Search or browse](#) to find a show.
 3. Tap the show to see its information page.
 4. Swipe left on an episode, then tap .
- You can also tap  under an episode, then tap Save Episode.

When you save an episode, it's automatically downloaded so you can listen to it offline. To turn off this option, go to Settings  > Apps > Podcasts, then turn off Download When Saving.

Remove a saved episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
 2. In the sidebar, below Library, tap Saved, then tap a show.
 3. Swipe left on an episode, then tap Unsave.
- You can also remove a saved episode while looking at an episode list or the episode's information page. Tap , then tap Unsave Episode.

Remove a downloaded episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
 2. In the sidebar, below Library, tap Downloaded, then tap a show.
 3. Swipe left on an episode, then tap Remove Download.
- You can also remove a downloaded episode while looking at the episode list or the episode's information page. Tap , then tap Remove Download.

Remove all downloaded episodes from a show

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. In the sidebar, below Library, tap Shows, then tap a show to see its information page.
3. Tap , then tap Remove Downloads.

Remove all downloaded episodes

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. In the sidebar, below Library, tap Downloaded.
3. Tap , then tap Remove All Downloads.

Share a podcast show or episode

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. [Search or browse](#) to find a show.

3. Tap the show to see its information page. If you want to share a specific episode, tap the episode.
4. Tap  near the top right, then tap Share Show or Share Episode.
5. Optionally, specify the starting time for a shared episode. Tap From Start, then choose From *[time]*.
The shared episode starts from where you're listening when you tap Share.
6. Choose how to share the show or episode.

Subscribe to a show or channel in Podcasts on iPad

In the Podcasts app, subscribe to, change, cancel, and share your podcasts subscriptions. Paid subscriptions allow you to support the shows you love, and they often include premium extras, early access to new episodes, or ad-free listening.

Note: Not all subscriptions and channels are available in all countries, regions, or languages. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Subscribe to a show or channel

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. [Search or browse](#) to find a show or channel.
3. Select the show or channel you want to subscribe to.
4. Tap the subscription button (if available).

You can access shows you subscribe to or follow on your other Apple devices or on the [Apple Podcasts app](#). (When you subscribe to a show, you automatically follow it.) See [Follow your favorite podcasts](#). When you subscribe to a channel or follow one of its shows, the channel appears in the Channels section of your library.

Change or cancel your subscriptions

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home.
3. Tap  or your picture, then tap Manage Subscriptions.
4. Tap a subscription to change or cancel it.

Share Apple Podcasts subscriptions

When you subscribe to podcasts channels, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members will automatically have access to the channels you subscribe to.

If you [join a family group](#) and a family group member subscribes to a show you already subscribe to, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing a show subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription or [leave the Family Sharing group](#).

Listen to subscriber-only content in Podcasts on iPad

In the Podcasts app, you can listen to audio content from Apple Music, Apple News+, and eligible third-party subscription apps.

Note: Not all apps offer audio content that's available in Podcasts.

Connect app subscriptions to Podcasts

Your eligible app subscriptions are automatically connected to Podcasts if you subscribed through the App Store and the app offers audio content in Podcasts.

If you subscribed using another method, do the following:

1. Go to the Podcasts app  on your iPad.
2. [Search or browse](#) for a channel with an eligible subscription.
3. On the Channel page, tap the Already a Subscriber link, then follow the instructions to connect your app subscription.

After an app subscription is connected, you can find the channel in your library. You can use Podcasts to play all subscriber-only shows and episodes.

Change your download settings for Podcasts on iPad

Podcasts you follow are automatically downloaded to your Apple device. Episodes you've played are automatically deleted from your device. You can change these settings, and adjust other download options.

Turn automatic downloads on or off

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Podcasts.
2. Tap Automatically Download, then tap an option.

Tip: To automatically download a particular podcast, open the Podcasts app , tap Shows in the sidebar. Touch and hold the show's artwork, tap Settings, then tap Automatically Download to choose a download option.

Remove downloaded podcasts after you listen to them

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Podcasts.
2. Turn on Remove Played Downloads.

Or, to adjust this setting for a particular podcast you follow, tap Shows in the sidebar, then touch and hold the show's artwork. Tap Settings, then turn on Remove Played Downloads.

Turn off automatic syncing across Apple devices

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Podcasts.
2. Turn off Sync Library.

Reminders

Get started with Reminders on iPad

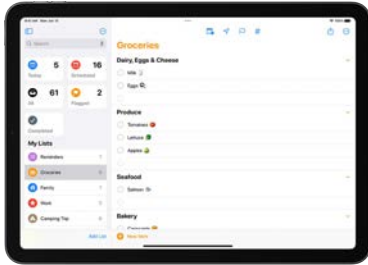
The Reminders app  helps you remember anything you need to track. You can set reminders, make grocery lists, create checklists for projects, and organize tasks in to-do lists.

Set a reminder



Simply type, dictate, ask Siri, or scribble with Apple Pencil when you need to remember something.

Create a grocery list



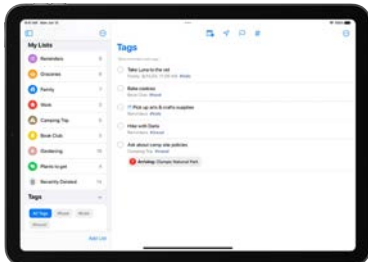
Make your shopping easier with a grocery list that automatically sorts items into categories. To convert a regular list into a grocery list, tap  (at the top-right corner), tap Show List Info, tap List Type, then choose Groceries.

Collaborate on a list



To invite people to work on a list, tap , then choose a sharing option.

Organize your reminders



You can create new lists to suit your needs, categorize with tags, and manage your reminders with Smart Lists.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Want to learn more?

- [Set reminders](#)
- [Make a grocery list](#)
- [Share and collaborate](#)
- [Use Smart Lists](#)

Set reminders on iPad

In the Reminders app, you can easily set reminders. Simply type or dictate in a list, ask Siri, or add a reminder from the Calendar app.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Set a reminder

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Tap New Reminder, then enter a description.

Ask Siri to set a reminder

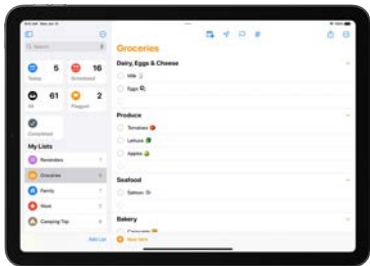
Say something like: "Add artichokes to my groceries list." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Add a reminder in Calendar

See [Use reminders in Calendar](#).

Make a grocery list in Reminders on iPad

In the Reminders app, you can create a grocery list to make shopping easier. Items are automatically sorted into categories such as Produce and Seafood. You can change how items are grouped, and the list remembers your preferences.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Create a new grocery list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Enter a name for the list, tap List Type, then choose Groceries.
3. Choose a color and symbol for the list (optional).

Convert an existing list to a grocery list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a list, tap  (at the top-right corner), then tap Show List Info.
3. Tap List Type, then choose Groceries.

Add an item to your grocery list

You can quickly add an item using Siri. Say something like: "Add artichokes to my groceries list." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. In your grocery list, tap New Item, then enter a description.
3. To enter more information, tap Add Note.

4. Tap ⓘ to edit the item details. For example, you can attach a photo, set a location-based reminder, or flag an important item.

Items added to the list are automatically placed in categories. If you enter grocery items in a language different from the system language of your iPad, you can [add an additional language in Settings](#). (Grocery categorization is available for [supported languages](#).)

Add details in Reminders on iPad

You can add details to your reminders such as notes, links, due dates, and photos.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Add a note, URL, and other details to a reminder

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Tap an item.
3. Tap Add Note, then add more information.
4. Tap ⓘ to edit the item details. For example, you can set a date and time, set a location-based reminder, flag an important item, or attach a photo.

Set when and where to be reminded

You can be reminded on a certain date, at a specific time or location, or when you're texting someone in Messages.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Tap an item, then do any of the following:
 - *Schedule a date and time:* Tap , then choose an option.
Tip: Reminders with a due date appear as an all-day event in Calendar. See [Use Reminders in Calendar](#).
 - *Set a recurring reminder:* Tap ⓘ, tap Repeat, then choose the frequency.
 - *Get an early reminder before the scheduled date and time:* Tap ⓘ, tap Early Reminder, then choose when you want to be reminded. For example, "5 minutes before," "2 days before," or another choice.
 - *Add a location:* Tap , then choose where you want to be reminded—for example, when you arrive home or get into a car with a Bluetooth® connection to your iPad.
Note: To receive location-based reminders, you must allow Reminders to use your precise location. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services. Turn on Location Services, tap Reminders, choose While Using the App, then turn on Precise Location.
 - *Get a reminder in Messages:* Tap ⓘ, turn on When Messaging, then choose someone from your contacts list. The reminder appears the next time you chat with that person in Messages.

Set a flag and priority

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Tap an item.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Flag an important item:* Tap .
 - *Set a priority:* Tap ⓘ, tap Priority, then choose Low, Medium, or High.

Add a photo or scan a document

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Tap an item, then tap .
3. Do any of the following:
 - Take a new photo.
 - Choose a photo from your photo library.
 - Scan a document.
 - Scan and insert text.

Complete and remove items in Reminders on iPad

In a Reminders list, you can check off items to hide them, or you can permanently delete items. With the Reminders widget, you can complete items from the iPad Home Screen or Lock Screen.

Mark items as completed

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. While viewing a list, tap the empty circle next to an item to mark the item as completed.
Completed items are hidden on your list.

To unhide completed items, tap ☺ (at the top-right corner), then tap Show Completed. To delete the completed items, tap Clear.

Remove or delete an item

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. While viewing a list, swipe left on an item, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, you can recover the deleted item—tap with three fingers or shake to undo.

Tip: You can recover or permanently delete items in the Recently Deleted list.

Use the Reminders widget

With the Reminders widget, you can complete items from the Home Screen or Lock Screen without opening the Reminders app .

1. On the iPad Home Screen or Lock Screen, [add the Reminders widget](#).
2. To change the list shown in the widget, touch and hold the widget, tap Edit Widget, then choose a list.
3. To complete an item, tap the item in the widget.

Edit and organize a list in Reminders on iPad

In the Reminders app, you can organize a list with sections and subtasks. You can also view the sections as columns and easily move items to different columns.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Edit a list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. While viewing a list, tap ☺ (at the top-right corner), then do any of the following:
 - *Change the list name, type, color, or icon:* Tap Show List Info.
 - *Edit multiple items:* Tap tap Select Reminders or Select Items, then select the items you want to edit. You can also drag two fingers over the items. Use the buttons at the bottom of the screen to add a date and time, move, delete, assign, complete, tag, or flag the selected items.
 - *Sort items by due date, creation date, priority, or title:* (not available in all Smart Lists) Tap Sort By, then choose an option.

When you sort or reorder a list, the new order is applied to the list on your other devices where you're using [updated reminders in iCloud](#). If you sort or reorder a shared list, other participants also see the new order (if they use updated reminders).
 - *Remove the list:* Tap Delete List.

Manually reorder or recategorize items in a list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. While viewing a list, touch and hold an item you want to move, then drag it to a new location.

Organize with sections

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. While viewing a list, do any of the following:
 - *Create a new section:* Tap ☺ (in the top-right corner), tap New Section, then enter a name.
 - *Collapse a section:* Tap ∨.
 - *Expand a section:* Tap >.
 - *Rename section:* Tap the section name, then enter a new name.
 - *Move a section:* Touch and hold the section, then drag it to a new position.

Note: You can't move the Others section.
 - *Remove a section:* Swipe left on the section, then tap Delete.

View the sections as columns

You can view the list in columns, making it easy to visualize and recategorize the items.



1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. While viewing a list, tap  (in the top-right corner), then tap View as Columns.
3. To recategorize an item, drag it into a different column.

Create subtasks

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. While viewing a list, swipe right on an item, then tap Indent. Or drag an item onto another item.

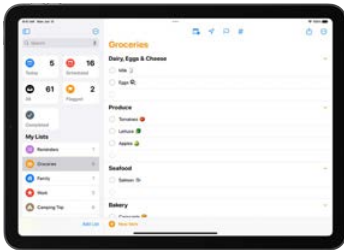
If you complete a main task, the subtasks are also completed. If you delete or move a main task, the subtasks are also deleted or moved.

Search through all your lists in Reminders on iPad

In the Reminders app, you can easily search through all your lists for items that contain specific text.

Search for items in all your lists

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. In the search field, enter a word or phrase.



Organize multiple lists in Reminders on iPad

In the Reminders app, you can create new lists, organize the lists into groups, and pin lists for quick access.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders in iCloud](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Make a new list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Add List.
3. Enter a name, then choose a color and symbol for the list.
4. Tap List Type, then choose Standard, Groceries, or [Smart List](#).

Pin an important list above the other lists for easy access

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
 2. Touch and hold a list, then tap Pin. You can also swipe right on the list, then tap .
- You can have a maximum of nine pinned lists.

To change the position of a pinned list, tap  (above your lists), tap Edit Lists, then drag  to a new position.

Create a group of lists

You can organize your lists in groups such as work, school, or shopping.

To create a group, simply drag a list onto another list. You can also do the following:

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  (above your lists), then tap Edit Lists.
3. Tap Add Group, enter a name, select the lists to include in the group (optional), then tap Create.

Edit and rearrange lists and groups

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Rearrange lists and groups:* Drag a list or group to a new location. You can even move a list to a different group.
 - *Change the name and appearance of a list or group:* Swipe left on the list or group, then tap .

Delete a list or group

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe left on the list or group, then tap .

When you delete a group, you have the option to keep the lists.

Deleted lists or groups are moved to Recently Deleted. You can recover them within 30 days of deletion. After 30 days, they're permanently deleted.

Tag items in Reminders on iPad

In the Reminders app, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your reminders. You can add one or more tags to a reminder, such as #shopping and #work, and easily search and filter your reminders across lists using the Tag Browser or Smart Lists.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

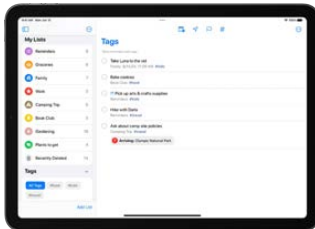
Add tags

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. When you create or edit an item in a list, type # followed by the tag name or choose a tag from the menu above the keyboard.

A tag can be only one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to an item.

View items with tags

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, do any of the following:
 - *View items with specific tags:* Tap one or more tags, then choose to view items matching any or all of the selected tags.
Tip: To save this list as a Smart List, tap , then tap Create Smart List.
 - *View all items with tags:* Tap All Tags.



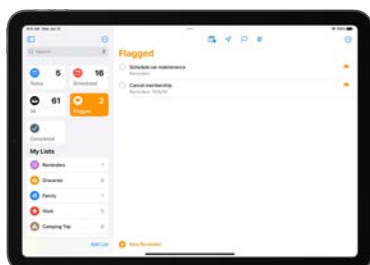
Rename or delete a tag

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Below Tags (at the bottom-left), touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.

When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Lists that use it.

Use Smart Lists in Reminders on iPad

In the Reminders app, you can easily filter your items across lists using Smart Lists. You can create custom Smart Lists to automatically include items filtered by tags, dates, times, locations, flags, and priority. You can choose more than one tag (such as #gardening and #errands) and combine them with other filters.



Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Automatically organize items using the default Smart Lists

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  (above your lists), then tap Edit Lists.
3. Turn on or off the following Smart Lists:
 - *Today:* Items scheduled for today and overdue items
 - *Scheduled:* Items scheduled by date or time
 - *All:* All items across all your lists
 - *Completed:* Items with a checkmark
 - *Assigned to Me:* Items assigned to you in shared lists
 - *Siri Suggestions:* Suggested items detected in Mail and Messages
 - *Flagged:* Items with a flag

Make a custom Smart List

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Add List, enter a name, choose a color and icon, then tap Make into Smart List.
3. Choose one or more filters, then choose to include items matching any or all of the selected filters. You can filter by tags, dates, locations, and more.

Convert a list to a Smart List

When you convert a list, its items are moved to the top level of the default list and tagged with the name of the Smart List.

Note: You can't convert a shared list.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. View the list you want to convert.
3. Tap , tap Show List Info, scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart List.

Share lists and collaborate in Reminders on iPad

In the Reminders app, use iCloud to share to-do lists. You can collaborate and assign tasks to other people who also use iCloud.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use [updated reminders](#). Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Collaborate on a list using iCloud

You can share a list and collaborate with people who use iCloud. People who accept the invitation can add and edit items, mark items as completed, and all the participants can see everyone's changes. Everyone you collaborate with must be [signed in to their Apple Account](#) and [have Reminders turned on in iCloud settings](#).

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. View the list you want to share, then tap .



3. By default, participants on the list can invite other people. To restrict sharing, tap "People you invite can add others," then turn off "Allow others to invite."
4. Choose how to send your invitation (for example, using Messages or Mail).

If you send the invitation in Messages, you [get activity updates in the Messages conversation](#) when someone makes changes in the shared list. Tap the updates to go to the shared list.

Assign reminders in a shared list

You can assign a task to any person on the list, including yourself.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.

2. In the shared list, create or edit a reminder, then do either of the following:

- Type @ followed by the person's name or choose a person from the menu above the keyboard.
- Tap , then choose a person.

Tip: To quickly see all reminders assigned to you, [use the Assigned to Me Smart List](#).

Turn notifications on or off for a shared list

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. In the shared list, tap , then tap Manage Shared List.
3. Below Notify When, turn on or off any of the following:
 - *Adding Items*: Receive an alert when someone adds an item to the list.
 - *Completing Items*: Receive an alert when someone completes an item on the list.

Print a list in Reminders on iPad

You can print a grocery list, checklist, to-do items, project tasks, and more.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. View the list you want to print.
3. Tap , then tap Print.

Work with templates in Reminders on iPad

In the Reminders app, you can save a list as a template to reuse it for routines, packing lists, and more. Create a link to publish and share a template with others, or download templates that others have shared.

Save a list as a template

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Above a list, tap , then tap Save as Template.
3. Enter a name for the template.
4. Turn on or off Include Completed Reminders, then tap Save.

After you make a template from a list, any changes you make to that list don't affect the template.

Make a new list from a template

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Above your lists, tap , tap Templates, then tap the name of a template.
3. Enter a name for the list, then tap Create.

Edit or delete a template

Any changes you make to a template don't affect lists previously created from the template.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Above your lists, tap , tap Templates, then tap .
3. Choose one of the following:
 - *Edit Template*: Add, edit, or delete any items in the template. You can also change the name, color, and icon for the template.
 - *Delete Template*: Remove the template.

Share a template

When you share a template, Apple servers have access so that anyone with the link can download a copy of the template on a device using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later. You can choose whether to keep any dates, tags, or locations in the shared template; images are removed.

1. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
2. Above your lists, tap , tap Templates, then tap  next to the template you want to share.
3. Tap Share Template, then choose a method for sharing.

To manage a shared template, tap , tap Templates, tap , then tap Manage Link.

If you make changes to the template after sharing, you can update the shared version. Anyone who downloaded the previous version will need to download the template again to get the updates.

If you stop sharing a template, this doesn't affect anyone who has already downloaded the template.

Add or remove accounts in Reminders on iPad

In the Reminders app, you can use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, enterprise-managed iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, and Yahoo—and keep all your to-do lists in one place. Your reminders stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts.

Note: All Reminders features described in this guide are available when you use updated reminders in iCloud. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

Keep your reminders up to date on all your devices with iCloud

1. Go to Settings  > [your name].
2. Tap iCloud, tap See All, then turn on Reminders.

Your reminders stored in iCloud—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, Apple Watch, and Mac where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

Update your reminders stored in iCloud

If you've been using Reminders with iOS 12 or earlier, you may need to update your reminders stored in iCloud to use features such as attachments, flags, list colors and icons, and more.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name].
2. Tap iCloud, tap See All, then make sure Reminders is turned on.
3. Go to the Reminders app  on your iPad.
4. On the Welcome to Reminders screen, choose one of the following options:
 - *Update Now:* Begin the update process.
 - *Update Later:* A blue Update button appears above your lists; tap it when you're ready to update your reminders.

Note: Updated reminders aren't backward compatible with the Reminders app in earlier versions of iOS and macOS. See the Apple Support article [Upgrading the Reminders app in iOS 13 or later](#).

Add other accounts

You can use the Reminders app to manage your to-do lists in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange and Yahoo.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Reminders.
2. Tap Accounts, then tap Add Account.
3. Do one of the following:
 - Choose an account provider, then enter your account information.
 - If your account provider isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add CalDAV Account, enter your account information, then turn on Reminders for that account.

Remove an account

When you remove or delete an account, the reminders in that account no longer appear on your iPad. The reminders remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Microsoft Exchange) and any other devices you had already set up.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Reminders.
2. Tap Reminders Accounts, then tap the account you want to remove.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Stop using Reminders on the account:* Turn off Reminders.
You can continue to use the account for other services, such as Calendar.
 - *Stop using all services on the account:* Tap Sign Out (for an iCloud account) or Delete Account (for other accounts).
If you don't see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

Change your Reminders settings on iPad

You can customize your preferences for the Reminders app  in Settings. Choose the default list for new items, adjust notifications, and more.

Customize your Reminders settings

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Reminders.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Accounts:* [Add or remove accounts in Reminders.](#)
- *Siri & Search:* Allow [Siri](#) to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Reminders. You can also allow suggestions and content from Reminders to appear in [Search](#) and [widgets](#).
- *Notifications:* [Change notification settings.](#)
- *Language:* Choose your preferred languages.
- *Default List:* Choose the list for new reminders you create outside of a specific list, such as reminders you create using Siri.
- *Today Notification:* Set a time to see notifications for [all-day reminders](#) that have been assigned a date without a time.
- *Show as Overdue:* The scheduled date turns red for overdue [all-day reminders](#).
- *Include Due Today:* The badge count includes [overdue items and items due today](#).
- *Mute Notifications:* Turn off notifications for [assigned reminders](#).
- *Show Suggestions:* If you type text that matches a previously completed reminder, that reminder appears as a suggestion.
- *Add Language:* Set an additional language that Reminders uses to automatically [place grocery items into categories](#).
- *Clear Categorization History:* Clears categorization learned as you manually moved items in grocery lists; this applies to all your devices and grocery lists you've shared. Existing items are not affected.

Use keyboard shortcuts in Reminders on iPad

If your iPad is connected to an [iPad keyboard](#), you can use keyboard shortcuts to quickly perform actions in the Reminders app .

Examples of keyboard shortcuts

- *Create a new list:* Press Shift-Command-N.
- *Add a new reminder:* Press Command-N.
- *Show completed reminders:* Press Shift-Command-H.
- *Show all reminders assigned to you:* Press Command-5.

Learn keyboard shortcuts

Press and hold the Globe () key or Command () key until the shortcuts appear.

Safari

Browse the web using Safari on iPad

You can browse the web, view websites, preview website links, translate webpages, and add the Safari app back to your Home Screen if it gets removed. If you sign in to iCloud with the same [Apple Account](#) on all your devices, you can see pages you have open on other devices, and keep your bookmarks, history, and Reading List up to date on all your devices.



Go to a webpage

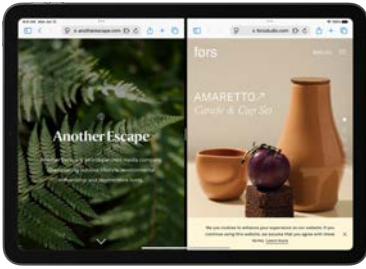
1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Enter the name or web address (URL) of the webpage in the search field.

View websites with Safari

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Get back to the top:* Double-tap the top edge of the screen to quickly return to the top of a long page.
 - *See more of the page:* Turn iPad to landscape orientation.
 - *Refresh the page:* Pull down from the top of the page.
 - *Share links:* Tap  at the top right of the page.

View two pages side by side in Split View

Use Split View to open two Safari pages side by side.



1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Open a blank page in Split View:* Touch and hold , then tap New Window.
 - *Open a link in Split View:* Touch and hold the link, then tap Open in New Window.
 - *Move a window to the other side of Split View:* Touch and hold  at the top of the window, then drag left or right.
 - *Close tabs in a Split View window:* Touch and hold .
 - *Leave Split View:* Drag the divider over the window you want to close.

Preview website links

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold a link in Safari to see a preview of the link without opening the page.

To open the link, tap the preview, or tap Open. To close the preview and stay on the current page, tap anywhere outside the preview.



Translate a webpage

When you view a webpage that's in another language, you can use Safari to translate it (not available in all languages or regions).

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap  (if translation is available).

Manage downloads

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold the file or link you want to download, then tap Download Linked File.

Tap  to check the status of a file you're downloading, to access downloaded files quickly, or to drag a downloaded file onto another file or into an email you're working on.

Tip: You can download files in the background while you continue to use Safari.

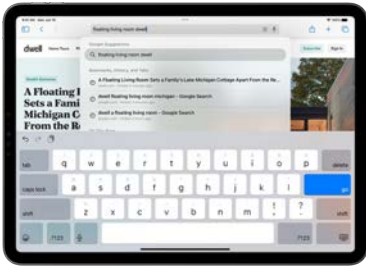
Add Safari back to your Home Screen

If you don't see Safari on your Home Screen, you can find it in App Library and add it back.

1. On the Home Screen, swipe left until you see the App Library.
2. Enter "Safari" in the search field.
3. Press and hold , then tap Add to Home Screen.

Search for websites using Safari on iPad

Enter a URL or a search term to find websites or specific information.



Search the web

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Enter a search term, phrase, or URL in the search field.
3. Tap a search suggestion, or tap Go on the keyboard.

If you don't want to see suggested search terms, go to Settings  > Apps > Safari, then turn off Search Engine Suggestions (below Search).

See your favorite websites while you search

Have your favorites appear as suggestions when you enter an address, search, or create a new tab.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Favorites.

If you have multiple folders in your favorites, you can select the one you want to appear in Safari search suggestions.

Search a webpage

You can find a specific word or phrase on a webpage.

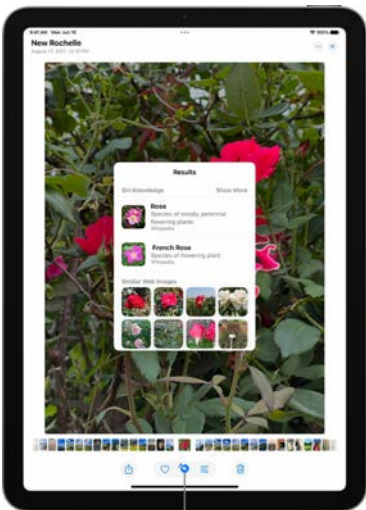
1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Go to a webpage.
3. Tap , then tap .
4. Enter the word or phrase in the search field.
5. Tap  to find other instances.

Choose a search engine

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Search Engine.

Search for objects in your photos

With Visual Look Up, you can identify and learn about popular landmarks, plants, pets, and more that appear in your photos and videos. See [Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos](#).



Visual Look Up is available.

See a webpage's highlights in Safari on iPad

You can learn more about the current webpage by looking at Highlights. Highlights share helpful information, such as directions, summaries, and links to additional details about people, music, movies, and TV shows.

Note: Highlights aren't available in all countries or regions.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Open a webpage.

If Highlights are available for the webpage,  replaces  on the left side of the search field.

3. Tap .

Customize your Safari settings on iPad

You can customize your start page, change the text size on websites, and change display and privacy settings. Sign in to iCloud with the same [Apple Account](#) on multiple devices to keep your open tabs, bookmarks, browsing history, and Reading List up to date across all your Apple devices.

Customize your start page

Every time you open a new tab, you begin on your start page. You can customize your start page with new background images and options.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. To open a new tab, tap  at the top-right corner of the screen.
3. Scroll to the bottom of the page, then tap Edit.
4. Choose options for your start page.
 - *Use Start Page on All Devices:* Use these settings on all your Apple devices where you have Use Start Page on All Devices turned on and you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) using [two-factor authentication](#).
 - *Favorites:* Display shortcuts to your favorite bookmarked websites. See [Add a website to Favorites](#).
 - *Privacy Report:* Stay updated on how many trackers and websites Safari blocked from tracking you. See [View the Privacy Report](#).
 - *Reading List:* Show webpages currently in your Reading List. See [Add the current webpage to your Reading List](#).
 - *Recently Closed Tabs:* Go back to tabs you previously closed.
 - *iCloud Tabs:* Show open tabs from other Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and Safari is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences. See [Organize your tabs with Tab Groups](#).
 - *Suggestions:* See websites you visit most, websites shared in other apps (such as Calendar and Maps), and links shared with you in Messages, Mail, and more. See [Find links shared with you](#).
 - *Background Image:* Choose the image you want to appear in the background each time you open a new start page. To use a photo as your background, tap .

Customize the Page menu

You can add your favorite Page and Tab Actions to the Page menu .

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  on the left side of the search field, then tap .
3. Tap Edit, then tap  to add Page or Tab Actions to the Page menu.

Tap  to remove an action
4. Tap Done, then tap Done again.

Change the text size for a website on Safari

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  on the left side of the search field.
3. Tap the large A to increase the font size or the small A to decrease it.

Change the display controls for a website on Safari

You can hide the search field, switch to Reader, and more.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then do any of the following:
 - *Hide the search field:* Tap , then tap Hide Toolbar (tap the bottom of the screen to get it back).
 - *See a streamlined view of the webpage:* Tap Show Reader (if available).

To return to the normal view, tap , then tap Hide Reader.
 - *See what the webpage looks like on a desktop computer:* Tap , then tap Request Desktop Website (if available).

You can also adjust Safari settings in Accessibility settings. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Per-App Settings. Tap Add App, choose Safari, then tap Safari to adjust the settings.

Choose where to save downloads

When you download a file in Safari, you can choose whether to save it to iCloud or on your iPad.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Downloads, then choose one of the following:
 - *iCloud Drive*: Select this option to save downloads to the Downloads folder in iCloud Drive. This allows you to access the downloaded file on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).
 - *On My iPad*: Select this option to save downloads to the Downloads folder on your iPad.

Share website passwords with a group

You can create a group of trusted contacts and share a set of passwords. Passwords stay up to date for everyone in the group, and you can remove someone at any time.

See [Share passwords or passkeys with people you trust](#).

Adjust privacy settings for Safari

You can choose what privacy settings you want across Safari, and create individual exceptions for websites. See [Browse privately](#).

Use keyboard shortcuts

You can navigate in Safari using keyboard shortcuts if you have an [Apple external keyboard](#) connected to your iPad.

To view available keyboard shortcuts, connect your keyboard, then press and hold the Command key.

Change the layout in Safari on iPad

You can choose the tab bar layout that works best for you.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Scroll down to Tabs, then select either Separate Tab Bar or Compact Tab Bar.

You can move between layouts as much as you want without losing the tabs you have open.

Note: If you're using the Compact Tab Bar layout, the menus and layout may look different from what's described in this guide.



Create multiple Safari profiles on iPad

You can create multiple Safari profiles—like Work and Personal—and use them to separate your internet browsing into different themes. Each profile has separate favorites, histories, tabs, and Tab Groups. You can add, edit, or remove a profile at any time.

Create a profile

The profiles you create on iPad will appear in Safari settings on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap New Profile, then tap Name.
3. Enter a name for this profile, then choose an icon and color.
4. Below Settings, tap Favorites to choose a bookmarks folder.

If you have multiple folders of bookmarks, this option selects the folder of bookmarked websites that are recommended as you enter an address, search, or create a new tab. For example, if you have a folder of bookmarks related to work, you can create a work profile and use this field to ensure that those websites are suggested as you type in the address field.

5. Tap Open New Tabs and choose the page you want new tabs to open to.

Use profiles in Safari

You can easily browse the internet with a profile, or move between profiles.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap Profile at the bottom of the sidebar.
3. Select the profile you want to use.



Edit a profile

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap the profile you want to edit.

Choose which extensions to use with a profile

You can install extensions to customize the way your browser works on iPad. See [Get extensions to customize Safari](#).

If you have extensions installed on your iPad, you can customize which extensions you want to use with each profile.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap a profile, then select each extension you want to use with that profile.

Remove a profile

You can delete a profile at any time. This action also erases the favorites and history associated with the profile, and closes all websites open in the profile.

Important: This action can't be undone.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap a profile, then tap Delete Profile.

Use Tab Groups

Open and close tabs in Safari on iPad

Use tabs to help you navigate between multiple open webpages.

Note: If you're using the Compact Tab Bar layout, the menus and other items may look different from what's described in this guide. See [Change the layout of Safari](#).

Open a link in a new tab

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold the link, then tap Open in Background.

View a tab's history

You can see which webpages you previously visited in this tab.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold  or .

Close tabs

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap  in the upper-right corner of a tab to close it.

Tip: To close all tabs in this Tab Group at the same time, touch and hold Done, then tap Close All *[number of]* Tabs.

Open a recently closed tab

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.

2. Touch and hold , then choose from the list of recently closed tabs.



Organize your tabs with Tab Groups in Safari on iPad

You can create Tab Groups to keep tabs organized and make them easier to find again later.



Create a new Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  to open the sidebar, then tap  in the top-right corner of the sidebar.
3. Tap New Empty Tab Group, enter a name, then tap Save.

Rename a Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  to open the sidebar, then touch and hold any Tab Group.
3. Tap Rename.

Reorder tabs in a Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold any tab.
3. In the menu that appears, tap Arrange Tabs By, then choose an option.
Or touch and hold the tab, then drag it where you want it.

Pin a tab at the front of a Tab Group

You can customize your Tab Groups with pinned tabs in each group. The pinned tab stays pinned to the left side of the tab bar.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold the tab you want to pin.
3. In the menu that appears, tap Pin Tab.
To unpin the tab, touch and hold it, then tap Unpin Tab.

Move a tab to another Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold in the tab bar, then tap Move to Tab Group.
3. Choose one of the Tab Groups you created previously, or tap New Tab Group create a new one.

View your Safari tabs from another Apple device on iPad

You can view the tabs that are open on your other Apple devices and keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across them. You must be signed in to iCloud with the same [Apple Account](#) on all your devices to manage Safari tabs on those devices.

View tabs that are open on your other Apple devices

Tap , then tap iCloud Tabs.

To close a tab on another Apple device, touch and hold the link, then choose Close.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.

2. Tap , then tap iCloud Tabs.

To close a tab on another Apple device, touch and hold the link, then choose Close.

Keep tabs and Tab Groups updated across your devices

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > See All, then make sure Safari is turned on.

Note: To also see tabs open on your Mac, you must have Safari turned on in iCloud settings on your Mac, be signed in to the same [Apple Account](#), and use [two-factor authentication](#).

Share Tab Groups and collaborate in Safari on iPad

You can share a Tab Group and collaborate with people who use iCloud. You can add and remove people from the Tab Group at any time, and even start a message conversation, phone call, or FaceTime call without leaving Safari. Collaborators can add and remove tabs from the Tab Group, and everyone sees updates in real time.

Everyone you collaborate with must be [signed in to their Apple Account](#), [have Safari turned on in iCloud settings](#), and have [two-factor authentication](#) turned on.

Share a Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , touch and hold a Tab Group, then tap Share.
3. Tap Messages, then enter the person or group you want to share it with.

You get [activity updates in the Messages conversation](#) when someone makes changes in the Shared Tab Group.

Add and remove people from a Shared Tab Group

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap .
3. Tap Manage Shared Tab Group, then do any of the following:
 - *Remove someone:* Tap a name, then tap Remove Access.
 - *Add someone:* Tap Share With More People, then tap Messages to invite them.
 - *Stop Sharing with everyone:* Tap Stop Sharing.

Start a Messages, audio, or video conversation from Safari

You can start a conversation—using Messages, FaceTime audio, or FaceTime video—with everyone that shares the Tab Group, without leaving Safari.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. In Safari, tap , then tap message, audio, or video to start the conversation.

Use Siri to listen to a webpage in Safari on iPad

You can use Siri to read supported webpages aloud in the Safari app.

Listen to a webpage

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Open the page you want to listen to, then do one of the following:
 - Tap , then tap Listen to Page.
 - [Activate Siri](#), then say something like “Read this” or “I want to listen to this page.”

Pause listening

While listening to a webpage, tap , tap Listening Controls, then tap .

To start listening again, tap , then tap .

Bookmark a website in Safari on iPad

You can bookmark websites, organize your bookmarks, or add a website icon to the Home Screen to easily revisit it later.



Bookmark a website

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Go to the website you want to bookmark.
3. Tap  to the right of the search field.
4. Tap Add Bookmark.

Bookmark open tabs

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Pinch closed with three fingers to view all your tabs.
3. Touch and hold one of your tabs, then tap Add Bookmarks for *[number of]* Tabs.

View and organize your bookmarks

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap Bookmarks.
3. Tap Edit, then do any of the following:
 - *Create a new folder:* Tap New Folder at the bottom left, enter a name, then tap Done.
 - *Move a bookmark into a folder:* Tap the bookmark, tap the Location, then tap a folder. Tap  to return to your bookmarks.
 - *Delete bookmarks:* Tap .
 - *Rename bookmarks:* Tap the bookmark, enter a new name, then tap Done.
 - *Reorder bookmarks:* Touch and hold , then drag the bookmark to a new location.

See your Mac bookmarks on iPad

1. Go to Settings  > *[your name]* > iCloud.
2. Tap See All (next to Saved to iCloud), then make sure Safari is turned on.

Note: You must also have Safari turned on in iCloud settings on your Mac and be signed in to the same Apple Account. See [Set up iCloud for the Safari app on all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Add a website icon to the Home Screen

You can add a website icon to your iPad Home Screen for quick access.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. While viewing the website, tap  in the menu bar, then tap Add to Home Screen.

The icon appears only on the device where you add it.

Note: Some websites may ask for permission to send you notifications. You can change your notification settings at any time. See [Change notification settings](#).

Bookmark a website as a favorite in Safari on iPad

You can add websites to Favorites, edit favorites, and show the Favorites bar.



Add a website to Favorites

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Go to the website.
3. Tap  to the right of the search field.
4. Tap Add to Favorites.

Edit favorites

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap Bookmarks.

3. Tap Favorites, then tap Edit to delete, rename, or rearrange your favorites.

Show the Favorites bar

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Turn on Show Favorites Bar (below General).

Show only an icon for one webpage in the Favorites bar

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold the webpage, then tap Edit.
3. Turn off Show Title, then tap Save.

Show only an icon for all webpages in the Favorites bar

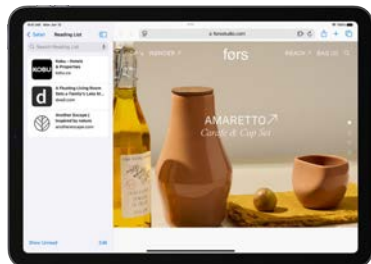
1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Favorites Bar Appearance, then tap Show Icons Only.

Rename a webpage title in the Favorites bar

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Touch and hold the webpage title, then tap Edit.
3. Enter a new name, then tap Save.

Save webpages to read later in Safari on iPad

Save interesting items in your Reading List so you can revisit them later. You can even download the items in your Reading List and read them when you're not connected to the internet.



Add the current webpage to your Reading List

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap Add to Reading List.

Tip: To add a linked page without opening it, touch and hold the link, then tap Add to Reading List.

View your Reading List

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap Reading List.

To delete an item from your Reading List, touch and hold the item, then tap Delete.

Automatically save all Reading List items to iCloud for offline reading

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Turn on Automatically Save Offline (below Reading List).

Find links shared with you in Safari on iPad

You can easily find and organize web links that friends share with you in Messages conversations. Links shared with you are added to the Shared with You section of the Sidebar in Safari. You can keep those links on your start page, remove them, or organize related links into Tab Groups. (Safari must be turned on in Settings  > Apps > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts.)

See links from friends in Safari

To find links shared with you, you can display them on your Safari start page. Then, every time you open a new page, you see them listed there.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.

2. Tap , then tap Shared with You.

Tip: To change where Suggestions appear on your start page, touch and drag .

Tip: You can continue the conversation without leaving Safari. Tap the button below the link preview to open the Messages conversation where the link was shared.

Remove a link from the Shared with You section

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. In Shared with You, touch and hold the preview image of a link.
3. Tap Remove Link.

Organize shared links in a Tab Group

You can group related shared web links into Tab Groups to make them easier to find.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. In Shared with You, touch and hold the preview image of the link you want to move, then tap Open in Tab Group.
3. Tap New Tab Group to create one, or add the link to a Tab Group you already have.

Annotate and save a webpage as a PDF in Safari on iPad

You can mark up a webpage, highlight your favorite parts, draw and write notes, and share your document as a PDF with others.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Go to a webpage.
3. Tap .
4. Tap Markup , then use the tools to annotate the webpage.
5. Tap Done, then tap Save File To.
6. Choose a file to save it to, then tap Save.

Automatically fill in forms in Safari on iPad

Use AutoFill to automatically fill in credit card information and contact information.

Important: Never enter your password or credit card number on sites with a “Not Secure” warning. See the Apple Support article [if you see a “Not Secure” warning while browsing with Safari](#).

Set up AutoFill

You can save your personal information or credit card number on your iPad to speed up filling in online forms and making purchases.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap AutoFill, then do any of the following:
 - *Set up contact info:* Turn on Use Contact Info, tap My Info, then choose your contact card. The contact information from that card is entered when you tap AutoFill on webpages in Safari.
 - *Set up credit card info:* Turn on Credit Cards, tap Saved Credit Cards, then tap Add Credit Card. Enter your credit card information into the fields provided or tap Use Camera to enter the information without typing.

Fill in your contact information automatically

You can quickly add your personal information to online forms using AutoFill.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. In a form on a website that supports AutoFill, tap a blank field.
3. Tap AutoFill Contact above the keyboard, then select a contact.
4. Tap any field to make changes.
5. Follow the onscreen instructions to submit the form.

Note: You can use AutoFill to enter another person’s information from your contact list. For example, if you’re purchasing a gift and shipping it to a friend, you can use AutoFill to enter their address. Tap AutoFill Contact, tap Other Contact, then choose their contact card.

Fill in your payment information automatically

After you add a credit card, or if you have Apple Card or Apple Cash in Wallet, you can use AutoFill to make online purchases without having to enter your full card number.

Note: You can use Apple Cash in apps or on the web where Apple Pay isn’t yet accepted. See [Use Apple Cash](#).

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. In a form on a website, tap the credit card information field.

3. Tap the saved card you want to use, or tap Scan Card to take a picture of the front of a credit card.

Tip: After you enter a new card, you can save it in Safari AutoFill, then add it to Apple Pay. See [Add a debit or credit card](#).

You can use virtual card numbers at checkout and keep your real credit card number private. See [Set up Apple Pay](#). After you've set up a virtual card number, tap a card with  above the keyboard to use it at checkout.

Fill in your passwords automatically

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPad create and save strong passwords for many of your accounts. See [Automatically fill in strong passwords](#).

Turn off AutoFill

You can turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information, and for passwords. This is helpful in situations where you don't want your contact or credit card information to be readily available—for example if you share a device with others.

- *Turn off AutoFill for your contact or credit card information:* Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari > AutoFill, then turn off either option.
- *Turn off AutoFill for passwords:* Go to Settings  > General > AutoFill & Passwords, then turn off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys.

Get extensions to customize Safari on iPad

You can install extensions to customize the way your browser works. For example, extensions can help you find coupons when shopping, block content on websites, and more.

Add Safari extensions

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  on the right side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Tap More Extensions to browse through extensions in the App Store.
4. When you find one you want, tap the price, or if the app is free, tap Get, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: Extensions you install for Safari on iPad that are also available on other platforms will appear in Safari settings on any iPhone, iPad, or Mac where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#), to make them easier to find and download.

Change Safari extension settings

You can use an extension to customize the way your browser works. You can turn Safari extensions on or off at any time.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  on the right side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Tap each extension you want to give permissions to, then follow the onscreen instructions to choose how much access to give each extension.

Important: Check the extensions you have installed and make sure you're familiar with what they do.

Change Safari extension settings for an individual website

You can turn an extension on or off for an individual website without changing your overall Safari settings.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  on the right side of the search field, then tap Manage Extensions.
3. Turn each extension on or off.

Remove a Safari extension

1. Swipe down on the Home Screen, then search for the extension you want to remove.
2. Touch and hold the extension icon, tap "Delete app," then follow the onscreen instructions.

Hide distractions

Hide distractions when browsing in Safari on iPad

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __ " Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

Use Distraction Control to hide menus and other diversions on a webpage.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. On a website, tap , then tap Hide Distracting Items.
3. Tap the items you want to hide from the webpage.
4. Tap Done.

To unhide, tap , then tap Show Distracting Items.

Hide distractions when reading articles in Safari on iPad

Use Reader to hide navigation menus and other distracting items. Longer pages include a summary and table of contents.

Show Reader

Reader formats a webpage to show just the relevant text and images.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Go to a webpage.
3. On a supported website, tap , then tap Show Reader.
To return to the full page, tap , then tap Hide Reader.

Automatically use Reader for a website

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. On a supported website, tap , then tap .
3. Turn on Use Reader Automatically.

To automatically use Reader for all websites that support it, go to Settings  > Apps > Safari > Reader, then turn on All Websites.

Block pop-ups in Safari on iPad

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Turn on Block Pop-ups.

Clear your cache and cookies on iPad

You can erase your browsing history and data to clear the cache on your iPad. This action removes the history of websites you visited and recent searches from your iPad. This process also removes the cookies and permissions you granted to websites to use your location or send you notifications.

Note: Clearing your browsing history in Safari doesn't clear any browsing histories kept independently by websites you visited, or your browsing history in other apps.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , tap , then tap Clear.
3. Below Clear Timeframe, choose how much of your browsing history to clear.
Note: If you have Safari profiles set up, select a profile to clear only the history of that profile, or select All Profiles.
4. Tap Clear History.

Enable cookies on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords">

ipde-needs-review

You can enable cookies. Some websites use cookies to keep track of your activity, such as your settings. Enabling cookies allows websites that require cookies to work normally.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Advanced, then turn off Block All Cookies.

Privacy and security

Browse the web privately in Safari on iPad

<__ class=" GenerativeKeywords __" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

You can use Private Browsing Mode, view the Privacy Report, and adjust settings in the Safari app to keep your browsing activities private and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

Visit sites privately

You can use Private Browsing to open tabs that don't appear in History on iPad or in the list of tabs on your other devices. Tabs in Private Browsing aren't shared with your other Apple devices, even if you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

If you have a passcode set on your iPad, Private Browsing locks when it's not in use. Private Browsing may not lock immediately.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap Private.
3. Follow the directions onscreen to unlock Private Browsing.
To exit Private Browsing, tap , then tap a Tab Group. The websites you have open in Private Browsing stay open, and Private Browsing locks.

To allow Private Browsing to be locked, go to Settings  > Apps > Safari, then turn on Require Passcode to Unlock Private Browsing, Require Face ID to Unlock Private Browsing ([supported models](#)), or Require Touch ID to Unlock Private Browsing ([supported models](#)).

Note: Any Safari extensions you have installed that have access to browsing data are automatically turned off in Private Browsing. To turn on an extension in Private Browsing, see [Change Safari extension settings](#).

Choose a search engine for Private Browsing

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Turn off Also Use in Private Browsing.
3. Tap Private Search Engine, then choose a search engine.

View the Privacy Report

Safari helps prevent trackers from following you across websites and from seeing your IP address. You can review the Privacy Report to see a summary of trackers that have been encountered and prevented by Intelligent Tracking Prevention on the current webpage you're visiting. You can also review and adjust Safari settings to keep your browsing activities private from others who use the same device, and help protect yourself from malicious websites.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap .
3. Tap Privacy Report .

Use iCloud Private Relay to browse the web with more privacy

When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is turned on, the traffic leaving your iPad is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and exact location while it prevents network providers from collecting your browsing activity in Safari. See [Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay](#).

See [Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay](#) to learn how to:

- Turn iCloud Private Relay completely on or off for your iPad.
- Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a specific Wi-Fi or cellular network.
- Turn iCloud Private Relay off temporarily.
- Set the specificity of your IP address location.

Note: iCloud Private Relay isn't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Temporarily allow a website to see your IP address

If a website relies on IP filtering, monitoring, or rate-limiting, it might require your IP address to be visible. You can turn off iCloud Private Relay temporarily for that website only.

1. Go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Go to the website.
3. Tap  on the left side of the URL field, then tap .
4. Tap Show IP Address (if available).

Your IP address remains visible to that website until you leave the website or close its Safari tab. iCloud Private Relay remains on for other websites.

To turn off or pause iCloud Private Relay for all websites, see [Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay](#).

Control privacy and security settings for Safari

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Safari.
2. Turn any of the following on or off:
 - *Prevent Cross-Site Tracking:* Safari limits third-party cookies and data by default. Turn this option off to allow cross-site tracking.
 - *Hide IP address:* Safari automatically protects your IP address from known trackers. For eligible iCloud+ subscribers, your IP address is protected from trackers and websites as you browse in Safari. If this option is off, your IP address isn't hidden.
 - *Fraudulent Website Warning:* Safari displays a warning if you're visiting a suspected phishing website. Turn this option off if you don't want to be warned about fraudulent websites.
 - *Camera:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your camera without asking you first. Tap Camera, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.
 - *Microphone:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your microphone without asking you first. Tap Microphone, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.
 - *Location:* Choose whether Safari websites can use your location without asking you first. Tap Location, then choose Ask, Deny, or Allow.

To set exceptions for a specific website, open the website in the Safari app, tap , tap , then tap the setting you want to change below Website Settings For.

Sign in with passkeys in Safari on iPad

In the Safari app , you can use Face ID ([supported models](#)) or Touch ID ([supported models](#)) to securely sign in to supporting websites. See [Use passkeys to sign in to apps and websites](#).

Use Hide My Email in Safari on iPad

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __ " Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms on the web or signing up for newsletters.

1. When you're asked for your email address on a website, tap the email address field.
2. Tap Hide My Email above the keyboard.
The Hide My Email screen suggests a new, randomly generated Hide My Email address.
3. If you don't want to use the suggested address, tap  to see a new suggested address.
4. Tap Continue.

You can delete the Hide My Email address at any time. See [Create and manage Hide My Email in Settings](#).

Shortcuts

Use Shortcuts to automate tasks on iPad

The Shortcuts app  lets you automate tasks you do often with just a tap or by asking Siri. Create shortcuts to get directions to the next event in your Calendar, move text from one app to another, and more. Choose ready-made shortcuts from the Gallery or build your own using different apps to run multiple steps in a task.

To learn how to automate the best features of your apps, see the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).

Stocks

Check stocks on iPad

Use the Stocks app to track market activity and view the performance of stocks you follow.

Say something like: "How are the markets doing?" or "How's Apple stock today?" [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Check stocks

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.
2. To search for a specific stock, enter a ticker symbol, company name, fund name, or index in the search field at the top of the screen, then tap the symbol in the search results.
3. Tap a ticker symbol in the My Symbols watchlist for more details.

See [View charts, details, and news](#).

Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist

When you first open the Stocks app, a list of ticker symbols appears on the screen; this is called the My Symbols watchlist. You can update and manage the My Symbols watchlist and [create your own watchlists](#).

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a symbol to view its most recent price, daily percentage change, market capitalization value, and more.
3. To make changes to the My Symbols watchlist, do any of the following:
 - *Add a symbol:* In the search field, enter a ticker symbol, company name, fund name, or index. In the search results, tap , then tap Done.
 - *Delete a symbol:* Swipe left on the symbol in your watchlist.
Note: If you delete a symbol from the My Symbols watchlist, that symbol is also deleted from your other watchlists (see [Manage multiple watchlists](#)).
 - *Reorder symbols:* Touch and hold a symbol in your watchlist, then drag it to a new position.
 - *Show currency:* Tap , then tap Show Currency to display the currency the stock is traded in.
 - *Share a symbol:* Swipe left on a symbol in your watchlist, tap , then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

View charts, details, and news

You can view interactive charts, performance details, and related news stories about the ticker symbols in your watchlist and the symbols you search for.

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.

2. Tap a symbol you want to see more details about, then do any of the following:

- *View the performance over time:* Tap an option from the time range selections at the top of the chart.
- *View the value for a specific date or time:* Touch and hold the chart with one finger.
- *View the difference in value over time:* Touch and hold the chart with two fingers.
- *View more details:* Below the chart, view additional stock details like 52-week high and low, Beta, EPS, and average trading volume.
- *Read news:* Swipe up to see additional news stories, then tap a story.

Tip: Touch and hold a symbol in your watchlist to see a quick view of its performance.

Manage multiple watchlists in Stocks on iPad

You can create your own watchlists to organize the stocks you follow. For example, you could organize them according to categories such as entertainment or sustainability. You can switch between watchlists, or edit, update, and delete them. You can view your watchlists on your other devices. Any symbols you add to a custom watchlist are also added to the My Symbols watchlist.

Create a new watchlist

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.
2. Tap My Symbols, then tap New Watchlist.
3. Name the watchlist, then tap Save.

To switch between your watchlists, tap My Symbols or the name of the current watchlist you're viewing, then tap the name of the watchlist you want to see.

Add symbols to a watchlist

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.
2. In the search field, enter the name of a ticker symbol, company, fund, or index.
3. Tap , then tap Done.

Tip: You can easily add a symbol that's in one watchlist to another watchlist. Swipe left on the symbol, tap , select a watchlist, then tap Done.

Each symbol you add to a new watchlist is also added to the My Symbols watchlist. See [Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist](#).

Remove symbols from a watchlist

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe left on the symbol.

When you remove a symbol from a watchlist that you created, that symbol remains in the My Symbols watchlist. See [Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist](#).

Sort symbols in a watchlist

You can choose how the symbols in your watchlists are sorted.

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.
2. Select the watchlist you want to sort, then tap .
3. Tap Sort Watchlist By, then tap one of the following options:
 - Manual
 - Price Change
 - Percentage Change
 - Market Cap
 - Symbol
 - Name

To change the order of the symbols in the watchlist, tap , tap Sort Watchlist By, then tap Ascending or Descending.

Change the value displayed in a watchlist

You can change the value displayed below each symbol's price in a watchlist.

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.
2. Select the watchlist you want to change, then tap .
3. Tap Watchlist Shows, then tap one of the following options:
 - Price Change
 - Percentage Change
 - Market Cap

Delete, reorder, and rename watchlists

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the name of the watchlist, tap Manage Watchlists, then do any of the following:
 - *Delete a watchlist:* Tap  next to the symbol, tap , then tap Delete Watchlist.
 - *Reorder your watchlists:* Touch and hold , then drag the watchlist to a new position.
 - *Rename a watchlist:* Tap , type a new name, then tap Save.

View your watchlists on all your devices

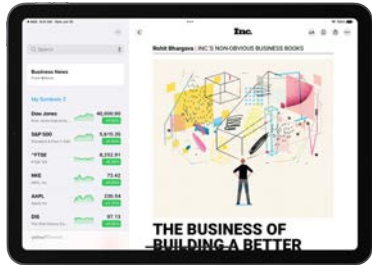
You can view your watchlists on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac when you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

- *On your iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, tap See All (next to Saved to iCloud), then turn on Stocks.
- *On a Mac with macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click your name at the top of the sidebar, click iCloud, then turn on Stocks. (If you don't see your name, click "Sign in" to sign in to your Apple Account or to create one.)
- *On a Mac with macOS 10.15–12.7:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Apple ID, click iCloud, then turn on Stocks.
- *On a Mac with macOS 10.14 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click iCloud. Select iCloud Drive, click Options, then turn on Stocks.

Read business news in Stocks on iPad

In the Stocks app, you can read business news that's driving the market. In countries where Apple News is available, you also see stories selected by the Apple News editors and stories from Apple News+.

To learn more about Apple News+, see [Subscribe to Apple News+](#).



Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Read a story

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe up on Business News or Top Stories to view stories, or tap a symbol in your watchlist to browse related stories. See [Manage symbols in the My Symbols watchlist](#).
3. Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, you have these options:
 - *Return to your newsfeed in Stocks:* Tap  or Done in the top-left corner.
 - *See more stories from the publication in Apple News:* Tap the publisher logo at the top of the screen.
 - *Save the story to Apple News:* Tap .
 - *Note:* In order to save stories to Apple News, make sure you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#), then go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud, tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on News.
 - *Change the text size:* Do one of the following, depending on your device and location:
 - Tap , then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story.
 - Tap , tap Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story.
 - *Share the story:* Tap , then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.

Note: If you tap an Apple News+ story and you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, tap the subscribe or free trial button, then follow the onscreen instructions. To learn more about Apple News+, see [Subscribe to Apple News+](#).

Stories from publications you have blocked in Apple News don't appear in the newsfeed. See [See news stories chosen just for you](#).

Note: Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Add earnings reports to your calendar in Stocks on iPad

You can see when a company has an upcoming earnings report and add it as an event in the Calendar app.

Add an earnings report event to your calendar

If a stock has an upcoming earnings report, you can add it in the Calendar app.

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.
2. Tap a ticker symbol in your watchlist, or use the search field to search for a symbol.

3. If an earnings report is upcoming, tap Add to Calendar, then tap Add.

The earnings report is saved as an all-day event in the Calendar app. Calendar sends you an event reminder on the day of the earnings report.

Delete an earnings report event from your calendar

1. Go to the Stocks app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the ticker symbol in your watchlist or use the search field to search for the symbol.
3. Tap Edit, then tap Delete Event.

Use a Stocks widget on your iPad

Use a widget to check stocks at a glance on your iPad Home Screen. You can choose the size of the widget and the amount of information the widget displays.

Add a Stocks widget to your Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle.
2. Tap  at the top of the screen to open the widget gallery.
3. Tap Stocks on the left side of the gallery.
4. Swipe left and right to view the different widget types (Watchlist and Symbol) and sizes. When you see the option you want, tap Add Widget, then tap Done.

To move the widget on your Home Screen, touch and hold the Home Screen until the apps begin to jiggle. Drag the widget to a new location, then tap Done.

Change the widget display

After you add a Stocks widget to your Home Screen, you can change its appearance and the information it displays.

1. Touch and hold the Stocks widget on your Home Screen.
2. Tap Edit Widget.
3. Depending on the type of widget you chose, Watchlist or Symbol, you can make the following changes:
 - *Change the widget symbol:* Tap the current symbol, then tap the new symbol you want from the watchlist. Or use the search field to search for a new symbol.
 - *Change the widget watchlist:* Tap the name of the current watchlist, then tap the watchlist you want to display.
 - *Change when news stories appear:* Tap In Off Hours, then choose an option.
 - *Show the watchlist name:* Turn on Show Watchlist Name.
 - *Show more symbols or additional symbol information:* Turn on Show More Details.

Tip: You can add more than one Stocks widget to your Home Screen—and choose a different size for each—so you can quickly see updates for different symbols or watchlists.

Stocks widgets are also available for the iPad Lock Screen. See [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).

Tips

Use the Tips app on iPad

View collections of tips in the Tips app that help you get the most from your iPad. You can also get notifications every once in a while so you can keep learning new things over time.



Get tips

In the Tips app, you can learn how to personalize your Lock Screen, how to use Calculator to solve math problems, how to access your passwords, and much more. New tips are added frequently.

To start learning, go to the Tips app , tap a collection, then tap a tip.

Get notified when new tips arrive

1. Go to Settings  > Notifications.
2. Tap Tips below Notification Style, then turn on Allow Notifications.

3. Choose options for the location and style of tip notifications, when they should appear, and more.

Save tips

You can add tips to your unique Saved tips collection, so you can quickly find them later.

1. Go to the Tips app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Save a tip:* Tap .
 - *View your saved tips:* Tap  or  until you return to the list of collections, then tap “Saved tips.”
 - *Remove a tip from your saved tips:* Tap .

Share a tip

You can share a tip with a friend over Messages and Mail, or AirDrop it to someone nearby. You can also add tips to documents like Notes and Freeform boards.

1. Go to the Tips app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then choose a share option such as Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.

Learn more about your other Apple devices

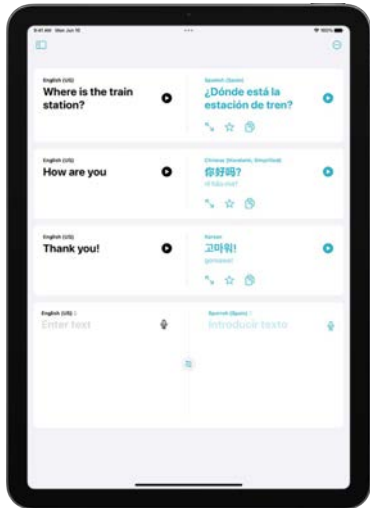
If you have other Apple devices—like an Apple TV, AirPods, or a HomePod—you can read about them in the Tips app.

1. Go to the Tips app  on your iPad.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the Tips app, then tap the user guide you want to browse.

Translate

Translate text, voice, and conversations on iPad

You can translate text, voice, and conversations into any supported language. You can also download languages to translate entirely on a device, even without an internet connection.



Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Translate text or your voice

1. Go to the Translate app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.
To swap languages, tap .
3. Tap one of the following:
 - *Translate text:* Tap “Enter text,” type a phrase (or paste text), then tap Next in the keyboard.
You can also tap Done in the top-right corner of the screen.
 - *Translate your voice:* Tap , then say a phrase.
Note: Words are translated as you type or speak.

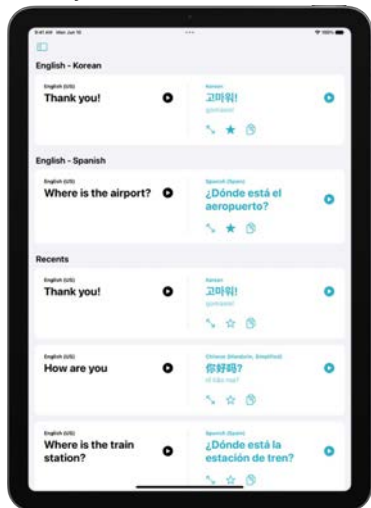
4. When the translation is shown, do any of the following:

- *Play the audio translation:* Tap 🔊.
- **Tip:** Touch and hold 🔊 to adjust the playback speed.
- *Show the translation to someone else:* Tap ➦.
- *Save the translation as a favorite:* Tap ☆.
- *Look up a word in the dictionary:* Tap 📖.
- *Copy the translation:* Tap 📄.

Tip: To view your recent history, swipe the translation down.

To delete a translation, swipe left, then tap 🗑️.

View your favorite translations



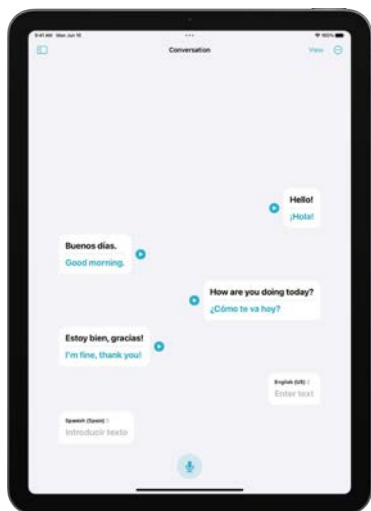
1. Go to the Translate app 📱 on your iPad.
2. Tap 📖, tap All Favorites, then scroll to view translations you've favorited and words and phrases you've recently translated.

To remove a translation from your favorites, swipe left, then tap 🗑️.

Note: You can see your favorite translations in the Translate app on your iPhone, iPad, or Apple Watch where you're [signed in to Apple Account](#).

Translate a conversation

iPad shows the translated text bubbles from both sides of the conversation. Conversations work for downloaded languages when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.



1. Go to the Translate app 📱 on your iPad.
2. Tap 🗨️, then tap Conversation.
3. Tap one of the following:
 - *Type text:* Tap "Enter text," type a phrase (or paste text), then tap Done.
 - *Use your voice:* Tap 🔊, then say a phrase.

Note: Words are translated as you type or speak.

4. Tap  to hear the audio translation.

To hear audio translations automatically, tap , then tap Play Translations.

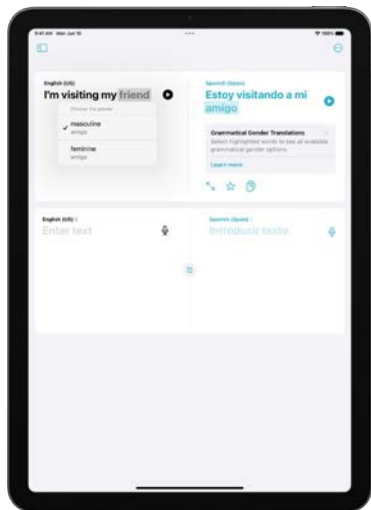
Tip: You can translate a conversation without tapping the microphone button before each person speaks. Tap , tap Auto Translate, then tap  to start the conversation. iPad automatically detects when you start speaking and when you stop.

When chatting face to face, tap View in the top left, then tap Face to Face so that each person can see the conversation from their own side.

Review words with multiple meanings

When translating a word that has several meanings in another language, you can choose the one you want. You can also select feminine or masculine translations for words that have grammatical gender variations.

Note: When gender hasn't been specified, translations automatically default to the gender-neutral form of a word.



1. Go to the Translate app  on your iPad.
2. Translate a word or phrase, then tap Next in the keyboard.
3. When available, do any of the following:
 - *Choose a different meaning:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select the intended meaning.
 - *Choose grammatical gender translations:* When available, tap the light-colored word to select a feminine or masculine translation.

To turn off grammatical gender translations, tap , then tap Show Grammatical Gender.

Download languages for offline translation or On-Device Mode

Download languages to translate when you don't have an internet connection or when On-Device Mode is turned on.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Translate.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Tap Downloaded Languages, then tap  next to the languages you want to download.
 - Turn On-Device Mode on.

Translate text in apps on iPad

On iPad, you can translate text in apps such as Camera, Photos, Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Translate text in apps

You can select any text to translate in apps such as Safari, Messages, Mail, supported third-party apps, and more. When you enter text on your iPad, you can even replace what you wrote with a translation.

1. Go to an app like Safari, Message, or Mail on your iPad.
2. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.
If you don't see Translate, tap > to see more options.
3. Tap the language you want to translate your selected text to.

4. Below the text translation, choose any of the following:

- *Replace with Translation:* Replace your original text with the translation (available only when translating editable text).
- *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.
- *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.
- *Open in Translate:* Do more with the translation in the Translate app.
- *Download Languages:* Download languages for offline translation.
- *Listen to Original Text:* Tap more, then tap  to listen to the original text.
- *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap  to listen to the translated text.

Translate text in photos

On [supported models](#), when you view a photo that includes text, tap , touch and hold the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap > to see more options.

Translate text in the Camera app

On [supported models](#), you can use the Camera app to translate text around you—like a recipe, for example.

1. Go to the Camera app  on your iPad.
2. Position iPad so that the text appears on the screen.
3. When the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap .
4. Select the text you want to translate, then tap Translate.

If you don't see Translate, tap > to see more options.

Translate text with the camera view in the Translate app on iPad

On iPad, you can use the camera view in the Translate app to translate text around you—for example, a restaurant menu or street signs. You can also translate text in photos from your photo library.

Note: Translation is available for supported languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Translate text using the camera view

1. Open the Translate app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , then tap Camera.
3. Choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.
4. Position iPad so the rear camera can translate text around you.

Note: As you move the rear camera, text is translated in real time.

5. Tap  to pause the view.

You can zoom in to get a closer look at the overlaid translations.

6. Tap an overlaid translation to show the translation card, then do any of the following:

- *Copy Translation:* Copy the translated text.
- *Add to Favorites:* Add the translation to a list of favorites.
- *Listen to Original Text:* Tap more, then tap  to listen to the original text.
- *Listen to Translated Text:* Tap  to listen to the translated text.

7. When you're finished, tap .

Translate text in photos from your photo library

1. Go to the Translate app  on iPad.
2. Tap , then tap Camera.
3. Choose the language you want to translate your selected text into.
4. Tap , then select a photo that contains text from your photo library.
5. When you're finished, tap .

Share and save a translated image

After translating text from the camera view or a photo, tap , then do any of the following:

1. Go to the Translate app  on your iPad.
2. Tap , tap Camera, then do one of the following:
 - *Use the camera view:* Tap .
 - *Use a photo from your photo library:* Tap , then tap a photo.

3. Tap , then do any of the following:
 - *Share the translation:* Choose a share option.
 - *Save the translation as an image:* Tap Save Image.

TV

Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel on iPad

In the Apple TV app, you can subscribe to Apple TV+, [MLS Season Pass](#), and [Apple TV channels](#). A subscription gives you access to content on demand on [iPhone](#), [iPad](#), [Mac](#), [Apple TV](#), [Apple Vision Pro](#), and [supported smart TVs and streaming devices](#). You can also download content to watch offline on iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

You can choose to bundle your Apple TV+ subscription with other Apple services by subscribing to Apple One. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

Note: Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Subscribe to Apple TV+

Apple TV+ is a subscription streaming service featuring Apple Originals—award-winning series, compelling dramas, groundbreaking documentaries, kids' entertainment, comedies, and more—with new items added every month.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Apple TV+ in the sidebar, then tap the subscription button.
3. Review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Subscribe to MLS Season Pass

MLS Season Pass is a subscription streaming service featuring every match of the Major League Soccer season, all in one place, with consistent match times, and no blackouts.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap MLS in the sidebar, then tap the subscription button.
3. Review the subscription details, tap a subscription option, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Subscribe to Apple TV channels and apps

You can subscribe to Apple TV channels like Paramount+, Starz, and others to get the shows you want, without downloading any apps.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Store in the sidebar, then scroll down to the Add Channels & Apps row.
3. Swipe left to browse, then tap an item.
4. Tap the subscription button, review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To disconnect supported streaming apps, tap your picture or initials at the bottom left of the sidebar, tap Connected Apps, then tap the button next to the streaming app to disconnect it.

Change or cancel your subscriptions to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or Apple TV channels

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. In the sidebar, tap your picture or initials at the bottom left.
3. Tap Manage Subscriptions.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions to change or cancel your subscription.

Share Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, and Apple TV channels with family members

When you subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share your subscriptions with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—a shared subscription is available to them the first time they open the Apple TV app after your subscription begins.

If you [join a family group](#) that subscribes to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, Apple TV channels, or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing your subscription with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, [leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group](#) or (if you're the family group organizer), stop using Family Sharing.

Find shows, movies, and more in the Apple TV app on iPad

You can use the Search tab in the Apple TV app to look for TV shows and movies by specific categories like title, sport, and cast. The Home tab gives you easy access to next episodes, new releases, personalized recommendations, and much more.

Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).



[Stream *Ted Lasso* on the Apple TV app with a subscription.](#)

Search for specific shows, movies, and more

When you're looking for something specific—like a show or actor—use the Search tab.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Search, then either tap a category, or tap the search field to see previous searches or enter a new search.

Find content in the Home tab

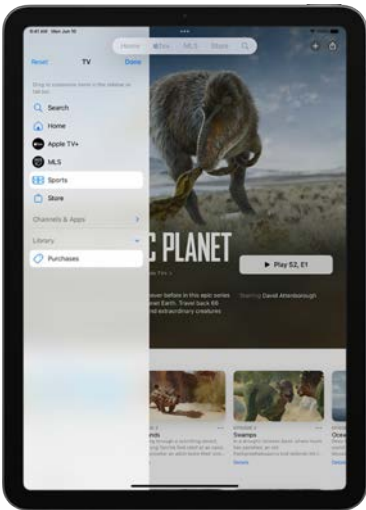
When you're looking for suggestions or just want to see what's available, use the Home tab.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the Sidebar, then do any of the following:
 - *Get recommendations:* Get video previews of personalized recommendations based on your channel subscriptions, supported apps, purchases, and viewing interests.
 - *Browse a collection:* Swipe left on the collection or tap  to see all items.
 - *See shows, movies, and episodes sent by friends in Messages:* Scroll down to the Shared with You row. See [Share content in Messages](#).

You can also tap the MLS Season Pass, Sports, Store, and Library tabs to see content specific to those categories.

Edit the tab bar

You can customize by adding or removing categories in the tab bar so you can quickly find what you want to watch.



[Stream *Prehistoric Planet* on the Apple TV app with a subscription.](#)

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. In portrait orientation, tap , then tap Edit.

Tip: You can also touch and hold the tab bar.
3. Touch and hold a category in the sidebar, then drag it to the tab bar at the top of the screen.
To remove a category from the tab bar, drag the category off the tab bar.
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

To reset the tab bar, tap Reset in the top-left corner.

Personalize the Home tab in the Apple TV app on iPad

The Home tab brings your favorite shows, movies, channels, and sports together in one place. Pick up where you left off with Up Next, or discover Apple TV channels and streaming apps—personalized just for you.

Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Use Up Next

In the Up Next row, you can find titles you recently added, rented, or purchased, catch the next episode in a series you're watching, or resume what you're watching from the moment you left off.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Add an item to Up Next:* Touch and hold the item, then tap Add to Up Next.
 - *Remove an item from Up Next:* Touch and hold the item in the Up Next row, then tap Remove from Up Next.
 - *Continue watching on another device:* You can see your Up Next queue in the Apple TV app on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, or supported smart TV where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

Discover channels and apps

The Apple TV app recommends new content or the next episode in a series you watch from a connected app (supported streaming apps only).

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Home in the sidebar, scroll down to the Channels & Apps row, then swipe right to browse either of the following:
 - *Channels & Apps:* Directly access all the channels you subscribe to or apps you connected to the Apple TV app.
 - *More to Explore:* Find new channels or apps to subscribe to or watch.
3. Tap an item to open it.

Your channels and apps appear in the Channels & Apps row in the Home tab across all your devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

Buy, rent, or pre-order items in the Apple TV app on iPad

You can buy, rent, or pre-order TV shows and movies in the Apple TV app. Once you find something you want to watch, you can purchase it, rent it (if it's a movie), or choose how to watch it (if it's available on multiple channels and apps).

Note: The availability of Apple Media Services varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

Browse featured and recommended TV shows and movies

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Store in the sidebar, then browse featured items, collections, and genres.
3. Tap an item to see previews, ratings, descriptions, and viewing information.

Buy, rent, or pre-order items

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Store in the sidebar, then choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):
 - *Buy:* Purchased items are added to your library.
 - *Rent:* When you rent a movie, you have 30 days to start watching it. After you start watching the movie, you can play it as many times as you want for 48 hours, after which the rental period ends. When the rental period ends, the movie is deleted.
 - *Pre-order:* When the pre-ordered item becomes available, your payment method is billed, and you receive an email notification. If you turned on automatic downloads, the item is automatically downloaded to your iPad.
3. Confirm your selection, then complete the payment or pre-order.

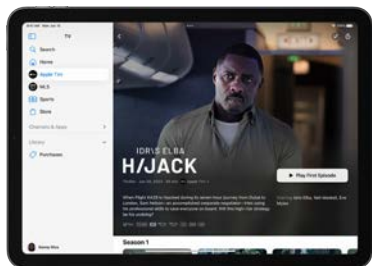
You can [find your purchases and rentals in your library](#) and play them in the Apple TV app.

Stream content and control playback in the Apple TV app on iPad

You can stream TV shows, movies, sports, and more. Content from Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels plays in the Apple TV app, while content from other providers plays in their video app. Use the playback controls to play or pause what you're watching, skip backward or forward, and more.

When you watch with your friends using SharePlay, the playback controls are shared by everyone on the FaceTime call. To learn more about using SharePlay in the Apple TV app, see [Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime](#).

Stream or download content



Stream *Hijack* on the Apple TV app with a subscription.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap an item to see its details.
3. Choose any of the following options (not all options are available for all titles):
 - *Watch Apple TV+ or Apple TV channels:* Tap Play. If you're not a current subscriber, tap Try It Free (available for eligible Apple Accounts) or Subscribe.
 - *Choose a different video app:* If the title is available from multiple apps, scroll down to How To Watch, then choose an app.
 - *Download:* Tap . You can find the downloaded item in your library and watch it even when iPad isn't connected to the internet.

Watch a movie you rented

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Below the Library heading in the sidebar, tap Rentals, then tap a movie.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Play the movie:* Tap . The time remaining in the rental period is shown.
 - *Download the movie:* Tap  to watch the item later when iPad isn't connected to the internet.

Use the playback controls

During playback, tap the screen to show the controls.



[Stream Hijack on the Apple TV app with a subscription.](#)

Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Skip backward 10 seconds; touch and hold to rewind
	Skip forward 10 seconds; touch and hold to fast-forward
	Change the playback speed
	Change the audio track and enhance dialogue

Control	Description
	Display subtitles and closed captions
	Share an episode, movie, trailer, or sporting event
	Stream the video to other devices
	Start Picture in Picture—you can continue to watch the video while you use another app
	Stop playback

When the audio is muted, subtitles automatically appear. And if you skip backward 10 seconds, subtitles appear. To turn off subtitles, tap , then tap Off.

Change audio options during playback

1. During playback, tap the screen to show the playback controls.
2. Tap , then tap Enhance Dialogue.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Boost*: Makes dialogue very prominent in the mix.
 - *Enhance*: Makes dialogue more prominent in the mix.
 - *Off*: Turns Enhance Dialogue off.

Go to Info, InSight, and Up Next

During playback, you can get more information about the movie or TV show you're watching or go directly to Up Next.

With InSight, you can get information in real time about actors, characters, and music currently onscreen while you're watching an Apple TV+ movie or TV show (Apple TV+ subscription required). You can tap an actor to view their background and filmography page, or quickly view a song that's playing in the background and add it to an Apple Music playlist (Apple Music subscription required).

1. During playback, tap the screen to show the playback controls.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Info*: See more information about what you're watching.
 - *InSight*: Tap an actor or character to see more info. If music information appears, tap the song to add it to a playlist in the Music app  (Apple TV+ and Apple Music subscriptions required).
 - *Up Next*: Go directly to your Up Next list, then tap an item to start watching it.
 - *Live Sports*: View live and upcoming sports events.

Watch sports

Watch sports in the Apple TV app on iPad

The Sports row gives you access to a wide array of live and scheduled sports events (not available in all countries or regions).

You can see live games with up-to-the-minute scores, or browse upcoming games and add them to Up Next.

Explore sports

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.

2. Tap Sports in the sidebar, then do any of the following:
 - Browse live and upcoming games.
 - Scroll down to browse football, baseball, basketball, and more.
3. To filter by sport, scroll down to the Browse row, then tap a sport.

Watch a live game

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar, then tap a live game.
3. Tap Watch or Open In, then choose an app.

You can also scroll down to How to Watch, then choose an app.

If you want to receive live updates for a game on the Lock Screen, tap Follow Live. See [Access features from the Lock Screen](#).

Select games may also show the current score and play-by-play updates on the game page.

To hide the scores of live games, go to Settings  > Apps > TV, then turn off Show Sports Scores.

Follow teams with My Sports in the Apple TV app on iPad

You can add your favorite teams to My Sports to see their games in Up Next and [receive notifications](#) when they're about to play.

When you turn on syncing for My Sports, the teams you follow in Apple TV are automatically followed in Apple News, Apple Sports, and other supported apps. If you already set up My Sports in the News app, the teams you follow appear in the Apple TV app.

If you have an iPhone, iPad, or Mac [signed in to the same Apple Account](#), you can also see the teams you're following with My Sports in the Apple TV app and in the News app on those devices.

Note: My Sports isn't available in all countries or regions.

Follow your favorite teams

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar.
3. Scroll to the bottom, then tap Follow Your Teams.
4. Tap Turn On to sync your teams across Apple News, Apple TV, and other supported apps.
5. Tap a sports league (MLS, MLB, or NBA, for example), then tap  next to a team to follow it.
6. When you're finished, tap Done.

Manage My Sports

You can follow and unfollow teams after you set up My Sports.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar, then tap Manage My Sports at the bottom of the screen.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Follow teams:* Tap a league, tap  next to a team you want to follow, then tap Done.
 - *Unfollow teams:* Tap  next to a team you want to unfollow, tap Remove, then tap Done.

Watch MLS in the Apple TV app on iPad

MLS in the Apple TV app gives you access to Major League Soccer events when you subscribe to MLS Season Pass.

You can also [watch multiple matches at the same time](#), catch up on key plays during a live game, follow your favorite MLS clubs using My Sports (not available in all countries or regions), and watch on-demand content—including MLS club profiles, player profiles, league and club highlights from the last season, and more.

Note: Some MLS games may be offered for free on a promotional basis, but full access to all games, shows, and features requires an [MLS Season Pass subscription](#). MLS Season Pass isn't available in all countries or regions.

Browse and watch with MLS Season Pass

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap MLS in the sidebar, then do any of the following:
 - *Explore featured matches, pregame and postgame shows, and more:* Scroll to a category row.
 - *Browse matches, club profiles, player profiles, and more for a particular club:* Scroll down to the All Clubs row, then tap a club.
3. To start watching, tap an event or show.

Follow your favorite MLS clubs

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.

2. Tap MLS in the sidebar, then scroll down to the All Clubs Row.
3. Tap a club, then tap  at the top right.

Tip: You can also touch and hold a club in the All Clubs row, then tap Follow Team.

Clubs you follow appear at the front of the All Clubs row with a star  next to the club's name.

You can also follow MLS clubs with My Sports. See [Follow teams with My Sports](#).

Note: When you follow a club, their matches automatically appear in Up Next.

Catch up with Key Plays

When you start watching a live match in progress, you can catch up to the action by watching all the key plays you missed. You can also browse and watch key plays at any time during the match.

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap MLS in the sidebar, then do either of the following:
 - *Catch up to a match in progress:* Tap a match, then tap Catch Up.
 - *Go to key plays during a match:* While watching a match, tap the screen to show the playback controls, tap Key Plays, then select a key play from the collection row.

Key plays start playing in order from the beginning of the match if you're catching up, or from the key play you select from the Key Play menu.
3. While watching key plays, you can do either of the following:
 - *Browse the collection:* Swipe left or right.
 - *Return to the match:* Tap Jump to Live in the lower-left corner of the screen, or to resume playback from the last spot you were watching, tap .

Add or remove an event from Up Next

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap MLS in the sidebar, then tap an event.
3. Do either of the following:
 - *Add the item to Up Next:* Tap .
 - *Remove the item from Up Next:* Tap .

Watch multiple live sports streams in the Apple TV app on iPad

On iPad, you can play up to four simultaneous streams, including Major League Soccer matches, Friday Night Baseball games, and select MLS and MLB live shows.

Note: Multiview is available on iPadOS 17.2 or later; a subscription to MLS Season Pass (for MLS) or Apple TV+ (for Friday Night Baseball) is also required. Multiple game viewing options are subject to scheduling.

Watch multiple live sports streams

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Sports in the sidebar, then [start a live game](#).
3. While you're watching a Friday Night Baseball game or MLS match, tap the screen to [show the playback controls](#), then do one of the following:
 - Tap  at the top left, then tap a game below Add More.
 - Tap Live Sports or Up Next in the bottom left, touch and hold a live game, then tap Watch in Multiview.
4. While in Multiview, do any of the following:
 - *Add a stream:* Swipe up from the bottom, then tap a stream in the Add More row.
 - *Move streams:* Touch and hold a stream, then drag it to a new position.
 - *Change the audio to a different stream:* Tap a stream to focus on it.
Note: The Sound button  appears in the bottom-right corner of the stream playing audio.
 - *Watch a stream in full screen:* Tap a stream, then tap . Tap  to return to Multiview.
 - *Delete a stream from Multiview:* Tap a stream, then tap .
 - *Exit Multiview:* Tap . Tap  to return to Multiview.

Change the layout of the sports streams

To change the layout of the streams in the grid, do any of the following:

- *When two streams are selected:* Tap  at the top right to view the streams in a 70/30 ratio. Tap  again to view the streams at the same size.
- *When four streams are selected:* Tap  at the top right to view the streams in a 70/30 ratio (one stream at 70 percent, three streams at 30 percent). Tap  again to view the streams at the same size.

Manage your library in the Apple TV app on iPad

Your library contains shows and movies you purchased, rented, and downloaded. If you [use Family Sharing](#), you can also view purchases made by family members.

Browse your library

Below the Library heading in the sidebar, tap Movies, TV Shows, or Genres.

Share purchases made by family members

If you [use Family Sharing](#), you and your family members can share purchases in the Apple TV app.

Tap Library, tap Family Sharing, then choose a family member.

Remove a downloaded item

1. Go to the Apple TV app  on your iPad.
2. Below the Library heading in the sidebar, tap Downloaded.
3. Swipe left on the item you want to remove, then tap Delete.

Removing an item from iPad doesn't delete it from your purchases in iCloud. You can download the item to iPad again later.

Add your TV provider to the Apple TV app on iPad

You can add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app and watch shows and movies on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple TV, Apple Vision Pro, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices.

Add your cable or satellite service to the Apple TV app

Single sign-on provides immediate access to all the supported video apps in your subscription package.

1. Go to Settings  > General > TV Provider.
2. Choose your TV provider, then sign in with your provider credentials.

If your TV provider isn't listed, sign in directly from the app you want to use.

Change the Apple TV app settings on iPad

You can adjust streaming and download settings for the Apple TV app. You can also change how the Apple TV app uses your viewing history to provide personalized recommendations and choose what appears in the Apple TV app, including live sports scores and items in Up Next.

Change streaming and download options

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > TV.
2. Choose streaming options:
 - *Use Cellular Data:* (Wi-Fi + Cellular models) Turn off to limit streaming to Wi-Fi connections.
 - *Cellular:* (Wi-Fi + Cellular models) Choose High Quality or Automatic.
 - *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Data Saver.
High Quality requires a faster internet connection and uses more data.
3. Choose download options:
 - *Use Cellular Data:* (Wi-Fi + Cellular models) Turn off to limit downloads to Wi-Fi connections.
 - *Cellular:* (Wi-Fi + Cellular models) Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.
 - *Wi-Fi:* Choose High Quality or Fast Downloads.
High Quality results in slower downloads and uses more data.
 - *Languages:* Choose a language. Each added audio language increases the download size. To remove a language, swipe left on the language you want to remove, then tap Delete.
The default language is the primary language for your country or region. If you turned on Audio Descriptions in Settings > Accessibility, audio descriptions are also downloaded.

Change how your viewing history is used

By default, what you watch on your iPad affects your personalized recommendations and Up Next queue on all your devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

You can do any of the following:

- *Clear your viewing history:* Go to the Apple TV app , tap your picture or initials at the bottom left of the sidebar, then tap Clear Play History.
- *Turn off personalization features based on your viewing history:* Go to Settings  > Apps > TV, then turn off Use Play History.

Change your device preferences

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > TV.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Show or hide live sports scores:* Turn off Show Sports Scores.
- *Use your viewing history for personalized recommendations and Up Next:* Turn on Use Play History.
- *Choose the art you want to see in Up Next:* Tap Up Next Display, then tap Still Frame to see paused images from what you're watching, or Poster Art to show main title images for shows or movies.
- *Prevent the next episode or trailer from automatically playing:* Turn off Auto-Play Next Video.

Voice Memos

Make a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

You can use iPad as a portable recording device to record personal notes, classroom lectures, musical ideas, and more. You can fine-tune your recordings with editing tools like trim, replace, and resume.

Record voice memos using the built-in microphone, a supported headset, or an external microphone.

When Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or iCloud preferences, your recordings [appear and update automatically](#) on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).



Make a basic recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.

2. Tap  to begin recording.

To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther from what you're recording.

3. Tap Done to finish recording.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services](#) is turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see [Edit a recording](#).

Note: For your privacy, when you use Voice Memos to make recordings, an orange dot appears at the top of your screen to indicate your microphone is in use.

Record in stereo

You can record in stereo in Voice Memos.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Voice Memos.

2. Turn on Stereo Recording.

When Stereo Recording is on, Voice Memos records using multiple microphones on your iPad and with right and left audio channels. If you listen to the recording through headphones, you hear different sounds from different microphones; however, the waveform display still looks the same.

Note: Stereo recording isn't available on all devices.

Use the advanced recording features

You can make a recording in parts, pausing and resuming as you record.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.

2. Tap  to begin a recording.

To adjust the recording level, move the microphone closer to or farther away from what you're recording.

To see more details while you're recording, swipe up from the top of the waveform.

3. Tap  to stop recording; tap Resume to continue.

4. To review your recording, tap .

To change where playback begins, drag the playhead right or left across the small waveform at the bottom of the screen before you tap .

5. To save the recording, tap Done.

Your recording is saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services](#) is turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security. To change the name, tap the recording, then tap the name and type a new one.

To fine-tune your recording, see [Edit or delete a recording](#).

Mute the start and stop tones

While recording, use the iPad volume down button to turn the volume all the way down.

Use another app while recording

While you're recording, you can use another app, as long as it doesn't play audio on your iPad.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  to begin recording.
3. While recording, you can [go to the Home Screen](#) and open another app.

If the other app starts playing audio, Voice Memos stops recording.

4. To return to Voice Memos, tap the orange icon at the top of the screen.

If Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings or preferences, your recording is saved in iCloud and appears automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Recordings using the built-in microphone are mono, but you can record stereo using an external stereo microphone that works with iPad. Look for accessories marked with the Apple "Made for iPad" or "Works with iPad" logo.

View a Voice Memos transcription on iPad

Speech in your audio recordings can be recognized and transcribed to text in Voice Memos (not available in all countries or regions). You can view the transcription while you're recording or after.

If you open a recording made in an earlier version of Voice Memos (iPadOS 17 or earlier), Voice Memos will transcribe it automatically if it includes recorded speech.

View a transcription while recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  to begin recording.
3. Tap  to watch the transcription live.

The waveform disappears temporarily, and the transcription appears, with the current word highlighted. To return to the waveform view, tap .

4. Tap  to stop recording; tap Resume to continue.
5. To save the recording, tap Done.

View or copy transcribed text after recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the recording with the transcript you want to view, then tap .
3. Tap  to view the transcription.
4. Select the text you want to copy, then tap Copy.

You can open another document—a Mail message or text file, for example—and paste the text into it.

Search for text in titles and transcriptions

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPad.
2. Swipe down from the top of the list of recordings to show the search field.
3. In the search field, enter the text you want to find.

The list shows only recordings with that text—either in the title or in the audio transcription.

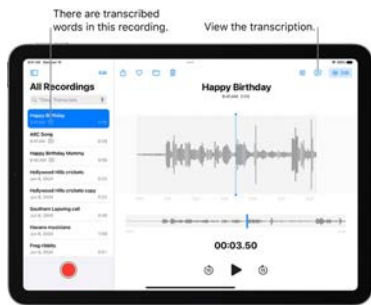
When you select a term in the transcription, the playhead appears at that location in the audio waveform. To return to the waveform, tap .

Play a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

You can play audio you recorded on your iPad using the playback controls.

You can also adjust settings to change playback speed, reduce background noise, and fill in silences.

Note: Changing these settings doesn't affect the recording itself. The setting you choose for a recording stays with that specific recording and is applied each time you play the recording. It doesn't apply to other recordings, and isn't included with the recording when you share it.



Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Skip backward 15 seconds
	Skip forward 15 seconds

Tip: While the recording is open, you can tap its name to rename it.

Change the playback speed

You can play a recording at a faster or slower speed.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to play.
3. Tap , then drag the slider toward the tortoise  for a slower speed, or toward the rabbit  for a faster speed.]
4. Tap , then tap  to play the recording.

Enhance a recording

When playing a recording, you can enhance it to reduce background noise and echo when you play the recording.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to enhance.
3. Tap , then turn on Enhance Recording.
4. Tap , then tap  to play the recording.

Skip over gaps when playing back a recording

Voice Memos can analyze your audio and automatically skip over gaps when playing it.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the recording you want to play.
3. Tap , then turn on Skip Silence.
4. Tap , then tap  to play the recording.

Reset the playback options

You can return all the playback options to their original settings at the same time.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.

2. Tap the recording you want to turn off playback options for.
3. Tap  at the top of the screen, then tap Reset.

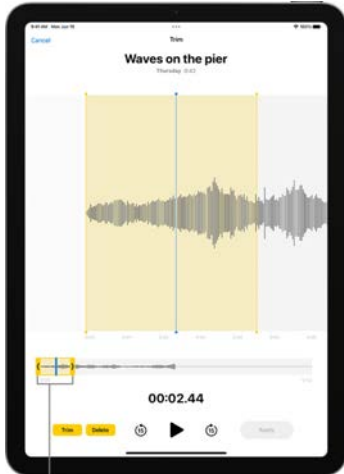
Edit or delete a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

You can fine-tune your recordings using the editing tools. Remove parts, record over parts, or replace an entire recording.

Edit a voice recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to edit, then tap Edit at the top right.
3. Tap  at the top right, then drag the yellow trim handles to enclose the section you want to keep or delete.

You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise editing.



Drag to enclose the section you want to keep or delete.

To check your selection, tap .

4. To keep the selection (and delete the rest of the recording), tap Trim, or to delete the selection, tap Delete.
5. Tap Apply, then tap Done.
6. Tap Save Recording to overwrite the original recording, or tap Save as New Recording to save the edited version as a new recording (leaving the original as it was).

Replace a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to replace, then tap Edit at the top right.
3. Drag the waveform to position the playhead where you want to start recording new audio.
You can pinch open to zoom in on the waveform for more precise placement.
4. Tap Replace to begin recording (the waveform turns red as you record).
Tap  to pause; tap Resume to continue.
5. To check your recording, tap .
6. Tap Done, then tap Save Recording to replace the original recording, or tap Save as New Recording to save the changes as a new recording (leaving the original as it was).

Delete a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - In the list of recordings, tap the recording you want to delete, then tap .
 - Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, then tap Delete.

Deleted recordings move to the Recently Deleted folder, where they're kept for 30 days by default. To change how long deleted recordings are kept, go to Settings  > Voice Memos > Clear Deleted, then select an option.

Recover or erase a deleted recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the Recently Deleted folder, then tap the recording you want to recover or erase.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Recover the selected recording:* Tap Recover.
- *Delete the selected recording:* Tap Delete.
- *Recover everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Recover All.
- *Delete everything in the Recently Deleted folder:* Tap Edit above the Recently Deleted list, then tap Delete All.

Keep recordings up to date in Voice Memos on iPad

You can keep your audio recordings up to date automatically on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you've [resigned in to the same Apple Account](#) and Voice Memos is turned on in iCloud settings.

To turn on Voice Memos in iCloud on your devices, do the following:

- *iOS or iPadOS:* Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > See All, then scroll down and turn on Voice Memos.
- *macOS Sequoia:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click your name in the sidebar. If you don't see your name, click "Sign in" to sign in to your Apple Account or create one. Click iCloud, click See All, then scroll down and turn on Voice Memos.

Organize recordings in Voice Memos on iPad

You can mark audio recordings as favorites and organize your recordings into folders.

Note: Apple Watch recordings, recently deleted recordings, and favorites are grouped into Smart Folders, which automatically gather files by type and subject matter.

Mark recordings as favorites

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. In the list of recordings, do any of the following:
 - Tap the recording you want to mark as a favorite, then tap  above the waveform.
 - Tap Edit above the list of recordings, select one or more recordings, tap Move to Folder, then tap Favorites. (If there isn't a Favorites folder, create one by entering Favorites in the field.)

Recordings marked as favorites automatically appear in the Favorites folder.

Organize recordings into folders

You can group related recordings together into folders so you can locate them easily.

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Edit above the list of recordings.
3. Select one or more recordings, tap , tap Move to Folder, then choose a folder.
To create a new folder, tap , type a name for the folder, then tap Save.

To view your folders, tap ; tap a folder to check its contents.

To return to the list of recordings, tap All Recordings above the folders.

Delete or reorder folders

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  to go to the list of folders.
3. Tap Edit above the folders, then do any of the following:
 - *Delete a folder:* Tap  next to the folder, then tap .
 - *Change the order of the folders:* Drag  next to any folder.
4. Tap Done.

Search for or rename a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

You can search for recordings or rename any recording.

Search for a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. Swipe down from the middle of the list of recordings to reveal the search field.
3. Tap the search field, enter part or all of the recording name, then tap Search.

Note: You can also search for a word or phrase in a transcript by entering it in this field.

Rename a recording

A recording is initially saved with the name New Recording or the name of your location, if [Location Services](#) is turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security.

To change the name, tap the recording, tap the name, then type a new one.

Share a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

You can share an audio recording with others (or send it to your Mac or another device) using AirDrop, Messages, Mail, and more.

Share a recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the recording you want to share, then tap .
3. Choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or .

Share more than one recording

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. Tap Edit above the list of recordings, then select the recordings you want to share.
3. Tap , choose a sharing option, select or enter a recipient, then tap Done or .

Duplicate a recording in Voice Memos on iPad

You can duplicate a recording, which is useful when you need another copy of it. You can make changes to the copy, save it, and [give it a new name](#).

1. Go to the Voice Memos app  on your iPad.
2. In the list of recordings, tap a recording, tap  above the waveform, then tap Duplicate.

Tap a recording, tap  above the waveform, then tap Duplicate.

The duplicate appears right below the original version in the list and has “copy” added to its name. To change the name, tap it, then type a new one.

Weather

Check the weather on iPad

Check the weather for your current location. View the upcoming hourly and 10-day forecast, see severe weather information, and more.

Note: Weather uses Location Services to get the forecast for your current location. To make sure Location Services is turned on, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Weather. Turn on Precise Location to increase the accuracy of the forecast in your current location.



Check the local forecast and conditions

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPad.

2. The details for your current location are shown. If you don't see them, tap , then tap My Location.

Swipe up to view weather details such as:

- **Hourly forecast:** Swipe the hourly display left or right.

Tip: Tap the hourly forecast to see the hourly temperature forecast, chance of precipitation, high and low temperatures, and more. Tap  to change the displayed weather condition. Swipe left to see the same information for the days ahead.

- **10-day forecast:** View weather conditions, chance of precipitation, and high and low temperatures for the coming days.
- **Severe weather alerts:** View updates for weather events such as winter storms and flash floods. Tap the alert to read the full government-issued alert.



- **Maps:** View a map that displays the temperature, precipitation, air quality, or wind conditions in the area. Tap the map to view it in full screen or to change the map view between temperature, precipitation, air quality, and wind. See [View weather maps](#).
- **Air quality:** Tap to view health information and details about air pollutants.
Note: The air quality scale appears above the hourly forecast when air quality reaches a particular level for that location. For some locations, the air quality scale always appears above the hourly forecast.
- **News:** Read a news article when there's a story relevant to the weather in that location.
- **Additional weather details:** View additional weather information such as the UV index, wind, visibility, moon phases, and more. Tap a weather detail for more features and information specific to that detail.
Tip: The Averages weather detail shows how today's temperature or precipitation compares to the historical average; tap it for additional information.

Some Weather app features—such as severe weather alerts, air quality, next-hour precipitation, and news—aren't available in all countries and regions. To learn about the data sources for the Weather app, see the Apple Support article [Feature availability and data sources in the Weather app](#).

Customize the weather units

You can change the units used in weather data. This includes Fahrenheit or Celsius for temperature, and miles per hour, kilometers per hour, knots, or Beaufort for wind.

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  to display the sidebar.
3. Tap , tap Units, then do any of the following:
 - **Change temperature units:** Tap Fahrenheit, Celsius, or "Use system setting."
 - **Change wind, precipitation, pressure, or distance units:** Tap  next to the current measurement unit, then choose an option.

Send a report about the weather

You can report the weather in your location if it doesn't match what's shown in the Weather app.

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  to display the sidebar.
3. Tap , then tap Report an Issue.
4. Tap the options that best describe the weather conditions in your location, then tap Submit.

The information you share with Apple isn't associated with your [Apple Account](#).

Check the weather in other locations on iPad

Check the weather for any location around the world and quickly access forecasts for locations you save to your list.



Check the weather in another location

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  to display the sidebar.
3. Tap the search field at the top of the screen, then enter the name of the city, neighborhood, or location.

Tip: To see your Home and Work locations in search results, go to Settings  > Apps > Weather, then turn on Home and Work. Also make sure to [turn on Location Services](#) for Weather.

4. Tap the location in the search results to display the forecast.
5. Tap Cancel to close the forecast, then tap Cancel to clear the search results and return to the list.

Note: Neighborhood search results aren't available in all locations.

Add a location to your list

You can add locations to the list to quickly check the weather in places important to you.

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPad.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Choose a location on the map:* Tap the weather map, [change the location](#), touch and hold where you want to add a location, then tap .
 - *Search for a location:* Tap  to display the sidebar, tap the search field at the top of the list, then enter the name of a city, neighborhood, or location that you want to add to your list. Tap the location in the search results, then tap Add.

To check the weather in locations you added to your list, swipe the iPad screen left or right, or tap , then tap a location.

Delete and rearrange locations in your list

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPad.
2. Tap  to display the sidebar, then do either of the following.
 - *Delete a location:* Swipe left on the location, then tap . Or, tap , then tap Edit List.
 - *Rearrange the order of locations on your list:* Touch and hold the location, then move it up or down. Or, tap , then tap Edit List.

Your list of locations stays up to date across your devices when you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

View weather maps on iPad

You can use the Weather app to view large precipitation, temperature, air quality, and wind maps in your location or other areas.



View a full-screen weather map

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the weather map to enlarge it.

When the map is enlarged, it stays pinned to the top of the screen in portrait view and to the side of the screen in landscape view.

3. Tap  to enlarge the map to full screen. Tap  again to reduce its size.
4. Tap Done to close the map.

Switch to a precipitation, temperature, air quality, or wind map

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPad.
2. View a full-screen map, then tap .
3. In a precipitation or wind forecast map, do any of the following:
 - *Show the timeline:* Tap near the bottom of the map.
 - *Change the duration of the timeline:* Tap , then switch between 12-Hour Forecast and Next-Hour Forecast.
4. Tap Done to close the map.

Change the location of the weather map

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPad.
2. Tap the weather map to enlarge it, then do any of the following:
 - *Move the map:* Touch the screen and drag your finger.
 - *Zoom in and out:* Pinch the screen.
 - *View another location from your list:* While the map is enlarged, you can tap , then select a location to jump to a different location in your list.
 - *Return to your current location:* Tap .
 - *Add a location to your list, view its current conditions, or view it in Maps:* Touch and hold the location.
3. Tap Done to close the map.

Manage weather notifications on iPad

You can receive notifications when precipitation or certain severe weather events are forecasted in your current location. You can also receive notifications for locations you saved in your list.

Turn on weather notifications for your location

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services.
2. Tap Weather, then tap Always.
3. Turn on Precise Location to receive the most accurate notifications for your current location.
4. Go to the Weather app  on your iPad.
5. Tap  to display the sidebar.
6. Tap , then tap Notifications.

If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.
7. Below Current Location, turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).

8. Tap Done.

Turn on weather notifications for locations in your list

1. Go to the Weather app  on your iPad.

2. Tap  to display the sidebar.

3. Tap , then tap Notifications.

If prompted, allow notifications from the Weather app.

4. Below Your Locations, tap a location, then turn on notifications for Severe Weather and Next-Hour Precipitation (green is on).

5. Tap Done.

Note: Weather notifications aren't available in all countries or regions.

Use Weather widgets on iPad

Use Weather widgets to check the forecast and other weather conditions at a glance on your iPad Home Screen. You can choose from a variety of widget sizes and displays. See [Add a widget to your Home Screen](#).

Tip: You can add more than one Weather widget to your Home Screen so you can quickly see weather conditions and forecasts in different locations.

Change the location shown in the Weather widget

You can change the location that a Weather widget displays on your iPad Home Screen.

1. Touch and hold the Weather widget on your Home Screen.

2. Tap Edit "Weather" or Edit Widget.

3. Tap My Location, then search for a city or tap [a location from your list](#) that you want to display.

4. Tap the screen outside the widget to return to your iPad Home Screen.

Weather widgets are also available for the iPad Lock Screen. See [Create a custom Lock Screen](#).

Learn the weather icons on iPad

The icons in the Weather app  indicate different weather conditions, like fog or haze. Here's a list of some of the weather icons and what they mean.

Icon	Description
	Sunrise
	Sunset
	Clear / Mostly clear
	Partly cloudy
	Haze

Icon	Description
	Fog
	Windy / Breezy
	Cloudy
	Thunderstorm
	Rain
	Heavy rain
	Drizzle / Freezing drizzle
	Snow
	Heavy snow / Blizzard

Icon	Description
	Freezing rain / Sleet / Wintry mix
	Clear / Mostly clear (night)
	Partly cloudy (night)
	Drizzle (night)

Siri

Use Siri on iPad

Get everyday tasks done with just your voice. Use Siri to translate a phrase, set an alarm, find a location, report on the weather, get summarized knowledge from the web, and more.



Set up Siri

If you didn't set up Siri when you first set up your iPad, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Siri, then tap Talk to Siri.
2. Choose "Hey Siri" or "Siri" (if you have that option).

Note: The option to say just "Siri" is available on [supported iPad models](#) in some languages and regions.

To change additional Siri settings, see [Change Siri settings](#).

Activate Siri with your voice

When you activate Siri with your voice, Siri responds out loud.

Say "Siri" or "Hey Siri" then ask a question or make a request.

For example, say something like "Hey Siri, set an alarm for 8 a.m." or "Siri, what's the weather for today?"

Tip: To prevent iPad from responding to "Siri" or "Hey Siri," place your iPad face down, or go to Settings  > Siri, tap "Listen for," then choose Off.

You can also activate Siri with your voice while you're wearing supported AirPods. See [Set up Siri](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

Activate Siri with a button

When you activate Siri with a button and iPad is muted, Siri responds silently. To change this behavior, see [Change how Siri responds](#).

1. Do one of the following:
 - *On an iPad with a Home button:* Press and hold the Home button.
 - *On other iPad models:* Press and hold the top button.
 - *With EarPods with Remote and Mic:* (Sold separately) Press and hold the center or call button.
2. Ask a question or make a request.

For example, say something like "What's 18 percent of 225?" or "Set the timer for 3 minutes."

You can also activate Siri with a touch on supported AirPods. See [Set Up Siri](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

Make back-to-back requests

After you activate Siri, you can make back-to-back requests without reactivating it. (Available on [supported iPad models](#) in some countries or regions.)

1. Activate Siri, then make a request.
2. Immediately after you make the request, make another one.

To override a request, interrupt Siri while it is speaking.

For example, say "Hey Siri, what's the weather like in San Francisco? What about Cupertino?"

Make a correction if Siri misunderstands you

- *While making back-to-back requests:* Repeat your request in a different way.
- *If you aren't making back-to-back requests:* Tap , then repeat your request in a different way.

- *Spell out part of your request:* Tap , then repeat your request by spelling out any words that Siri didn't understand. For example, say "Call," then spell the person's name.
- *Change a message before sending it:* Say "Change it."
- *Edit your request with text:* If you see your request onscreen, you can edit it. Tap the request, then use the onscreen keyboard.

Tip: To correct your request without reactivating Siri, make the corrected request immediately after the original one. (Available on supported iPad models in some countries and regions.)

Type instead of speaking to Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
2. To type a request, activate Siri, then use the keyboard and text field to ask a question or make a request.

More about Siri

Siri is designed to protect your information and to let you choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website](#) and the [Improve Siri and Dictation & Privacy website](#).

For some requests, iPad must be [connected to the internet](#). Cellular charges may apply.

If Siri doesn't work as expected on your iPad, see [Apple Support article: If Siri isn't working on your iPhone](#).

Find out what Siri can do on iPad

Use Siri on iPad to get information and perform tasks. Siri and its response appear on top of what you're currently doing, allowing you to refer to information onscreen.

Siri is interactive. When Siri displays a web link, you can tap it to see more information in your default web browser. When the onscreen response from Siri includes buttons or controls, you can tap them to take further action. And you can tap Siri again to ask another question or do an additional task for you.

Below are some examples of what you can use Siri to do. Additional examples appear throughout this guide. You can also discover Siri capabilities on your iPad and in apps by asking "What can I do here?"

Use Siri to answer questions

Use Siri to quickly check facts, do calculations, or translate a phrase into another language. Get Siri's attention, then say something like:

- "What causes a rainbow?"
- "What does a cat sound like?"
- "What's the derivative of cosine x?"
- "Who made the first rocket that went to space?"
- "How do you say Thank You in Mandarin?"



Use Siri with apps

You can use Siri to control apps with your voice. With Siri activated, say something like:

- "Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9" to create an event in Calendar.
- "Add artichokes to my groceries list" to add an item to Reminders.
- "Send a message to PoChun saying love you heart emoji" to send a text using Messages.
- "What's my update?" to get an update about the weather in your area, the news, your reminders and calendar events, and more.

For more examples, see any of the following:

- [Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri](#)

- [Use Siri to play music](#)
- [Control your home using Siri](#)
- [Get travel directions](#)
- [Add Siri Shortcuts](#)

Use Siri to share information with contacts

You can share onscreen items like photos, webpages, content from Apple Music or Apple Podcasts, Maps locations, and more with [people in your contacts](#).

For example, when looking at a photo in your Photo library, activate Siri and say something like “Send this to mom” to create a new message with the photo.



Personalize your experience with Siri

The more you use Siri, the better it knows what you need. You can also tell Siri about yourself and change how and when Siri responds. See any of the following:

- [Siri Suggestions](#)
- [Tell Siri about yourself](#)
- [Change Siri settings](#)

You can also [use accessibility features with Siri](#).

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Ask Siri, Dictation & Privacy website](#).

Tell Siri about yourself on iPad

You can provide information to Siri—including things like your home and work addresses, and your relationships—for a more personalized experience so you can say things like “Give me driving directions home” and “FaceTime mom.”

Tell Siri who you are

1. Open Contacts , then [fill out your contact information](#).
2. Go to Settings  > Siri > My Information, then tap your name.

Tell Siri how to say your name

1. Open Contacts , then tap your contact card.
2. Tap Edit, scroll down and tap “add field,” select a pronunciation name field, then type how to say your name.

You can also add a pronunciation for any other contact card in Contacts. See [Edit contacts](#).

Tell Siri about a relationship

Say something like “Hey Siri, Eliza Block is my wife” or “Hey Siri, Ashley Kamin is my mom.”

Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices

On each device, go to Settings , then [sign in to the same Apple Account](#).

If you use iCloud, your Siri settings stay up to date across your Apple devices using end-to-end encryption.

If you don’t want Siri personalization to stay up to date across iPad and your other devices, you can turn off Siri in iCloud settings.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud.
2. Tap See All, then turn off Siri.

Note: If you have Location Services turned on, the location of your device at the time you make a request is also sent to Apple to help Siri improve the accuracy of its response to your requests. To deliver relevant responses, Apple may use the IP address of your internet connection to approximate your location by matching it to a geographic region. See [Control the location information you share](#).

Announce calls, messages, and more with Siri on iPad

Siri can announce calls and notifications from apps like Messages  on [supported headphones](#). You can answer or reply using your voice without needing to say “Hey Siri.”

Announce Calls and Announce Notifications also work with supported third-party apps.

Have Siri announce calls

With Announce Calls, Siri identifies incoming FaceTime calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

1. Go to Settings  > Siri > Announce Calls, then choose an option.
2. When a call comes in, Siri identifies the caller, and asks if you want to answer the call. Say “yes” to accept the call or “no” to decline it.

Have Siri announce notifications

Siri can automatically announce incoming notifications from apps like Messages and Reminders. Siri automatically enables app notifications for apps that use time-sensitive notifications, but you can change the settings at any time. To learn more about time-sensitive notifications, see [Set up a Focus](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Siri > Announce Notifications, then turn on Announce Notifications.
2. Tap an app you want Siri to announce notifications from, then turn on Announce Notifications.

For some apps, you can also choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

For apps where you can send a reply, like Messages, Siri repeats what you said, then asks for confirmation before sending your reply. To send replies without waiting for confirmation, turn on Reply Without Confirmation.

Respond to Siri announcements hands-free

You can nod or shake your head to respond to Siri announcements while you’re wearing supported AirPods. So if you’re on the bus to work, you can still use Siri for managing calls, messages, and notifications without having to speak out loud. See [Use controls and gestures with your AirPods](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

Add Siri Shortcuts on iPad

Apps can offer shortcuts for things you do frequently. You can use Siri to initiate these shortcuts with just your voice.

Some apps have Siri Shortcuts set up automatically. You can also create your own.

Add a suggested shortcut

Tap Add to Siri when you see a suggestion for a shortcut, then follow the onscreen instructions to record a phrase of your choice that performs the shortcut.

You can also use the Shortcuts app to create a new shortcut that uses Siri, or to manage, re-record, and delete existing Siri Shortcuts. See the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).

Use a shortcut

Activate Siri, then speak your phrase for the shortcut. See [Use Siri](#).

Based on your routines and how you use your apps, Siri also suggests shortcuts on the Home Screen, the Lock Screen, and when you start a search. To turn off shortcut suggestions for an app, see [Change Siri settings](#).

Siri Suggestions on iPad

Siri makes suggestions for what you might want to do next, such as confirm an appointment or send an email, based on your routines and how you use your apps.

For example, Siri might help when you do any of the following:

- *Glance at the Lock Screen or start a search:* As Siri learns your routines, you get suggestions for just what you need, at just the right time.
- *Create email and events:* When you start adding people to an email or calendar event, Siri suggests the people you included in previous emails or events.
- *Type:* As you enter text, Siri can suggest names of movies, places—anything you viewed on iPad recently. If you tell a friend you’re on your way, Siri can even suggest your estimated arrival time.
- *Confirm an appointment or book a flight on a travel website:* (iPad Air 2 and later) Siri asks if you want to add it to your calendar.

Turn Siri Suggestions on or off for an app

Siri Suggestions are on by default for your apps. You can turn them off or change the settings at any time.

1. Go to Settings  > Siri > Apps.
2. Tap an app, then turn settings on or off.

Change where Siri Suggestions appear

1. Go to Settings  > Siri.
2. Turn on or off any of the following:
 - Allow Notifications
 - Show in App Library
 - Show When Sharing
 - Show Listening Suggestions

Your personal information—which is encrypted and remains private—stays up to date across all your devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#). As Siri learns about you on one device, your experience with Siri is improved on your other devices. If you don't want Siri personalization to update across your devices, you can disable Siri in iCloud settings. See [Keep what Siri knows about you up to date on your Apple devices](#).

Siri is designed to protect your information, and you can choose what you share. To learn more, see the [Siri Suggestions, Search & Privacy website](#).

Change Siri settings on iPad

You can change the voice Siri uses, prevent access to Siri when your device is locked, retrain Siri with your voice, and more.

For information about how to set up and use Siri, see [Use Siri](#). To change settings for Siri Suggestions, see [Siri Suggestions](#).

Change when Siri responds

You can customize when Siri responds to your voice. You can also choose which language Siri responds to.

1. Go to Settings  > Siri.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Prevent Siri from responding to the voice request "Hey Siri":* Tap Talk to Siri, then tap Off.
 - *Prevent access to Siri when iPad is locked:* Turn off Allow Siri When Locked.

You can also make requests by typing. See [Type instead of speaking to Siri](#).

Change the voice for Siri

You can change the Siri voice (not available for all languages).

1. Go to Settings  > Siri.
2. Tap Voice, then choose a different variety or voice.

Change how Siri responds

Siri can respond out loud or silently (with text onscreen). You can also see your request onscreen.

1. Go to Settings  > Siri.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Change when Siri provides voice responses:* Tap Siri Responses, then choose an option below Spoken Responses.
 - *Always see the response from Siri onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Siri Captions.
 - *See your request onscreen:* Tap Siri Responses, then turn on Always Show Request.
 - *Change the language Siri responds to:* Tap Language, then select a new language.

Change Siri settings for FaceTime and Messages

You can perform tasks for FaceTime and Messages with just your voice. With Siri, you can hang up calls and skip the confirmation step when sending messages. You can enable these features in Settings.

1. Go to Settings  > Siri.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Hang up FaceTime calls:* Tap Call Hang Up, then turn on Call Hang Up. See [Make FaceTime calls](#).
 - *Send messages without confirmation:* Tap Messaging with Siri, then turn on Automatically Send Messages. See [Send and reply to messages](#).

On supported headphones, Siri can also [announce calls, messages, and more](#).

Change which apps appear in search

You can change which apps appear when you search with Siri.

1. Go to Settings  > Search, then select an app.
2. Turn settings on or off.

Retrain Siri with your voice

1. Go to Settings  > Siri.

2. Tap Talk to Siri, then tap Off.
3. Turn on "Siri" or "Hey Siri" again, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To change Siri accessibility settings, see [Change Siri accessibility settings](#).

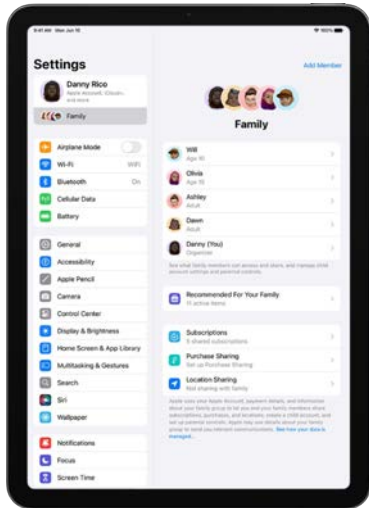
Family Sharing

Set up Family Sharing on iPad

Family Sharing lets you and up to five other family members share access to Apple services, purchases, an iCloud storage plan, and more. You can even help locate each other's missing devices.

One adult family member—the *organizer*—invites other family members to participate. When family members join, Family Sharing is set up on everyone's devices automatically. The group then chooses which services and features they want to use and share.

Family Sharing is available on eligible devices. See the Apple Support article [System requirements for iCloud](#).



Create a Family Sharing group

You only need to set up Family Sharing on one device. Then it's available on all your devices that are signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > Family, then follow the onscreen instructions to set up your Family Sharing group.
2. Invite one or more family members. When you add an adult family member, you can designate them as a parent or guardian [Learn about types of Family Sharing members](#).

You can also add family members later. See [Add Family Sharing members](#).

3. Tap a feature you want to set up for your Family Sharing group, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To set up parental controls or Apple Cash for a child, tap their name, tap the feature, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can see what you're sharing with your family and adjust sharing settings at any time.

To learn how to set up or join a Family Sharing group on all your devices, see the Apple Support article [Set up Family Sharing](#).

What you can do with Family Sharing

With a Family Sharing group, you can set up or share the following:

- **Passwords and passkeys:** You can share passwords and passkeys with people in your family to access important accounts. See [Share passwords](#).
- **An iCloud Drive folder:** Organize and share family documents, photos, and more. See [Share files and folders in iCloud Drive](#).
- **Apple and App Store subscriptions:** You can share Apple subscriptions, including iCloud+, and eligible App Store subscriptions. See [Share subscriptions](#).
- **Purchases:** You can share items purchased in the App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV. All purchases are billed to the family organizer. See [Share purchases](#).
- **Locations:** When you share your location with your Family Sharing group, all family members, including any new members added later, can use the Find My app to see your location and help locate a missing device. See [Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices](#).
- **Apple Card and Apple Cash:** You can share Apple Card with trusted members of your Family Sharing group or set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See [Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing \(U.S. only\)](#).
- **Parental controls:** You can manage your children's purchases, how they use their Apple devices, and more. See [Set up parental controls with Family Sharing](#).
- **A device for your child:** You can set up a new iOS or iPadOS device for a child and customize parental controls. See [Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing](#).

See recommendations for Family Sharing features

To see suggestions to help you get the most out of Family Sharing, go to Settings > Family, then tap Recommended For Your Family.

Add a member to a Family Sharing group on iPad

With [Family Sharing](#), each family member joins the family group with their own [Apple Account](#). That way you can share access to subscriptions and other features without sharing personal information like photos or documents.

The family organizer can easily invite family members who have an Apple Account or create an Apple Account for a child who doesn't have one yet.

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members.](#)

Add a family member with an Apple Account

The organizer of the Family Sharing group can add a family member who has their own Apple Account.

1. Go to Settings > Family, then tap Add Member in the upper-right corner.
2. Tap Invite Others, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can send the invitation using AirDrop, Messages, or Mail. If you're near the family member, you can also tap Invite in Person and ask the family member to enter their [Apple Account](#) email address (or phone number) and password on your device.

People you invite see your invitation at the top of Settings in the Family row. If they haven't accepted your invitation, you can also follow up with reminders.

Create an Apple Account for a child

Children under 13 can't create an Apple Account on their own. (This age varies by country or region.) But if you're the family organizer or a guardian, you can create an Apple Account for a child and add them to the Family Sharing group.

1. Go to Settings > Family.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *If you're the organizer:* Tap Add Member, then tap Create Child Account.
Note: If your child already has an Apple Account, tap Invite Others. They can enter their Apple Account and password on your device to accept the invitation.
 - *If you're a parent or guardian:* Tap Add Member.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish creating the child account. You can set content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime; share your child's location with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and use Ask to Buy. You can change these settings at any time. For more information, see any of the following:
 - [Set up Screen Time for a family member](#)
 - [Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices](#)
 - [Apple Support article: Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy](#)

For more information about child accounts and the age at which a child can create their own Apple Account, see the Apple Support article [Create an Apple Account for your child](#).

If you want to join an existing Family Sharing group, [ask the organizer to add you](#). You can only be a member of one Family Sharing group at a time. If you want to join a different group, leave your current group first. See [Leave a Family Sharing group](#).

Leave or remove a member from a Family Sharing group on iPad

<__ class="__ GenerativeKeywords" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

In a [Family Sharing group](#), the organizer can remove members or disband the group, and family members (other than teens with parental controls or children) can remove themselves.

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members.](#)

Remove a member from a family group

The organizer of a Family Sharing group can remove other members. When a family member is removed, they immediately lose access to shared subscriptions and content purchased by other members.

1. Go to Settings > Family.
2. Tap *[member's name]*, then tap Remove *[member's name]* from Family.

You can't remove a child from your Family Sharing group. However, you can move them to another group or delete their Apple Account. See the Apple Support article [Move a child to another group using Family Sharing](#).

If you turned on Screen Time for a teen, you need to turn off Screen Time settings before you can remove them from the group. See [Set up Screen Time for a family member](#).

Leave a Family Sharing group

When you leave a Family Sharing group, you stop sharing your purchases and subscriptions with family members and immediately lose access to any content they've shared.

Note: The organizer can't leave the Family Sharing group. If you want to change the organizer, you must disband the group, and have another adult create a new one.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap *[your name]*, then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

Disband a Family Sharing group

When the family organizer turns off Family Sharing, all family members are removed from the group at the same time. When a Family Sharing group is disbanded, all members immediately lose access to the shared content and subscriptions.

Note: If a child is in the Family Sharing group, the organizer must move them to another group or delete their Apple Account before disbanding the group. See the Apple Support article [Move a child to another group using Family Sharing](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap *[your name]*, then tap Stop Using Family Sharing.

Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPad

When you're in a [Family Sharing group](#), you can share Apple subscriptions and eligible App Store subscriptions with other family members.

If your Family Sharing group has [purchase sharing](#) turned on, any subscriptions shared with the group are billed directly to the organizer's default payment method.

Note: Not all services are available in all countries or regions, and some selections are subject to content restrictions set in Screen Time.

Share Apple subscriptions

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap Subscriptions, then do one of the following:
 - Tap a subscription you want to share, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - Tap Manage Subscriptions, then tap a subscription.

See any of the following to learn more.

- **Apple Arcade:** See [Subscribe to Apple Arcade](#). All members of your family can download and play Apple Arcade games from the App Store. Each player gets a personalized account—your progress is carried over between devices.
- **Apple Fitness+:** See [Apple Fitness+ at a glance](#) in the Apple Fitness+ User Guide. All members of your family can access workouts in the Fitness app on their iPhone or iPad.
- **Apple Music:** See [Subscribe to Apple Music](#). With a family subscription, each family member gets their own music library and personal recommendations.
- **Apple News+:** See [Subscribe to Apple News+](#). All members of your family can read Apple News+ publications for no additional charge.
- **Apple TV+ and Apple TV channels:** See [Subscribe to Apple TV+, MLS Season Pass, or an Apple TV channel](#) and [Add your TV provider to the Apple TV app](#). Each family member can watch on their iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple TV, and supported smart TVs and streaming devices, using their own Apple Account and password.
- **iCloud+:** See [Subscribe to iCloud+](#). When you share iCloud+, all family members have access to iCloud+ features and storage. For storage, you only share the space—your photos and documents stay private and everyone keeps using their own accounts.

For information about combining your Apple subscriptions, see the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

Share App Store subscriptions

You can choose which eligible App Store subscriptions you share with family members. For information about the App Store, see [Get apps in the App Store](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Family > Subscriptions > Manage Subscriptions.
2. Do either of the following:
 - **Share all new subscriptions:** Turn on Share with Family. When you purchase a new subscription that's eligible for sharing, it's shared with your Family Sharing members by default.
 - **Change the settings of a specific subscription:** Tap a subscription, then turn Share with Family on or off.If you don't see Share with Family, the subscription isn't eligible for sharing.

Share App Store, Apple TV, and Apple Books purchases with Family Sharing on iPad

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer can set up purchase sharing to share App Store, Apple Books, and Apple TV purchases.

The organizer adds a payment method that's shared with the family; when a family member makes a purchase, the organizer is billed. The purchased item is added to the initiating family member's account and eligible purchases are shared with the rest of the family.

The family organizer can also require that children in the family group request approval for purchases or free downloads. See [Set up parental controls](#).

Turn on purchase sharing

When the family organizer turns on purchase sharing, they pay for family members' purchases and must have a valid payment method on file.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap Purchase Sharing, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Access shared content

When purchase sharing is turned on, you can download apps and play content that your family members buy. See any of the following Apple Support articles:

- [How to download apps and content that your family members purchased](#)
- [What types of content can I share with my family?](#)
- [If you don't see your family's shared content](#)

Turn off purchase sharing for yourself

You can turn off purchase sharing for yourself. Family Sharing members won't see your purchases, but you can still see items other members have shared with you.

Note: Even though your items aren't shared, any purchases you make still use the shared family payment method.

1. Go to Settings  > Family > Purchase Sharing.
2. Tap *[your name]*, then turn off Share Purchases.

If the organizer wants to turn off purchase sharing entirely, they can tap Stop Purchase Sharing.

If you don't want to share a specific item with your family members, see the Apple Support article [Hide and unhide music, movies, TV shows, audiobooks, and books](#).

You can also [share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members](#).

Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class=" GenerativeKeywords __">

ipde-needs-review

With [Family Sharing](#), you can share your location with members of your Family Sharing group and help them find lost devices. When the family organizer sets up location sharing in Family Sharing settings, the organizer's location is automatically shared with everyone in the family, including any new members added later. Then, family members can choose whether or not to share their location.

Share your location with family members

When you share locations with your family, they can [see your location in Find My](#). You can also [get notified when family members change their locations](#)—for example, if a child leaves school during school hours.

1. Go to Settings  > Family > Location Sharing.
2. Select the family member you want to share your location with.

You can repeat this step for each family member you want to share your location with. Each family member receives a message that you're sharing your location and can choose to share their location with you.

You can stop sharing your location with any family member at any time.

Note: Children and teens with [Screen Time turned on](#) may not be able to change their own location sharing settings.

To share your location, you must have Location Services turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security. See [Control the location information you share](#).

Locate a family member's device

After you share your location with members of your Family Sharing group, they can help locate a missing device [added to the Find My app](#).

See [Locate a device in Find My](#).

Your devices are at the top of the list, and your family members' devices are below yours.

Ask a family member to share an AirTag with you

If you receive a notification in the Find My app that says AirTag Detected Near You or Unknown AirTag, you can ask the family member who owns it to share the AirTag with you.

1. In the notification, tap Ask Owner to Share AirTag.
2. Tap Ask Owner at the bottom of the screen.

You can also use [Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) to locate a family member's missing device. See [Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing on iPad (U.S. only)

You can use Apple Cash and Apple Card with your [Family Sharing](#) group. The organizer of the Family Sharing group can set up Apple Cash for a child, and share Apple Card with trusted members of their Family Sharing group.

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members](#).

Set up Apple Cash Family for a child

The family organizer can set up Apple Cash for a child.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Apple Cash.
3. Tap Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To see the card balance, monitor transactions, and narrow the list of people that the child can send money to, go to Settings > Wallet & Apple Pay. See [Manage your Apple Cash](#).

For more information about system requirements and how to manage Apple Cash accounts, see the Apple Support articles [Set up and use Apple Cash Family](#) and [View and limit your child or teen's Apple Cash activity](#).

Set up Apple Card Family

You can share your Apple Card with family members, manage payments, and control account settings and limits for children who are 13 years or older. You can also review and manage everyone's details.

1. Go to Settings > Family > Share My Apple Card.
The option only appears if you have Apple Card.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about what owners, co-owners, and participants can do with Apple Card, see the Apple Support article [Set up Apple Card Family and add a co-owner and participants](#).

Set up parental controls with Family Sharing on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords">

ipde-needs-review

With [Family Sharing](#), the organizer, or another adult designated as a parent/guardian, can set up parental controls for children in the Family Sharing group. You can use Screen Time to manage how your children use their Apple devices. You can also turn on Ask to Buy, so children must receive approval for purchases or free downloads.

[Learn about types of Family Sharing members](#).

Customize parental controls during setup

When you [add a child](#) to your Family Sharing group or [set up a device for a child](#), you can customize parental controls from the start. You can change those settings at any time.

Follow the onscreen instructions during setup to add any of the following:

- Age-related restrictions for content in apps, books, TV shows, and movies
- Downtime and limits for specific apps
- Restrictions for who your child can communicate with
- Approvals for purchases or free downloads

See the Apple Support article [Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

Receive warnings about sensitive content

Screen Time can check whether you or other family members have received or sent any sexually explicit photos or videos. See [Check for sensitive photos in Messages and AirDrop on a family member's device](#).

You can also block sensitive content and set restrictions on purchases. See [Block adult content on a family member's device](#).

Set up Screen Time for a child

Screen Time allows you to manage settings for downtime, app use, contacts, content ratings, and more. To use Screen Time, your child must be using an eligible device. See the Screen Time section in the Apple Support article [System Requirements for iCloud](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Family > [child's name] > Screen Time.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Screen Time.
3. Tap Screen Time, then do any of the following:
 - *Change restrictions for Web content:* Tap Web Content, then choose an option for access to web content.
 - *Change access to media viewing:* Tap a category of media (for example, Movies, TV Shows, Music Videos), then choose a rating or turn a feature on or off.
4. Continue following the onscreen instructions to set up Screen Time options.

For information about Screen Time settings, see [Set up Screen Time](#).

To learn more about the different content and privacy restrictions, see the Apple Support article [Use parental controls on your child's iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings  > Screen Time or in Messages .

Turn on Ask to Buy

When you set up Ask to Buy, a child's purchases must be approved by the family organizer or a parent or guardian in the family group.

1. Go to Settings  > Family.
2. Tap the child for whom you want to set up Ask to Buy.
3. Tap Ask To Buy, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See the Apple Support article [Approve what kids buy with Ask to Buy](#).

Note: Age restrictions for Ask to Buy vary by region. In the United States, the family organizer can turn on Ask to Buy for any family member under age 18; for children under age 13, it's on by default.

You can also set up an Apple Cash Family account for a child. See [Use Apple Cash and Apple Card with Family Sharing \(U.S. only\)](#).

Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing on iPad

With Family Sharing, the organizer, a parent, or a guardian can use Quick Start on their iPad to set up a new iPhone or iPad for a child and customize parental controls. You can also set up a device for a child without using Quick Start.

If you didn't sign in to a child's account when you set up their device, you can do so in Settings with their Apple Account and password, or by using proximity sign-in with a nearby iPhone or iPad.

Note: If the child already has an Apple Account, make sure they've been added to your [Family Sharing group](#). If the child doesn't have an Apple Account and they're under 13 ([this age varies by region](#)), you can create one for them while adding them to the group.

Use Quick Start to set up an iPad or iPhone for a child

Note: Requires iPadOS 16 or later. Bluetooth must be turned on.

1. Go to Settings , then sign in to your Apple Account on your iPad.
2. On the new iPad or iPhone you want to set up for your child, press and hold the side button or top button until the Apple logo appears.
3. Bring your iPad next to the new device.
4. When you see Set Up New [device] on your iPad, tap Continue, follow the onscreen instructions, then do one of the following:
 - If you have a child in your family group, tap your child's name.
 - If you need to create a new Apple Account for a child [who is under 13](#), tap Create New Child Account, then create an Apple Account for your child.
5. Follow the onscreen instructions to finish setting up your child's device.

Set up an iPad or iPhone for a child without using Quick Start

1. Turn on the new device.
2. When the Quick Start screen appears, tap Set Up Without Another Device, follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Set Up for a Child in My Family.
3. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

Set up an iPad or iPhone for a child in Settings

If you didn't sign in to a child's account during setup, do the following:

1. Go to Settings .
2. Tap Sign in to your iPad.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *Sign in with a nearby iPad or iPhone:* Tap Use Another Apple Device, then follow the onscreen instructions. If you already have a child in your family group, tap their name, then tap Get Started. If you need to create a new Apple Account for a child, tap Create New Child Account.
 - *Sign in with an email address or phone number and password:* Tap Sign in Manually, then tap Sign in a child in my Family.
4. Continue to follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup.

You can set [content restrictions](#), [communication limits](#), and [downtime](#); set up [Screen Distance](#); [share locations](#) with all members of the Family Sharing group, including any new members added later; and turn on [Ask to Buy](#). You can change these settings at any time.

Note: Screen Distance is available on [supported models](#).

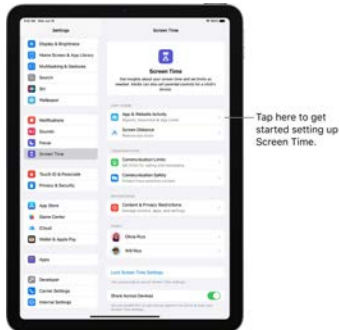
Screen Time

Get started with Screen Time on iPad

You can get information about how you and your family members spend time on your devices—including which apps and websites you use and how often you pick up your device. Screen Time also lets you [schedule time away from the screen](#) and [set limits for app use](#).

Turn on Screen Time

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap App & Website Activity, then tap Turn On App & Website Activity.



Use Screen Time on all your devices

You can share your Screen Time settings and reports across all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down, then turn on Share Across Devices.

View your Screen Time summary

Any time after you turn on App & Website Activity, you can view a report of your device use, including how much time you spend using certain kinds of apps, how often you pick up your iPad and other devices, which apps send you the most notifications, and more.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap See All App & Website Activity, then tap Devices to select which device you want to see usage for.
3. Tap Week to see a summary of your weekly use, or tap Day to see a summary of your daily use.



Use the Screen Time widget to check your device use at a glance

You can quickly check your device use by [adding a Screen Time widget](#) to your Home Screen. The widget displays information from your Screen Time summary—the larger the widget you add, the more information it displays.

If you [set up Screen Time for family members](#) through Family Sharing, you can tap the widget to see a list of the people in your family group. Tap the name of a family member whose report you want to view.

You can also view your summary by tapping a Screen Time Weekly Report notification when one appears on your screen. (If the notification disappears, you can [find it in Notification Center](#).)

Help protect your vision health with Screen Distance on iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="GenerativeKeywords __ ">

ipde-do-not-answer

Viewing a device (or a book) too closely for an extended period of time can increase the risk of myopia for younger users and eyestrain for users of all ages. The Screen Distance feature in Screen Time uses the TrueDepth camera ([supported models](#)) to detect when you hold iPad closer than 12 inches for an extended period, and encourages you to move it farther away.

Screen Distance can remind younger users to engage in healthy viewing habits that can lower their risk of myopia. It gives adult users the opportunity to reduce digital eyestrain.

Note: Screen Distance is turned on by default for children under 13 in a Family Sharing group.

Turn Screen Distance on or off

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap Screen Distance, then turn on Screen Distance.

With Screen Distance on, when you hold the screen too close to your face for an extended period, Screen Distance covers the screen with an alert, preventing you from continuing. When you move iPad more than 12 inches away, you can tap Continue to resume using it.



Set up Screen Time on iPad

You can schedule time away from the screen, set time limits for app use, and more.

Schedule time away from the screen

Block apps and notifications for periods when you want time away from your devices. For example, you might want to schedule downtime during meals or at bedtime.

During downtime, only calls, messages, and apps you choose to allow are available. You can receive calls from contacts you've selected to [allow communication with during downtime](#), and you can use apps you've chosen to [allow at all times](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap App & Website Activity, then turn on App & Website Activity if you haven't already.
3. Tap Downtime, then do one of the following:
 - Tap Turn On Downtime Until Tomorrow.
 - Tap Scheduled to schedule downtime in advance.

When you schedule downtime, a 5-minute reminder is sent before downtime begins. You can ignore the reminder, or turn on downtime until the beginning of the scheduled downtime.

4. Select Every Day or Customize Days, then set the start and end times.

You can turn off the Downtime schedule at any time by turning off Scheduled.

Set limits for app use

Set a time limit for a category of apps (for example, Games or Social Networking) and for individual apps.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap App Limits, then tap Add Limit.
3. Select one or more app categories.

To set limits for individual apps, tap the category name to see all the apps in that category, then select the apps you want to limit. If you select multiple categories or apps, the time limit you set applies to all of them.

4. Tap Next, then set the amount of time allowed.

To set an amount of time for each day, tap Customize Days, then set limits for specific days.

5. When you finish setting limits, tap Add.

Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times

Specify apps that can be used and contacts you can communicate with at all times (for example, in the event of an emergency), even during downtime.

1. Go to Settings  > Screen Time > Always Allowed.
2. Below Allowed Apps, tap  or  next to an app to add or remove it from the Allowed Apps list.

3. To specify contacts you want to allow communication with, tap **Contacts**.

The option you selected in **Communication Limits** appears here. You can change this setting to **Specific Contacts**, then choose one of the following:

- *Choose From My Contacts*: To select specific people to allow communication with.
- *Add New Contact*: To add a new contact and allow communication with that person.

4. Tap  at the top left.

Turn built-in apps and features on or off

You can restrict the use of built-in apps or features. If you turn off an app, it isn't deleted; it's temporarily hidden from your Home Screen until you turn it back on.

1. Go to **Settings**  > **Screen Time**.
2. Tap **Content & Privacy Restrictions**, then turn on **Content & Privacy Restrictions**.
3. Tap **Allowed Apps & Features**, then turn off the apps or features you want to restrict.

Set communication and safety limits and block nude content on iPad

<__ class=" GenerativeKeywords __" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

Set safety limits and privacy protections and block nude images.

Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts

You can either allow or block communication—including incoming and outgoing phone calls, FaceTime calls, and messages—from certain contacts in iCloud, either at all times or during certain periods.

1. If you haven't already turned on **Contacts** in iCloud, go to **Settings**  > *[your name]* > **iCloud**, tap **See All**, then turn on **Contacts**.
2. Go to **Settings**  > **Screen Time**.
3. Tap **Communication Limits**, tap **During Screen Time**, then select one of the following for communication at all times (other than during downtime):
 - *Contacts Only*: To allow communication with only your contacts.
 - *Contacts & Groups with at Least One Contact*: To only allow one-on-one conversations with people in your contacts and group conversations that include at least one person in your contacts.
 - *Everyone*: To allow conversations with anyone, including unknown numbers.

4. Tap **Back** at the top left, then tap **During Downtime**.

The option you selected in step 3 (for **During Screen Time**) is already set here. You can change this setting to **Specific Contacts**, then choose one of the following:

- *Choose From My Contacts*: To allow communication with your existing contacts during downtime.
- *Add New Contact*: To add a contact and allow communication with them during Downtime.

If someone who's currently blocked by your **Communication Limit** settings tries to call you or send you a message, their communication won't go through.

If you try to call or send a message to someone who's currently blocked by your **Communication Limit** settings, their name or number appears in red in your list of recent calls or messages, and your communication won't go through. You can communicate with them when the communication limit is changed. If the limit applies only to downtime, you receive a **Time Limit** message. You can resume communication with the contact when downtime is over.

To resume communication with contacts who are blocked by your **Communication Limit** settings, change the settings by following the steps above.

Check for sensitive images

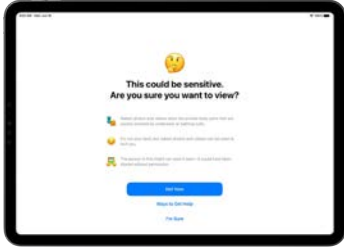
You can have your iPad (or your family member's iPad) detect nudity in images before they're received in Messages, AirDrop, [Contact Posters](#), FaceTime messages, the Photos app, and third-party apps that use Apple's Communication Safety framework. If nudity is detected in an image, the image is blurred and resources are provided to help your child handle the situation (not available in all countries or regions). This feature doesn't give Apple access to the photos. See the Apple Support article [About communication safety in Messages](#).

1. Go to **Settings**  > **Screen Time**.

2. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Communication Safety.

When Communication Safety is turned on, iPad detects nude images before they're viewed, and displays a warning.

The parent's Screen Time [passcode](#) must be entered before any image determined by iPad to contain nudity can be viewed.



Note: When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on Sensitive Content Warning in Settings > Privacy & Security. You can also turn on Sensitive Content Warning separately in Settings > Privacy & Security. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#).

Block adult content

Set Content & Privacy Restrictions to block inappropriate content and set restrictions for iTunes Store and App Store purchases.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Set restrictions for store purchases and redownloads:* Tap iTunes Store & App Store purchases.
 - *Turn an app or feature on or off:* Tap Allowed Apps & Features.
 - *Set access and content ratings for store, web, Siri, and Game Center content:* Tap Store, Web, Siri & Game Center Content.

Note: To restrict [SharePlay in FaceTime calls](#) on your device, go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions, turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions, tap Allowed Apps & Features, then turn off SharePlay. To allow SharePlay, turn it on.

Block adult websites

You can block specific websites by URL.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Turn on Store, Web, Siri & Game Center Content, then tap Web Content.
4. Select Limit Adult Websites, tap Add Website below Never Allow, and enter the URLs of the websites you want to block

Lock your Screen Time settings

You can secure your Screen Time settings by entering a Screen Time passcode. That way, no one can change the settings without first entering the Screen Time passcode.

1. Go to Settings > Screen Time.
 2. Tap Lock Screen Time Settings (scroll down, if necessary).
 3. Enter a four-digit passcode, reenter it, then tap OK.
- If you forget your Screen Time passcode, see [If you forgot your Screen Time passcode](#).

Set up Screen Time for a family member on iPad

<__ class="__ GenerativeKeywords" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-do-not-answer

You can set up Screen Time for a family member on their device following the steps in [Set up Screen Time](#), or if they're in a Family Sharing group for which you're the organizer, you can [set up Screen Time for them through Family Sharing on your device](#)

As the organizer of a Family Sharing group, when you set up a child account, you can set up content restrictions, communication limits, and downtime. After the child's account is set up, you can change parental control settings at any time in Settings > Screen Time. See [Set up a device for a child with Family Sharing](#).

For children under 13, [Communication safety](#) and [Screen Distance](#) are turned on by default. The Web Content filter is set by default to Limit Adult Websites for children under 13. (This age varies by country or region.)

Set up Screen Time for a family member

1. On your device, go to Settings > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down and select a family member below Family.
3. To schedule downtime for your family member, follow the instructions in [Schedule time away from the screen](#).

If your child requests more screen time, you can approve or decline the request in Settings > Screen Time or in Messages.

4. To set limits for app use for your family member, follow the instructions in [Set limits for app use](#).
5. To choose apps and contacts to allow your family member to use at all times, follow the instructions in [Choose apps and contacts to allow at all times](#).
Note: If your family member needs health or accessibility apps, make sure they're in the Allowed Apps list. If Messages isn't always allowed, your family member may not be able to send or receive messages (including to emergency numbers and contacts) during downtime or after the app limit has expired.
6. To help reduce your family member's risk of myopia or eyestrain, [turn on Screen Distance](#).

You can also do any of the following for a family member:

- [Block adult content](#)
- [Allow or block calls and messages from specific contacts](#)
- [Check for sensitive images](#)

Check for nude content on a family member's iPad

You can have your family member's iPad detect nudity in images before they're sent or received in Messages, AirDrop, Contact Posters, FaceTime messages, the Photos app, and third-party apps that adopt Apple's Communication Safety framework. If nudity is detected in an image, the image is blurred and resources are provided to help your child handle the situation (not available in all countries or regions). This feature doesn't give Apple access to the photos. See the Apple Support article [About communication safety on your child's Apple device](#).

Note: For children under 13 in a Family Sharing group, Communication Safety is turned on by default.

1. On your device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Scroll down and tap the name of your family member.
3. Tap Communication Safety, then turn on Communication Safety.

You may need to enter the Screen Time passcode.

Note: When you turn on Communication Safety, it turns on the Sensitive Content Warning in Settings  > Privacy & Security. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#).

Block adult content on a family member's device

You can help ensure that the content on your family member's device is age appropriate by limiting the explicitness ratings in Content & Privacy Restrictions.

1. On your family member's device, go to Settings  > Screen Time.
2. Tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Choose specific content and privacy options.
 - To protect your family member's hearing, scroll down, tap Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow. (This prevents changes to the maximum headphone volume.) See [Reduce loud headphone sounds in Settings](#).
 - To restrict [SharePlay in FaceTime calls](#), go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Allowed Apps & Features, then turn off SharePlay. To allow SharePlay, turn it on.
4. Tap  at the top left.

Add or change Screen Time settings for a family member later

To add or change Screen Time settings later, follow the steps described in the sections above.

Important: If you set up Screen Time for a family member on their device (not through Family Sharing), and you forget the Screen Time passcode, you can use your [Apple Account](#) to reset it. However, if you set up Screen Time for a family member on your device through Family Sharing and you forget your Screen Time passcode, you can reset it on your device using your device passcode, Touch ID, or Face ID.

Wallet & Apple Pay

Set up Apple Pay on iPad

Set up Apple Pay to make secure payments in apps and on websites that support [Apple Pay](#). (Available in certain countries and regions; see [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).)

Add a debit or credit card

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Tap Add Card. You may be asked to [sign in to your Apple Account](#).
3. Add any of the following types of cards:
 - *A new card:* Tap Debit or Credit Card, tap Continue, then position your card so that it appears in the frame, or enter the card details manually.
 - *Apple Card:* See [Use Apple Card](#).
 - *Your previous cards:* Tap Previous Cards, then choose any cards you previously used. These cards may include the card associated with your Apple Account, cards you use with Apple Pay on your other devices, cards you [added to Safari AutoFill](#), or cards you removed from Wallet. Tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
 - *A card from a supported app:* Tap the app of your bank or card issuer (below From Apps on Your iPad).

The card issuer determines whether your card is eligible for Apple Pay, and may ask you for additional information to complete the verification process.

Set the default card

The first card you add becomes your default card for payments. You can set a different card as the default at any time.

Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, tap Default Card, then choose a card.

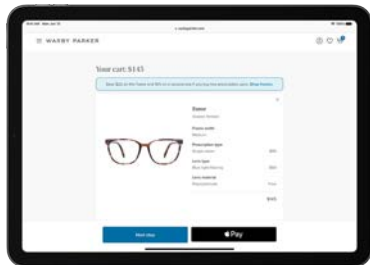
View and manage card details

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Tap a card, then do any of the following:
 - Tap Transactions to view your recent history. To hide this information, turn off Show History. To view all your Apple Pay activity, see the statement from your card issuer.
 - View the last four digits of the card number and Device Account Number—the number transmitted to the merchant.
 - Change the billing address.
 - Remove the card from Apple Pay.

Note: The availability of Apple Pay and its features varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).

Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web on iPad

You can make purchases using [Apple Pay](#) in apps, in App Clips, and on the web wherever you see the Apple Pay button. (Available in certain countries and regions; see [Countries and regions that support Apple Pay](#).)



Pay in an app, an App Clip, or Safari

1. During checkout, tap the Apple Pay button.

2. Review the payment information and set any of the following:

- Payment method

You can choose a different payment card; if available, you can also pay with rewards or installments (available on cards from participating banks and card providers in certain markets; subject to eligibility and approval).

- Billing and shipping addresses
- Contact information

Tip: If you subscribe to iCloud+, you can [use Hide My Email](#) to keep your real email address private.

3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the payment.

See the Apple Support articles [Pay with rewards using Apple Pay](#) and [Pay with installments using Apple Pay](#).

Use Apple Pay in third-party browsers on Mac, Window devices, and other devices

When you shop in a supported third-party web browser, you can complete the purchase with Apple Pay using the payment information on your iPad. (Not available in all countries or regions.)

1. At checkout, click Apple Pay, then [scan the code](#) using your iPad camera.

2. On your iPad, review the payment information and set any of the following:

- Payment method
- Billing and shipping addresses
- Contact information

3. Authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the payment.

Use Apple Cash on iPad

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __ " Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

With Apple Cash (available in the U.S.), you can send and receive money, get cash back from Apple Card transactions, make purchases, and transfer your Apple Cash balance to your bank account.

Set up Apple Cash

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.

2. Tap Apple Cash, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Set up Apple Cash](#).

Make purchases with Apple Cash

You can make purchases with Apple Cash using [Apple Pay](#) or the virtual card number:

- *With Apple Pay:* Use [Use Apple Pay in apps and on the web](#).
- *With the virtual card number:* Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, tap the Apple Cash card, then tap Card Information.

See the Apple Support article [Use your virtual card number for Apple Cash](#).

Send and receive payments with Apple Cash in Messages

You can start a person-to-person payment in the following ways:

- *In Wallet:* Go to the Wallet app  on your iPhone, tap the Apple Cash card, tap Send or Request, then follow the prompts.
- *In Messages:* Go to the Messages app , start a new message or tap an existing conversation, tap , tap Apple Cash, then follow the prompts.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Send and receive money with Apple Cash](#).

Manage your Apple Cash

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.

2. Tap Apple Cash.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Add money or set up Auto Reload:* See the Apple Support article [Add money to Apple Cash](#).
- *Transfer funds to your bank:* See the Apple Support article [Transfer money in Apple Cash to your bank account or debit card](#).
- *Set up and manage recurring payments:* See the Apple Support article [Send and receive money with Apple Cash](#).
- *See the virtual card number:* Tap Card Information, then use the information for purchases in apps or on the web.
- *View card details:* Update your bank account information, request transaction statements, contact support, and more.

Apple Cash and sending and receiving payments through Apple Pay are services provided by Green Dot Bank, member FDIC.

Use Apple Card on iPad

Use Apple Card on iPad

Apple Card (available in the U.S.) is a credit card created by Apple and designed to help you lead a healthier financial life. You can sign up for Apple Card on iPhone in minutes and start using it with [Apple Pay](#) right away in stores, in apps, or online worldwide. Apple Card gives you easy-to-understand, real-time views of your latest transactions and balance, and Apple Card support is available anytime by simply sending a text from Messages.

Apply for Apple Card

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Tap Add Card, then tap Apply for Apple Card.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [How to apply for Apple Card](#).

Make purchases with Apple Card

You can make purchases with Apple Card in the following ways:

- *With Apple Pay:* At contactless payment terminals (on iPhone only) and [in apps and on the web](#).
- *With the virtual card number:* Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay, tap Apple Card, then tap Card Information to see the card number, expiration date, and security code.
- *With the titanium card:* In stores, restaurants, and other locations where Apple Pay isn't yet accepted, use the physical card.

View transactions, make payments, and manage your Apple Card

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Tap Apple Card.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Review your spending:* Tap Transactions. See the Apple Support article [See your Apple Card spending history](#).
 - *Make a one-time payment or schedule automatic payments:* Tap Make a Payment or Autopay. See the Apple Support article [How to make Apple Card payments](#).
 - *See the virtual card number:* Tap Card Information to see the card number, expiration date, and security code.
 - *Manage your account:* See account details, contact support, and more.

Tip: [Add the Apple Card widget](#) to your Home Screen to see your balance, available credit, and spending activity at a glance.

1. Daily Cash may not be divided between Apple Cash and a Savings account. Apple Card owners and co-owners may individually change where their Daily Cash is deposited at any time. To open Savings, you must add Apple Card to Wallet on an iPhone or iPad with the latest version of iOS or iPadOS. Apple is not a financial institution. Apple Card and Savings are issued and provided by Goldman Sachs Bank USA, Salt Lake City Branch. Member FDIC.
2. Apple Cash is provided by Green Dot Bank. Member FDIC.

Remove payment cards from Apple Wallet on iPad

You can remove cards and passes that you don't use anymore from Apple Wallet. You can also remove debit and credit cards from Apple Pay if your iPad is lost or stolen.

Remove a debit or credit card from your iPad

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Tap the card or pass you want to remove, then tap Remove Card.

If you remove a card, you can add it again later.

Note: If you sign out of iCloud in Settings > [your name], all your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay are removed from iPad. You can add the cards again the next time you sign in to your Apple Account.

Remove your cards from Apple Pay if your iPad is lost or stolen

If you enabled [Find My](#), you can use it to help locate and secure your iPad.

To remove your cards from Apple Pay, do any of the following:

- *On another iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings  > [your name], select the lost iPad, then tap Remove Items (below Wallet & Apple Pay).
- *Using a web browser:* Sign in to your [Apple Account](#). Click Devices, then select the lost device. In the Wallet & Apple Pay section, click Remove Items.
- Call the issuers of your cards.

If you remove cards, you can add them again later.

If you sign out of iCloud in Settings > [your name], all your credit and debit cards for Apple Pay are removed from iPad. You can add the cards again the next time you sign in.

Change your Wallet & Apple Pay settings on iPad

In Settings, you can customize your preferences for Wallet & Apple Pay.

Customize your Apple Pay settings

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Notifications*: Change [notification settings](#).
- *Apple Cash*: Turn on or off [Apple Cash](#).
- *Transaction Defaults*: Enter your default information for [Apple Pay in apps and on the web](#).
- *Pay Later*: Shows available payment options from your cards in Wallet when you check out with Apple Pay.
- *Rewards*: Shows rewards from your cards in Wallet when you check out with Apple Pay.
- *Compatible Cards*: Checks your [saved cards in Safari AutoFill](#) for compatibility with Apple Pay and allows you to use them in Wallet.
- *Add Orders to Wallet*: Orders from participating merchants are automatically added to Wallet for order tracking on iPhone. See [Track your orders in Wallet on iPhone](#) in the iPhone User Guide.
- *Other Pay Later Options*: See additional pay later services when you check out with Apple Pay.

Change your default shipping and contact information

1. Go to Settings  > Wallet & Apple Pay.
2. Below Transaction Defaults, set your shipping address, email, and phone number.

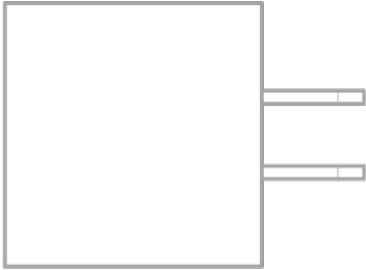
Accessories

Power adapter and charge cable for iPad

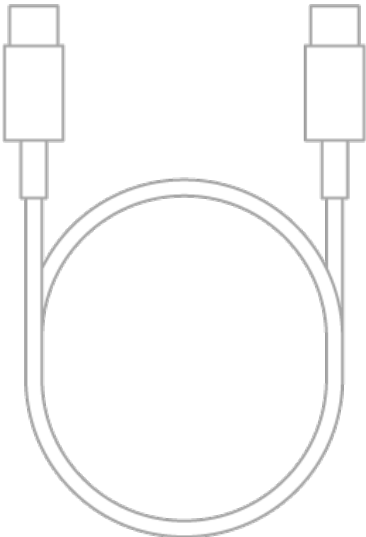
You can connect iPad to a power outlet and [charge the battery](#) by using the included USB-C power adapter and charge cable. The size and type of the adapter depends on your iPad model and your country or region. The type of charge cable depends on your iPad model.

You can also use the charge cable to [connect iPad to your computer](#) for charging, transferring files, using iPad as a second display for your Mac, and more.

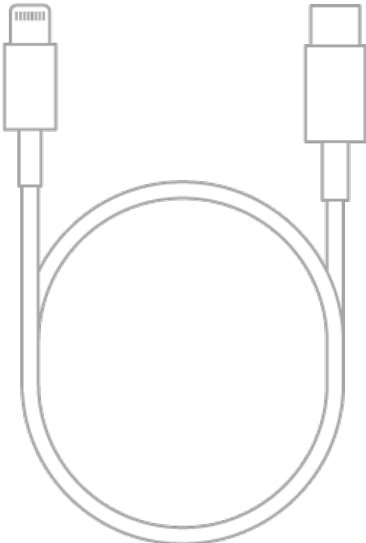
USB-C Power Adapter



USB-C Charge Cable



Lightning to USB-C Cable



AirPods and EarPods

Use AirPods with iPad

After you pair AirPods (sold separately) with iPad, you can use AirPods to listen to audio playing on iPad, make and answer FaceTime calls, listen and respond to messages, hear reminders when you need them, listen to conversations more easily in noisy environments, and more.

Pair AirPods with your iPad

1. On iPad, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
2. Go to the Home Screen on your iPad.
3. Do one of the following:
 - *AirPods (1st, 2nd, and 3rd generation) and AirPods Pro*: Open the case with your AirPods inside, then hold it next to your iPad.
 - *AirPods Max*: Take your AirPods Max out of the Smart Case, then hold AirPods Max next to your iPad.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Done.

Note: If onscreen instructions for pairing your AirPods Max don't appear, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then select your AirPods Max. If the status light doesn't flash white on AirPods Max, press and hold the noise control button until it does.

Your AirPods are automatically paired with all of your supported devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) (iOS 10, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.12, watchOS 3, or later required).

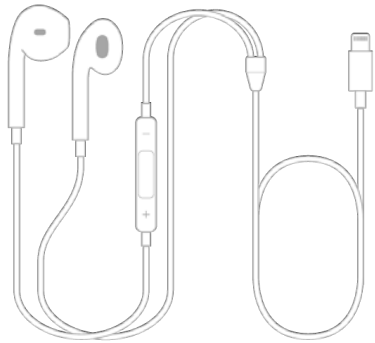
Note: If you can't pair your AirPods, see the Apple Support article [If your AirPods won't connect](#).

Do more with AirPods and your iPad

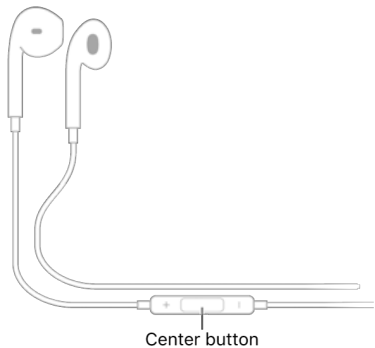
See the [AirPods User Guide](#) for detailed instructions on how to get the most out of your AirPods.

Use EarPods with Lightning Connector on iPad

You can use EarPods with Lightning Connector (sold separately) to listen to music and videos, and make calls on [any iPad model with a Lightning port](#). EarPods feature a microphone, volume buttons, and the center button.



Use the center button to answer and end calls, control audio and video playback, and use Siri, even when iPad is locked.



Control audio with your EarPods

- *Pause*: Press the center button. Press again to resume playback.
- *Skip forward*: Press the center button twice quickly.
- *Skip backward*: Press the center button three times quickly.
- *Fast-forward*: Press the center button twice quickly and hold.

Manage calls using your EarPods

- *Answer an incoming call*: Press the center button.
- *End the current call*: Press the center button.
- *Switch to an incoming or on-hold call, and put the current call on hold*: Press the center button. Press again to switch back to the first call.

Ask Siri with your EarPods

Press and hold the center button until you hear a beep. Let go, then ask Siri to perform a task or answer your question. See [Use Siri](#).

Use headphone audio-level features on iPad

You can set a maximum decibel level to ensure that headphone audio doesn't become uncomfortable for you. iPad analyzes your headphone audio and reduces any sound above this level.

You can also check whether the current audio level is OK or loud by viewing a headphone level meter.

Reduce loud headphone sounds in Settings

1. Go to Settings  > Sounds & Haptics > Headphone Safety > Reduce Loud Audio.
2. Turn on Reduce Loud Sounds, then drag the slider.

Note: If you [set up Screen Time](#) for a family member, you can prevent them from changing the Reduce Loud Sounds level. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow.

Check your headphone level while you listen

While using headphones with iPad, you can use Hearing in Control Center to check their current decibel level. AirPods, EarPods, and many other wired and wireless headphones are compatible with Hearing in Control Center.

1. [Open Control Center](#), then touch and hold in the Control Center area.
2. Tap Add a Control, then tap .

The audio level (in decibels) of your headphones is displayed on the Headphone Level meter.

Note: You can also scroll below the Headphone Level meter to turn Live Listen on or off. See [Use Live Listen](#). Typically, headphone level monitoring and Live Listen aren't used at the same time. The Headphone Level monitor is intended for listening to audio playback. Live Listen is intended for listening to external sounds with the iPad microphone.

Improve the accuracy of audio measurements for third-party Bluetooth headphones

Classify your Bluetooth® devices as headphones, speakers, or other devices.

1. Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then tap the information button  next to the name of the device.
2. Tap Device Type, then choose a classification.

When you connect AirPods, EarPods, and other compatible headphones to your iPad, the headphone audio levels are automatically sent to iPad. Headphone audio measurements are most accurate when using Apple or Beats headphones. Audio played through other headphones can be estimated based on the volume of your iPad.

Apple Pencil

Apple Pencil compatibility with iPad models

Find out which Apple Pencil (sold separately) works with your iPad.

Apple Pencil (1st generation)



Apple Pencil (1st generation) is compatible with the following models:

- iPad mini (5th generation)
- iPad (6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th generations)
- iPad Air (3rd generation)
- iPad Pro 9.7-inch
- iPad Pro 10.5-inch
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (1st and 2nd generation)

See [Pair and charge Apple Pencil \(1st generation\)](#).

Apple Pencil (2nd generation)



Apple Pencil (2nd generation) is compatible with the following models:

- iPad mini (6th generation)
- iPad Air (4th and 5th generations)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th generations)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th generations)

See [Pair and charge Apple Pencil \(2nd generation\)](#).

Apple Pencil (USB-C)



Apple Pencil (USB-C) is compatible with the following models:

- iPad mini (6th generation)
- iPad (10th generation)
- iPad Air (4th and 5th generations)
- iPad Air 11-inch (M2)
- iPad Air 13-inch (M2)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th generations)
- iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th generations)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (M4)
- iPad Pro 13-inch (M4)

See [Pair and charge Apple Pencil \(USB-C\)](#).

Apple Pencil Pro



Apple Pencil Pro is compatible with the following models:

- iPad Air 11-inch (M2)
- iPad Air 13-inch (M2)
- iPad Pro 11-inch (M4)
- iPad Pro 13-inch (M4)

See [Pair and charge Apple Pencil Pro with iPad](#).

Pair and charge Apple Pencil (1st generation) with iPad

You can pair and charge Apple Pencil (1st generation) by plugging it into the Lightning or USB-C connector on your [compatible iPad](#).



Pair and charge Apple Pencil (1st generation) on an iPad with a Home button

1. Remove the cap and plug Apple Pencil into the Lightning connector on your iPad.



2. Do any of the following:

- *Pair Apple Pencil:* When the Pair button appears, tap it.

After you pair Apple Pencil, unplug it from iPad. Apple Pencil stays paired until you restart your iPad, turn off Bluetooth®, or pair with another iPad. Just pair Apple Pencil again when you're ready to use it.

- *Charge Apple Pencil:* Apple Pencil charges while it's plugged into your iPad.

If your pencil came with an Apple Pencil Charging Adapter, you can also charge it using the Lightning Cable and power adapter that came with your iPad.

Pair and charge Apple Pencil with iPad (10th generation)

1. Remove the cap and plug Apple Pencil into the USB-C to Apple Pencil Adapter.
2. Connect the other end of the adapter to your iPad using the USB-C charge cable that came with your iPad.



3. Do any of the following:

- *Pair Apple Pencil:* When the Pair button appears, tap it.

After you pair Apple Pencil, unplug it from iPad. Apple Pencil stays paired until you restart your iPad, turn off Bluetooth, or pair with another iPad. Just pair Apple Pencil again when you're ready to use it.

- *Charge Apple Pencil:* Apple Pencil charges while it's plugged into your iPad.

Tip: You can also charge Apple Pencil using the USB-C charge cable and power adapter that came with your iPad.

Check the battery level of Apple Pencil

- Check the Batteries widget. See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).
- Go to Settings > Apple Pencil.

Pair and charge Apple Pencil (2nd generation) with iPad

You can attach Apple Pencil (2nd generation) to the magnetic connector on the right side of your [compatible iPad](#) to pair and charge it.



Pair Apple Pencil (2nd generation) with iPad

Attach Apple Pencil to the magnetic connector on the right side of your iPad.

Charge Apple Pencil (2nd generation)

1. Make sure that Bluetooth® is turned on in Settings ⓘ > Bluetooth.
2. Attach Apple Pencil to the magnetic connector on the right side of your iPad.

Check the battery level of Apple Pencil

Do any of the following:

- Check the Batteries widget. See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).
- Go to Settings ⓘ > Apple Pencil.

Pair and charge Apple Pencil (USB-C) with iPad

You can pair and charge Apple Pencil by plugging it into the USB-C connector on your [compatible iPad](#).



Pair and charge Apple Pencil (USB-C)

1. Slide open the end of Apple Pencil and connect it to the USB-C charge cable that came with your iPad.



2. Connect the other end of the USB-C charge cable to the USB-C connector on iPad.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Pair Apple Pencil:* Tap "Tap to Connect."

After you pair Apple Pencil, you can disconnect it from the USB-C charge cable. Apple Pencil stays paired until you restart your iPad, turn off Bluetooth®, or pair with another iPad. Just pair Apple Pencil again you're ready to use it.

- *Charge Apple Pencil:* Apple Pencil charges while it's plugged into your iPad.

Tip: You can also charge Apple Pencil using the USB-C charge cable and power adapter that came with your iPad.

Check the battery level of Apple Pencil

Do any of the following:

- Check the Batteries widget. See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).
- Go to Settings ⓘ > Apple Pencil.

Pair and charge Apple Pencil Pro with iPad

Attach Apple Pencil Pro to the magnetic connector on the long side of your [compatible iPad](#) to pair and charge it.

Pair Apple Pencil Pro with iPad

Attach Apple Pencil Pro to the magnetic connector on the long side of your iPad.

Charge Apple Pencil Pro

1. Make sure that Bluetooth® is turned on in Settings ⓘ > Bluetooth.
2. Attach Apple Pencil Pro to the magnetic connector on the long side of your iPad.

Check the battery level of Apple Pencil

- Check the Batteries widget. See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).
- Go to Settings ⓘ > Apple Pencil.

Enter text with Scribble on iPad

On [supported models](#), you can use Apple Pencil (sold separately) and Scribble to enter text. Without opening or using the onscreen keyboard, you can quickly reply to a message, write yourself a reminder, and more. Scribble converts your handwriting to text directly on your iPad, so your writing stays private.

Note: Scribble is available in several languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Use Apple Pencil to enter text in any text field

1. Write with Apple Pencil in any text field, and Scribble automatically converts your handwriting into typed text.

Scribble even works when your handwriting extends beyond the edges of the text field.

2. To use an action shortcut, tap the Scribble toolbar.

Available actions depend on the app you're using, and may include the Undo button ⌫, the Show Keyboard button ⌨, and more.

To automatically minimize the toolbar when you're entering text, tap ⌵, then turn on Auto-minimize. To show the full toolbar, tap the minimized version.

Use Apple Pencil to enter text in Notes and Freeform

1. In Notes or Freeform, tap  to show the tool palette.
2. In the tool palette, tap the Handwriting tool  (to the left of the pen).
3. Write with Apple Pencil, and Scribble automatically converts your handwriting into typed text.

Select and revise text with Apple Pencil

As you enter text using Apple Pencil and Scribble, you can do the following:

- *Delete a word:* Scratch it out.
- *Insert text:* Touch and hold in a text area, then write in the space that opens.
- *Join or separate characters:* Draw a vertical line between them.
- *Select text:* Draw a circle around the text or underline it to select it and see editing options. To change the selection, drag from the beginning or end of the selected text.
- *Select a word:* Double-tap the word.
- *Select a paragraph:* Triple-tap a word within the paragraph, or drag Apple Pencil over the paragraph.

Stop converting your handwriting to text

Go to Settings  > Apple Pencil, then turn off Scribble.

Draw with Apple Pencil on iPad

On [supported models](#), you can use Apple Pencil (sold separately) to draw or sketch, mark up a photo, sign a document, and more.

Compared to using your finger, Apple Pencil gives you extra control as you draw.

Apply shading and darker lines

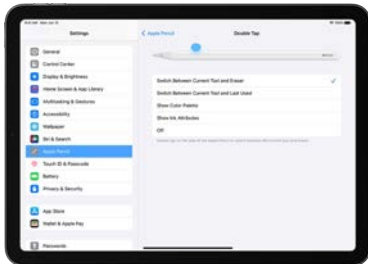
While you draw or sketch, tilt your Apple Pencil to apply shading or to vary the line thickness (depending on the drawing tool).

With Apple Pencil (1st and 2nd generations) and Apple Pencil Pro, you can also press more firmly to darken the line.

Double-tap to switch tools

With Apple Pencil (2nd generation) and Apple Pencil Pro, you can double-tap the barrel of the pencil to quickly switch back to the tool you used last. For example, you can switch from the marker back to the eraser. (The double-tap option is available in supported apps, such as Notes.)

To choose another action for the double-tap setting, go to Settings  > Apple Pencil > Double Tap.



Squeeze Apple Pencil Pro to perform an action

With Apple Pencil Pro, you can squeeze the barrel of the pencil to quickly perform an action such as undo or show the tool palette.

To choose an action for the squeeze setting, go to Settings  > Apple Pencil > Squeeze.



Use barrel roll on Apple Pencil Pro

With Apple Pencil Pro, you can rotate the barrel and preview the angle of drawing tools such as the highlighter and fountain pen.

Barrel roll works with the fountain pen and highlighter tools in Apple apps like Freeform, Notes, and [when you are using Markup](#). It may also work with tools in select third-party apps; contact the app developer for more information.

Turn haptic feedback for Apple Pencil Pro off or on

When you squeeze or double-tap Apple Pencil Pro, you feel a light pulse, which is haptic feedback.

1. [Pair Apple Pencil Pro](#) with your [compatible iPad](#).
2. Go to Settings  > Apple Pencil, then turn Haptics on or off.

Hover to preview tools and controls

With Apple Pencil hover, you can quickly preview and switch between different tools and controls in supported apps. You can preview a drawing tool before it makes a mark on the canvas. You can also sketch, write, and make adjustments with greater precision.

Apple Pencil hover is available on the following models:

- iPad Pro 11-inch (4th generation) and iPad Pro 12.9-inch (6th generation) with Apple Pencil (2nd generation)
- iPad Air 11-inch (M2), iPad Air 13-inch (M2), iPad Pro 11-inch (M4), and iPad Pro 13-inch (M4) with Apple Pencil Pro

Hold Apple Pencil up to 12 mm above the iPad display. Here are some examples of what you can do:

- *Explore the tool palette:* Hold Apple Pencil over the [tool palette](#), then move over the tools such as the pencil, brush, eraser, and colors. Touch the tool, color, and options you want to use.
- *Preview before you make a mark:* Hold Apple Pencil over the drawing area. With some drawing tools, you can even tilt Apple Pencil and change the azimuth (lateral angle) for different effects. For example, in the Notes app , you can preview the color, line thickness, and opacity of the highlighter.

With Apple Pencil Pro, you can rotate the barrel and preview the angle of drawing tools such as the highlighter and fountain pen.

- *Erase with precision:* Select the eraser tool, then select options such as the pixel eraser size or the object eraser. Hold Apple Pencil over the drawing area to preview the effects of the eraser.

To turn off Apple Pencil hover, go to Settings  > Apple Pencil, then turn off Hover.

Take and mark up a screenshot with Apple Pencil on iPad

You can use Apple Pencil to quickly take a picture of the iPad screen, then mark it up to share with others or use in documents.

1. To capture the screen, swipe up with Apple Pencil from either corner at the bottom of your iPad.
2. To mark up the screenshot, draw with Apple Pencil.
Use the tool palette at the bottom of the screen to change drawing tools. See [Write and draw in documents](#).
3. To send the marked up screenshot to others (such as in a message), or to save it in a document (such as in a note), tap , then choose an option.
4. When you're finished, tap Done, then choose an option.

Quickly write notes with Apple Pencil on iPad

You can use Apple Pencil to quickly write a note from anywhere on iPad, even while iPad is locked ([supported models](#)).

Create a Quick Note

See [Use Quick Notes](#).

Wake iPad by drawing or writing a note

Tap Apple Pencil on the Lock Screen, then begin drawing or taking notes.

Whatever you create is [saved in Notes](#).

Apple TV, smart TVs, and video displays

Wirelessly stream videos and photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from iPad

You can use your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV to watch videos and view photos streamed from your iPad.

Note: To stream videos or photos to Apple TV or a smart TV from your iPad, both devices must be on the same [Wi-Fi network](#).

Play video on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. While playing video in the Apple TV app  or another supported video app on your iPad, tap the screen to show the controls.
2. Tap , then choose your Apple TV or AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.
If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPad.

To change the playback destination, choose a different AirPlay option on your iPad screen.

Show photos on Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV

1. In Photos  on your iPad, tap a photo, then tap .
2. Swipe up, tap , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.
If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPad.

To stop streaming photos, tap  near the top of the iPad screen, then tap Turn off AirPlay.

Turn automatic AirPlay streaming on or off

You can allow your iPad to discover and automatically connect to any frequently used Apple TV or smart TV when playing content from apps that you regularly use with AirPlay.

Go to Settings  > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

Mirror your iPad on Apple TV or a smart TV

On Apple TV or a smart TV, you can show whatever appears on your iPad.

1. [Open Control Center](#) on your iPad.
2. Tap , then choose your Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV as the playback destination.

If an AirPlay passcode appears on the TV screen, enter the passcode on your iPad.

To switch back to iPad, open Control Center, tap , then tap Stop Mirroring.

Note: For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).

To learn more about using Apple TV, see the [Apple TV User Guide](#).

Connect iPad to a display with a cable

With the appropriate cable or adapter, you can connect your iPad to a secondary display, like a computer display, TV, or projector, where you can view the iPad screen.

To extend the workspace of your Mac by connecting it to your iPad, see [Use iPad as a second display for Mac](#).

Connect iPad to Studio Display or Pro Display XDR

Your Apple display automatically turns on when you plug it into power and connect it to your iPad ([supported models](#)) using the Thunderbolt cable included with the display. Your iPad charges while connected to the display.

For more information about Studio Display or Pro Display XDR, see the [Displays Support website](#).

Connect your iPad using the USB-C connector

On [models with a USB-C connector](#), you may be able to connect iPad to a USB or Thunderbolt 3 port on the display.

If the [charge cable](#) that came with your iPad isn't compatible with the port on your display, TV, or projector, do the following:

1. Plug a USB-C Display AV Adapter or USB-C VGA Multi-port Adapter into the charging port on iPad.
2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to the adapter.
3. Connect the other end of the HDMI or VGA cable to the display, TV, or projector.
4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on the display, TV, or projector. If you need help, use the display's manual.

If the display doesn't turn on when you connect it to iPad, unplug it from iPad, then plug it back in. If that doesn't work, unplug the display from its power source, then plug it in again.

See the Apple Support article [Charge and connect with the USB-C port on iPad Pro](#).

Connect your iPad if it has a Lightning connector

On a [model with a Lightning connector](#), do the following:

1. Plug a Lightning Digital AV Adapter or Lightning to VGA Adapter into the charging port on iPad.
2. Connect an HDMI or VGA cable to the adapter.
3. Connect the other end of the HDMI or VGA cable to the display, TV, or projector.
4. If necessary, switch to the correct video source on the display, TV, or projector. If you need help, see the manual that came with your display.

To charge your iPad while it's connected to the display, TV, or projector, insert one end of your charge cable into the extra port on the adapter, insert the other end of the charge cable into the power adapter, then plug the power adapter to a power outlet.

Organize windows on your iPad and external display with Stage Manager

Stage Manager lets you connect [supported iPad Pro and iPad Air models](#) to an external display with up to 6K of resolution, giving you fast access to windows and apps.

[To use Stage Manager](#), place your iPad in landscape orientation, connect it to an external display, open Control Center, then tap .

The window of the app you're using is positioned prominently in the center, so you can focus on it without going full screen. Your other apps are arranged on the left side in order of recent use.

In Stage Manager, you can do any of the following:

- Resize your windows to make them the perfect size for your task.
- Move your windows around on the center canvas.
- Access your favorite apps from the Dock, along with the ones you used recently.
- Use App Library to quickly find the app you want.
- Drag and drop windows from the side or open apps from the Dock to create app sets you can tap to get back to.
- Move files and windows between your [supported iPad](#) and your external display.

For more information, see [Move, resize, and organize windows](#).

Play audio from iPad on HomePod and other wireless speakers

You can play audio from iPad on wireless devices like HomePod, Apple TV, AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, and Bluetooth® headphones and speakers.

Play audio from iPad on a wireless device

- 1. On your iPad, open an audio app, such as Podcasts or Music, then choose an item to play.
- 2. Tap , then choose a playback destination.

Note: If your AirPlay 2-enabled devices don't appear in the list of playback destinations, make sure they're on the same Wi-Fi network. With a Bluetooth device, the playback destination returns to iPad if you move the device out of Bluetooth range.

To select the playback destination, you can also tap on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

Note: For information about setting up a Bluetooth audio device, see [Pair your iPad with a Bluetooth accessory](#).

Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices

With AirPlay 2 and iPad, you can play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices connected to the same Wi-Fi network. For example, you can play a party playlist on HomePod speakers in the living room and kitchen, on an Apple TV in the bedroom, and on an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV in the den.

Say something like:

- "Stop playing music everywhere"
- "Set the dining room volume to 10 percent"
- "What's playing in the kitchen?"
- "Play a song I like in the kitchen"
- "Add the living room speaker"
- "Remove the music from the kitchen"
- "Move the music to the den"

You can also choose playback destinations from the iPad screen.

- 1. Tap in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or on the Now Playing screen for the app you're listening to.
- 2. Select each device you want to use.

Note: Devices arranged in a stereo pair are treated as a single audio device.

To learn more about using HomePod speakers and Apple TV, see the [HomePod User Guide](#) and [Apple TV User Guide](#).

For a list of AirPlay 2-enabled smart TVs, see the [Home accessories website](#).

Keyboards

iPad keyboards

iPad keyboards (sold separately) allow you to type while viewing the entire iPad screen. They magnetically attach to iPad—without switches, plugs, or pairing—and provide a lightweight protective cover when closed.

Find the right keyboard for your iPad

Keyboard	Compatible with
Magic Keyboard for iPad Pro	iPad Pro 11-inch (M4) iPad Pro 13-inch (M4)
Magic Keyboard for iPad Air and iPad Pro	iPad Air 11-inch (M2) iPad Air 13-inch (M2) iPad Air (4th and 5th generation) iPad Pro 11-inch (1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th generation) iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th generation)
Magic Keyboard Folio	iPad (10th generation)
Smart Keyboard Folio	iPad Air (4th and 5th generation) iPad Pro 11-inch (1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th generation) iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th generation)
Smart Keyboard	iPad (7th, 8th, and 9th generation) iPad Air (3rd generation) iPad Pro 10.5-inch

Switch between keyboards with iPad

With an Apple external keyboard, you can switch between the language keyboard for your region, an emoji keyboard, other language keyboards that you add, and the onscreen keyboard.

Switch between language keyboards and the onscreen emoji keyboard

1. On the external keyboard, press and hold the Control key.
2. Press the Space bar to cycle between the language keyboard for your region, the emoji keyboard, and [other language keyboards that you add](#).

When you select the emoji keyboard, you can do the following:

- **Search for an emoji:** Enter a commonly used word or phrase—such as “heart” or “smiley face”—in the search field above the emoji keyboard.
- **Enter an emoji:** Tap it; or use the arrow keys on the external keyboard to select it, then press Return.

Tip: To quickly switch to the emoji keyboard, press -E on the Magic Keyboard for iPad or Smart Keyboard.

With Magic Keyboard for iPad and Smart Keyboard, you can also press to choose between keyboards. If you want to use to show only the emoji keyboard instead of switching languages, go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then turn on Press for Emoji.

Tip: If you added a Chinese, Korean, Japanese, or Hebrew keyboard, you can press the Caps Lock key to switch back and forth between Latin script and the other keyboard you’re using. To prevent use of the Caps Lock key for switching languages, go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then turn off Switch Languages using Caps Lock.

Switch to the onscreen keyboard

1. Do one of the following:
 - Tap in the Shortcuts bar (at the bottom of the screen).
 - If you installed additional language keyboards, tap the language button next to the predictive text suggestions (opposite of the Dictation button in the Shortcuts bar).
2. Tap Show Keyboard.

To hide the onscreen keyboard, tap .

Note: With Magic Keyboard for iPad and Smart Keyboard, you can use to show only the emoji keyboard instead of switching languages. Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then turn on Press for Emoji. To switch between other language keyboards, press and hold the Control key, then press the Space bar.

Enter characters with diacritical marks while using an Apple external keyboard with iPad

If the Apple external keyboard you use with iPad doesn’t include accents and other diacritical marks for the language you’re typing, you can use an Option key modifier or the onscreen keyboard to enter those marks.

Use the Option key to enter a diacritical mark for a character

To enter a character with a diacritical mark, you can press the Option key to select a mark.

1. Do one of the following:
 - [Add a keyboard for a language](#) that supports diacritical marks, then in an app, [switch to that language keyboard](#).
For example, add the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard, then in an app, use on Magic Keyboard for iPad to select Español (México).
 - Go to Settings > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then [choose an alternative keyboard layout](#) that supports diacritical marks.
For example, if you have the English (US) language keyboard, tap English (US), then choose U.S. International — PC or ABC — Extended.

2. In an app, press and hold the Option key, then press a key that enters a diacritical mark.

For example, the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard and the U.S. International — PC alternative layout support these diacritical marks:

- *Acute accent* (for example, é): Option-E.
- *Grave accent* (for example, è): Option-`.
- *Tilde* (for example, ñ): Option-N.
- *Diaeresis or umlaut* (for example, ü): Option-U.
- *Circumflex* (for example, ê): Option-I.

3. Press the letter.

For example, to enter ñ using the Spanish (Mexico) keyboard or the U.S. International — PC alternative layout, press Option-N, then type ann.

Note: The ABC - Extended alternative layout also allows you to enter tone marks for typing Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin orthography. For example, to type ŭ in lǔxíng (“travel”), press Option-V, then type a v. In addition, the ABC - Extended layout allows you to type diacritical marks and letters from several different European languages, such as Czech, French, German, Hungarian, and Polish.

Use the onscreen keyboard to enter a diacritical mark

1. [Switch](#) to the onscreen keyboard.
2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol on the keyboard that's related to the character you want.
For example, to enter é, touch and hold the e key.
3. Slide your finger to choose a variant.
4. To hide the onscreen keyboard when you're finished, tap .

Dictate text while using an Apple external keyboard with iPad

You can dictate text instead of typing it on an Apple external keyboard.

Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary. Cellular data charges may apply (Wi-Fi + Cellular models).

1. Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard, then turn on Enable Dictation.
2. Tap the Dictation button  in the Shortcuts bar (at the bottom of the screen), then speak.
As you speak to insert text, iPad automatically inserts punctuation for you. You can insert emoji by saying their names (for example, "mind blown emoji" or "happy emoji").
3. When you finish, tap  at the bottom of the screen.

Tip: To quickly switch to dictation, press -D on the Magic Keyboard for iPad or Smart Keyboard.

Use shortcuts on an Apple external keyboard with iPad

You can use the Shortcuts bar (at the bottom of the screen) and combination keystrokes known as *keyboard shortcuts* to quickly perform many common actions.

Use the Shortcuts bar to accept suggested words and spellings

While typing, you can do the following:

- Accept a suggested word by tapping it in the Shortcuts bar.
- Accept a suggestion highlighted in the Shortcuts bar by entering a space or punctuation. (If you enter a comma, period, or other punctuation after entering a space to accept a suggestion, the space is deleted.)
- Reject the suggestions by tapping your original word (shown with quotation marks in the Shortcuts bar).

To turn off the suggestions, go to Settings  > General > Keyboard, then turn off Predictive Text.

Use the Shortcuts bar to switch between language, emoji, and onscreen keyboards

You can use the Shortcuts bar to switch between the language keyboard for your region, an emoji keyboard, [other language keyboards that you add](#), and the onscreen keyboard.

1. Do one of the following:
 - Tap  in the Shortcuts bar.
 - If you installed additional language keyboards, tap the language button next to the predictive text suggestions (opposite of the Dictation button  in the Shortcuts bar).
2. Choose an option.

Use the Shortcuts bar for other shortcuts

- *Use app-specific shortcuts:* Buttons on the outer edges of the Shortcuts bar vary depending on the app you're using or the task you're doing. Each app is different—try out the Shortcuts bar to see what you can do.
- *Change keyboard settings:* Tap  (or the language button that replaced it), then tap Keyboard Settings.
- *Minimize the Shortcuts bar:* Tap  (or the language button that replaced it), then tap Minimize. To see the full Shortcuts bar, tap the minimized version.
- *Dictate text:* Tap the Dictation button , then speak. When you're finished, tap  at the bottom of the screen.

Use keyboard shortcuts

You can use keyboard shortcuts on an Apple external keyboard to perform the following actions on iPad:

- *Quickly switch between apps:* Press and hold the Command key, then press Tab until you reach the app you want to open.
- *Open Search:* Press Command-Space.
- *Navigate between lists, text fields, and more:* Press Tab to navigate between areas of an app. For example, in Notes, with the Folders list showing, press Tab to switch between the Folders list, the Notes list, and the search field.
- *View multitasking and other systemwide shortcuts:* (Magic Keyboard for iPad and Smart Keyboard) Press and hold , then tap categories below the list.
- *View shortcuts for the app you're using:* Press and hold the Command key, then tap categories below the list.

You can change the actions that are performed by the Command key (and other modifier keys like Caps Lock). Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, tap Modifier Keys, tap a key, then choose the action you want it to perform.

To use additional keyboard shortcuts, go to Settings > Accessibility > Keyboards > Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access. See [Control iPad using Full Keyboard Access](#).

Note: You can also set up text replacements that enter words or phrases after you type just a few characters. For example, type “omw” to enter “On my way!” See [Use text replacements](#).

You can also accept suggested words before you finish typing them. See [Save keystrokes with text replacements](#).

Choose an alternative layout for an Apple external keyboard with iPad

With an alternative keyboard layout, you can enter letters and marks that are different from the ones on your Apple external keyboard. For example, with the ABC - Extended keyboard layout, you can type letters and [enter diacritical marks](#) for several different European languages and tone marks for Mandarin Chinese in Pinyin.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard.
2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then choose an alternative layout from the list.

Change typing assistance options for an Apple external keyboard with iPad

You can change options for auto-correction, smart punctuation, and more.

Change typing assistance options for an external keyboard

Go to Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard, then do any of the following:

- *Turn Auto-Capitalization on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature capitalizes proper nouns and the first words in sentences as you type.
- *Turn Auto-Correction on or off:* When this option is selected, an app supporting this feature corrects the spelling as you type.
- *Turn “. ” Shortcut on or off:* When this option is selected, double-tapping the space bar inserts a period followed by a space.

Change typing assistance options for all keyboards

You can turn on or off special typing features—such as predictive text and smart punctuation—that assist you when you type. These settings apply to your onscreen keyboard and external keyboard.

1. Go to Settings > General, then tap Keyboard.
2. In the list below All Keyboards, turn typing features on or off.

For several options, including auto-correction and auto-capitalization, you can specify different settings for your external keyboard in Settings  > General > Keyboard > Hardware Keyboard.

Trackpads

Connect Magic Trackpad to iPad

You can connect Magic Trackpad, including Magic Trackpad 2, to your iPad (Magic Trackpad sold separately).

Pair Magic Trackpad

1. Make sure Magic Trackpad is turned on and charged.
2. On iPad, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.

Note: If Magic Trackpad is already paired with your Mac or another iPad, you must unpair them before you can connect Magic Trackpad to your iPad. Do one of the following:

- *On iPhone or iPad:* See [Unpair a Bluetooth accessory](#).
- *On macOS 13 or later:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click Bluetooth in the sidebar, Control-click the device, then choose Forget.
- *On macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Bluetooth, Control-click the device, then click Remove.

Reconnect Magic Trackpad to iPad

Magic Trackpad disconnects when you turn its switch to Off, or when you move it or iPad out of Bluetooth® range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

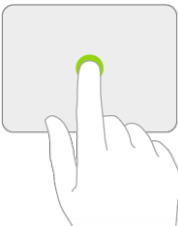
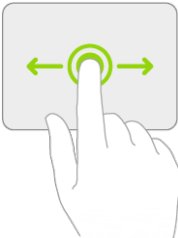
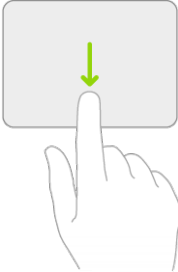
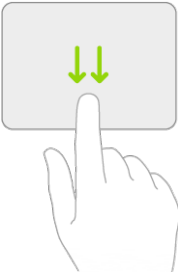
To reconnect, turn the trackpad switch to On, or bring the trackpad and iPad back into range, then click the trackpad.

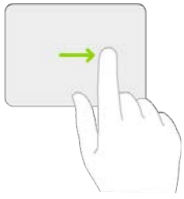
Trackpad gestures for iPad

You can use Magic Trackpad or the trackpad built into the Magic Keyboard for iPad and the Magic Keyboard Folio, to open apps, go to the Home Screen, open Slide Over, and more (all trackpads sold separately).

When your iPad is near your Mac (macOS 12.3 or later required on [supported models](#)), you can also [share a trackpad](#) between both devices. Many of the trackpad gestures in the following tables are supported by Mac trackpads.

Trackpad gestures for Magic Trackpad, Magic Trackpad 2, Magic Keyboard for iPad, and Magic Keyboard Folio

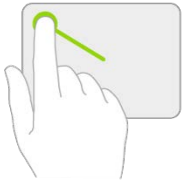
Gesture	Description
	Click. Press with one finger until you feel a click.
	Click and hold. Press and hold with one finger.
	Drag. Click and hold an item, then slide your finger across the trackpad to move it.
	Wake iPad. Click the trackpad. Or, if you're using an external keyboard, press any key.
	Open the Dock. Use one finger to swipe the pointer past the bottom of the screen.
	Go Home. Use one finger to swipe the pointer past the bottom of the screen. After the Dock appears, swipe the pointer past the bottom of the screen again. Alternatively, click the bar at the bottom of the screen (on an iPad with Face ID).



View Slide Over. Use one finger to swipe the pointer past the right edge of the screen. To hide Slide Over, swipe right again.



Open Control Center. Use one finger to move the pointer to select the status icons at the top right, then click.
Or, select the status icons at the top right, then swipe up with one finger.

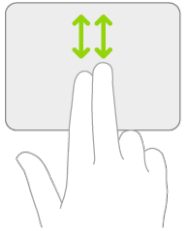


Open Notification Center. Use one finger to move the pointer to select the status icons at the top left, then click.
Or, use one finger to move the pointer past the top of the screen near the middle.

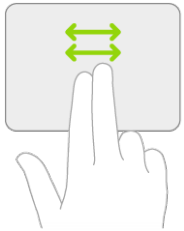
Additional gestures for Magic Trackpad 2, Magic Keyboard for iPad, and Magic Keyboard Folio

Gesture

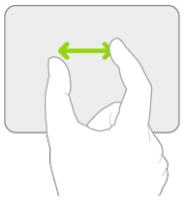
Description



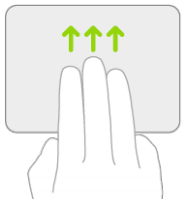
Scroll up or down. Swipe two fingers up or down.



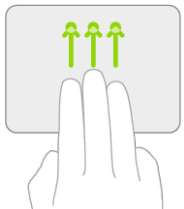
Scroll left or right. Swipe two fingers left or right.



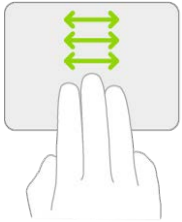
Zoom. Place two fingers near each other. Pinch open to zoom in, or pinch closed to zoom out.



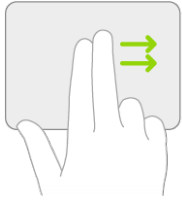
Go Home. Swipe up with three fingers.



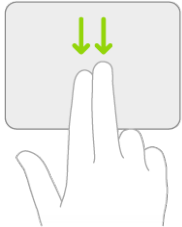
Open the App Switcher. Swipe up with three fingers, pausing before you lift your fingers.
Or, pinch four fingers together, pausing before you lift your fingers.



Switch between open apps. Swipe left or right with three fingers.



Open Today View. When the Home Screen or the Lock Screen is visible, use two fingers to swipe right.



Open search from the Home Screen. Swipe down with two fingers.



Secondary click. Click with two fingers to show the quick actions menu for items like icons on the Home Screen, messages in a mailbox, and the Camera button in Control Center.

Or, if you're using an external keyboard, you can press the Control key while you click the trackpad.

Change trackpad settings on iPad

You can change how you use a trackpad to interact with items on the iPad screen.

1. Go to Settings  > General, then choose one of the following, depending on your accessories:
 - Trackpad
 - Trackpad & Mouse
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Change the tracking speed:* Drag the slider to set the tracking speed of the pointer when you move it across the screen.
 - *Turn Natural Scrolling on or off:* With this option selected, the contents on the screen move in the same direction as your finger.
 - *Turn Tap to Click on or off:* If you select this option, lightly tapping the trackpad with one finger has the same effect as pressing the trackpad until it clicks.
 - *Turn Two-Finger Secondary Click on or off:* With this option selected, you click with two fingers to [show the quick actions menu](#) for items like icons on the Home Screen, messages in a mailbox, or the Camera button in Control Center.

Note: You can also change the appearance of the pointer, such as its color, shape, and size. See [Adjust pointer settings](#).

Mouse devices

Connect a mouse to iPad

You can connect Magic Mouse, another Bluetooth® mouse, or a USB mouse to your iPad.

Note: Mouse devices are sold separately. Not all mouse devices are fully compatible with all models of iPad.

Pair Magic Mouse or other Bluetooth mouse

1. For Magic Mouse, make sure the mouse is turned on and charged.
For any other Bluetooth mouse, follow the instructions that came with the mouse to put it in discovery mode.
2. On iPad, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then turn on Bluetooth.
3. Select the device when it appears in the Other Devices list.
If you're asked for a PIN when you pair Magic Mouse, type "0000" (four zeros), then tap Pair.

Note: If the mouse is already paired with your Mac or another iPad, you must unpair them before you can connect the mouse to your iPad. Do one of the following:

- On iPhone or iPad: See [Unpair a Bluetooth accessory](#).
- On macOS 13 or later: Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click Bluetooth in the sidebar, Control-click the device, then choose Forget.
- On macOS 12.5 or earlier: Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, click Bluetooth, Control-click the device, then click Remove.

Reconnect a Bluetooth mouse to iPad

The mouse disconnects when you turn the switch on the mouse to Off or when you move the mouse or iPad out of Bluetooth range—about 33 feet (10 meters).

To reconnect, turn the mouse switch to On, or bring the mouse and iPad back into range, then click the mouse.

Connect a USB mouse

With the appropriate cable or adapters, you can connect various third-party mouse devices with iPad using USB and USB-based receivers. Refer to the device manufacturer’s instructions.

Mouse actions and gestures for iPad

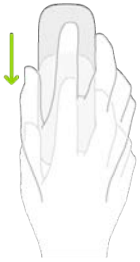
You can use a mouse to open apps, go to the Home Screen, open Slide Over, and more (mouse devices sold separately).

When your iPad is near your Mac (macOS 12.3 or later required on [supported models](#)), you can also [share a mouse](#) between both devices.

Note: Not all mouse devices are fully compatible with all models of iPad.

Mouse actions

Action	Description
	Click. Press the mouse until you feel a click.
	Click and hold. Press and hold the mouse.
	Drag. Click and hold an item, then move the mouse.
	Wake iPad. Click the mouse. Or, if you’re using an external keyboard, press any key.

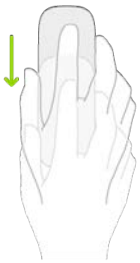


Open the Dock. Move the mouse to position the pointer at the bottom of the screen.



Go Home. Move the mouse to position the pointer at the bottom of the screen. After the Dock appears, move the pointer past the bottom of the screen.

Or, click the bar at the bottom of the screen (on an iPad with Face ID).



Open the App Switcher. With the Home Screen visible, move the pointer past the bottom of the screen.

Or from an app, drag the bar at the bottom of the screen toward the middle of the screen and pause (on an iPad with Face ID).

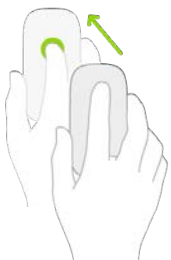


View Slide Over. Use the mouse to move the pointer past the right edge of the screen. To hide Slide Over, move the pointer past the right edge again.



Open Control Center. Use the mouse to move the pointer to select the status icons at the top right, then click.

Or, move the pointer past the top-right corner of the screen.



Open Notification Center. Use the mouse to move the pointer to select the status icons at the top left, then click.

Or, use the mouse to move the pointer past the top of the screen (near the middle).

Mouse gestures for Magic Mouse 2

Gesture

Description



Scroll up or down. Slide a finger up or down on the surface of the mouse.



Scroll left or right. Slide a finger left or right on the surface of the mouse.



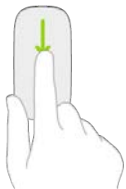
Secondary click. Use a finger on one side of the mouse to show the quick actions menu when clicking items like icons on the Home Screen, messages in a mailbox, or the Camera button in Control Center.

Note: To turn on Secondary click and choose which side of the mouse to use, go to Settings  > General > Trackpad & Mouse > Secondary Click.

If you're using an external keyboard, you can press the Control key while you click the mouse. On a multi-button mouse, click the second button.



Open Today View. When the Home Screen or the Lock Screen is visible, swipe right on the surface of the mouse.



Open search from the Home Screen. Swipe down on the surface of the mouse.

Change mouse settings on iPad

You can change how you use a mouse to interact with items on the iPad screen.

1. Go to Settings  > General, then select Trackpad & Mouse.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Change the tracking speed:* Drag the slider to set the tracking speed of the pointer when you move it across the screen.
 - *Turn Natural Scrolling on or off:* With this option selected, the contents on the screen move in the same direction as your finger.
 - *Specify a finger to use for Secondary Click:* You can specify either the right or left finger to [show the quick actions menu](#) when you click items like icons on the Home Screen, messages in a mailbox, or the Camera button in Control Center. To turn off Secondary Click, choose Off (Magic Mouse 2).

Note: You can also change the appearance of the pointer, such as its color, shape, and size. See [Adjust pointer settings](#).

Connect external storage devices to iPad

You can use the Files app  and other supported apps to access files stored on external devices, such as USB drives and SD cards, connected to your iPad.

Connect a USB drive or an SD card reader

1. Attach the USB drive or SD card reader to the charging port on your iPad using a compatible connector or adapter.

Depending on your iPad model and external device, you may need the Lightning to USB Camera Adapter, Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter, USB-C to SD Card Camera Reader, or Lightning to SD Card Camera Reader (all sold separately).

On [models that support Thunderbolt / USB 4](#), you can connect multiple USB drives and other Thunderbolt devices to each other, and then connect the chain of devices to the charging port on your iPad.

Note: An external storage device must have only a single data partition, and it must be formatted as APFS, APFS (encrypted), macOS Extended (HFS+), exFAT (FAT64), FAT32, or FAT. To change the formatting of a storage device, use a Mac or PC.

2. Do any of the following:

- *Insert an SD memory card into a card reader:* Don't force the card into the slot on the reader; it fits only one way.
Note: You can import photos and videos from the memory card directly to the Photos app. See [Import and export photos and videos](#).
- *View the contents of the drive or memory card:* In a supported app (for example, Files), tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device below Locations. If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again at the bottom of the screen.
- *Disconnect the drive or card reader:* Remove it from the charging port on iPad.

External hard drives often require an external power source when used with iPad. On [models that support Thunderbolt / USB 4](#), if an external hard drive doesn't supply its own power, you can use a powered USB hub. If your iPad has a Lightning connector, you can use the Lightning to USB 3 Camera Adapter connected to a USB power adapter.

Connect iPad to Bluetooth accessories

Connect your iPad to Bluetooth® accessories to stream music and videos, play games, connect to keyboards, and more.

Pair your iPad with a Bluetooth accessory

1. Put your Bluetooth accessory in discovery mode. If you aren't sure how to make it discoverable, check the instructions that came with your accessory.
2. On your iPad, go to Settings  > Bluetooth and make sure Bluetooth is turned on.
3. Tap the name of the accessory when it appears onscreen, below the devices list.
You might need to enter the accessory PIN or passcode. Check the instructions that came with your accessory.

Note: iPad must be within about 33 feet (10 meters) of the Bluetooth accessory to pair.

If you have trouble pairing your accessory, see the Apple Support article [If you can't connect a Bluetooth accessory to your iPhone or iPad](#)

Unpair a Bluetooth accessory

1. On your iPad, go to Settings  > Bluetooth.
2. Tap ⓘ next to the accessory you want to unpair, then tap Forget This Device.
3. Tap Forget Device to confirm.

If you don't see the devices list, make sure [Bluetooth is turned on](#).

Note: If you unpair AirPods, they're automatically unpaired from other devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

Disconnect from all Bluetooth accessories

If you need to quickly disconnect from all Bluetooth accessories and devices without turning Bluetooth off, [open Control Center](#), then tap . Your Bluetooth accessories and devices disconnect from your iPad until the next day.

Note: The use of certain accessories with iPad may affect wireless performance. Not all iOS or iPadOS accessories are fully compatible with iPad. Turning on Airplane Mode may eliminate audio interference between iPad and an accessory. Reorienting or relocating iPad and the connected accessory may improve wireless performance.

Play audio from your iPad on a Bluetooth accessory from your iPad

After you [connect your iPad to a Bluetooth accessory](#), you can play and control the audio from your iPad on the accessory.

Play audio from your iPad on a Bluetooth audio accessory

1. Open an audio app such as Music or Podcasts on your iPad and play an item.
2. Tap , then tap your Bluetooth accessory.

While audio is playing, you can change the playback destination on the Lock Screen or in Control Center.

The playback destination returns to your iPad if you move the Bluetooth accessory out of range.

Note: For information about protecting your hearing from loud volume while listening to headphones with iPad, see [Use headphone audio-level features](#).

Improve the audio accuracy of third-party Bluetooth accessories and devices

You can improve the sound of third-party Bluetooth accessories and devices by specifying the device type (such as headphone, speaker, or hearing aid) on your iPad.

1. Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, then tap ⓘ next to the name of the accessory or device.
2. Tap Device Type, then choose the type of device.

Apple Watch with Fitness+ on iPad

Used in conjunction with Apple Watch, Apple Fitness+ is a subscription service that lets you choose from a catalog of workouts led by expert trainers. While you follow a workout on your iPad, in-session metrics like heart rate and calories burned (which are captured by your watch) appear on your screen. (watchOS 7.2 or later required; Apple Watch sold separately; Apple Fitness+ availability varies by country or region.)

See [Apple Fitness+ at a glance](#) in the Apple Fitness+ User Guide.

Print from iPad

Use AirPrint to print wirelessly to an AirPrint-enabled printer from apps such as Mail, Photos, Safari, and Freeform. Many apps available on the App Store also support AirPrint.

iPad and the printer must be on the same Wi-Fi network. See the Apple Support article [About AirPrint](#).

Choose an AirPrint-enabled printer

After confirming that your printer supports AirPrint and that your iPad and printer are on the same Wi-Fi network, do the following:

1. Open the app you want to print from.
2. Tap , , , or  (depending on the app).
3. Tap Print, tap No Printer Selected, then choose an AirPrint-enabled printer.

Print a document

1. Open the app you want to print from.
2. Tap , , , or  (depending on the app).
3. Tap Print. (If you don't see Print, swipe up.)

See the status of a print job

[Open the App Switcher](#), then tap Print Center.

The badge on the icon shows how many documents are in the queue.

To cancel a print job, select it in Print Center, then tap Cancel Printing.

Apple Polishing Cloth

If your iPad Pro 11-inch (M4) or iPad Pro 13-inch (M4) has nano-texture glass (optional and only available on models with 1 TB and 2 TB of storage), use the included Apple Polishing Cloth to clean it.

Use iPad with iPhone, Mac, and Windows devices

Use Continuity to work across Apple devices

With Continuity, you can use your iPad together with your iPhone, Mac, and Apple Watch to work smarter and move seamlessly between your devices.

What is Continuity?

Continuity is the way that your Apple devices work together. There are many Continuity features that allow you to easily work across your Apple devices, without ever missing a beat. There's no app to use Continuity—you just need to be [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on your Apple devices. Many features also require that you have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth®](#) turned on.

There are minimum system requirements for Continuity features; see the Apple Support article [System requirements for Continuity features on Apple devices](#).

Share content between devices

You can easily share content between your devices, whether it's copying text on an iPad and pasting it your Mac, sharing a file from your iPhone to your iPad, or handing off tasks between devices.

Quickly share photos, videos, contacts, and anything else, with anyone near you—wirelessly. AirDrop makes sharing to iPhone, iPad, and Mac as simple as dragging and dropping. See [Use AirDrop to send items to nearby devices](#).

Copy text, images, photos, and videos on one Apple device and then paste the content on another Apple device with Universal Clipboard. For example, you can copy a recipe from Safari on your iPad, then paste it into Notes on your nearby Mac. See [Cut, copy, and paste between iPad and other devices](#).

Start a document, an email, or a message on one device and pick up where you left off on another device. Handoff works with apps like Mail, Safari, Maps, Messages, Reminders, Calendar, Contacts, Pages, Numbers, and Keynote. See [Hand off tasks between devices](#).

Answer calls, send texts, and share your internet connection

Make it easy to stay connected when you set up your iPad to receive calls and text messages from your iPhone, or share its Personal Hotspot with other devices.

Relay calls from your iPhone to your iPad, as well as send and receive texts. You can also hand off a FaceTime call from one device to another, so if you start a call on your iPhone and want to continue it on a larger screen, it's easy to transfer the call to your iPad. See [Allow phone calls and text messages on your iPad](#).

If you have an iPad (Wi-Fi + Cellular), you can share internet using the Personal Hotspot on your iPad when you're within range of your Mac (and other devices)—no setup is required. Your iPad automatically appears in the Wi-Fi status menu—just select it to connect to the internet. See [Share your internet connection with Personal Hotspot](#).

Stream content to a larger screen

Want to see it on the big screen? Share, play, or present videos, music, photos, and more from your iPad to your Mac. You can also stream content from iPad to your Mac, an Apple TV, or an AirPlay 2-enabled TV. See [Stream video and audio from your iPad with AirPlay](#).

Use your iPad camera with your Mac

With the camera on your iPad, you can take a picture or scan a document and have it appear instantly on your Mac. (You can also use Markup tools on an image or draw a sketch on your iPad and have it appear on your Mac.) See [Insert sketches, photos, and scans on Mac](#).

You can also use your iPad camera when you make a FaceTime call on Apple TV. See [Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K \(2nd generation or later\)](#).

Extend your workspace with iPad and Mac

When your Mac is near an iPad, Universal Control allows you to use a single keyboard and trackpad, or a connected mouse, to work across the devices. You can even drag content between them—for example, you can sketch a drawing with Apple Pencil on iPad, then drag it to your Mac to drop into a Keynote presentation. See [Use a keyboard and mouse or trackpad across your Mac and iPad](#).

With Sidecar, your iPad becomes a second display for your Mac. You can either extend your Mac desktop, or show the same app on both screens but control different aspects of it. See [Use iPad as a second display for Mac](#).

Use AirDrop on iPad to send items to nearby Apple devices

With AirDrop, you can wirelessly send photos, videos, documents, and more to a nearby iPhone, iPad, or Mac. You can use AirDrop to send files to your own devices or to share files with others.

You can use AirDrop with an iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

Transfers are encrypted for security, and the recipient can accept or decline each transfer as it arrives.

Note: If you leave Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range after an AirDrop transfer is initiated, the transfer continues over the internet.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth®](#) turned on.
- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.

If you want to use AirDrop to send items between your Apple devices, [sign in to the same Apple Account](#) in order to automatically accept and save the items.

Turn on AirDrop

- *On an iPhone or iPad:* [Open Control Center](#), touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap . Tap Contacts Only or Everyone for 10 Minutes to choose who you want to receive items from.
Note: The Contacts Only and Everyone for 10 Minutes options are available only on devices with [minimum system requirements](#).
- *On a Mac:* Click  in the menu bar, then click . When it's blue, it's on.
To choose who can send items to you, click the right arrow next to AirDrop, then click Contacts Only or Everyone.

Send an item using AirDrop

To send an item to someone with AirDrop, both you and your recipient must have turned on AirDrop and chosen to accept items from either Contacts or Everyone. If a recipient chooses to only accept items from a contact, you must be in their contacts list and they need to have your Apple Account email address or phone number included in your contact card.

Then do any of the following:

- *On an iPhone or iPad:* Open the item, then tap , Share, , "...", or another button (depending on the app). Tap , then tap the recipient you want to share with. The recipients you see are those who are nearby, have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and are able to accept files from your device.
- *On a Mac:* Open the item on a Mac, click  in the toolbar, then click AirDrop. Select the recipient you want to share with. The recipients you see are those who are nearby, have Wi-Fi and Bluetooth turned on, and are able to accept files from your device.
Tip: You can also share items with AirDrop in the Finder. Go to the Finder, click AirDrop in the sidebar, then drag the item you want to share to the recipient you want to send it to.

To use AirDrop to securely share app and website passwords with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac, see [Use passwords on iPad](#).

Receive items with AirDrop

On your device, tap or click Accept on the AirDrop notification.

Most items are saved in the app that they're sent from. For example, if you use AirDrop to send a photo from the Photos app, it's saved in the Photos app on the other device.

Depending on the device, you might find your files in other places. On an iPhone or iPad, some items may be saved in the Files app. On a Mac, some items are automatically saved in the Downloads folder. You may also have the option to choose where to save items.

Note: If you opened AirDrop in the Finder on a Mac, the notification to accept or decline appears here, rather than in Notification Center.

If you send items from one of your Apple devices to another (for example, from your Mac to your iPad), and you're signed in to iCloud using the same Apple Account on both devices, the item is automatically accepted and saved.

Turn off cellular data for AirDrop

Cellular data charges may apply when you use AirDrop.

If you don't want to use cellular data when you're out of Bluetooth or Wi-Fi range, go to Settings > General > AirDrop, then turn off Use Cellular Data.

Typically this is a one-time setting, but you might want to change it if, for example, you're traveling and want to avoid roaming charges.

If AirDrop isn't working

- Make sure that both the sender and recipient have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#)® turned on and that you're both using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.
- Check that the recipient has their AirDrop settings set to [receive from Everyone or Contacts Only](#).
- If you're having difficulty getting AirDrop to work, restart your device and try again.
- For additional support, see the Apple Support articles [How to use AirDrop on your iPhone or iPad](#) and [Use AirDrop on your Mac](#).

AirDrop is best for sharing a small selection of files between devices. If you want to share many files between your Mac and other Apple devices, see [Transfer files from iPad to a storage device, a server, or the cloud](#)

Hand off tasks between iPad and your other devices

With Handoff, you can start a task on one device and complete it on another. For example, you can start an email on your iPad but then finish it on your Mac computer's bigger screen.

You can use Handoff with many Apple apps—for example, Safari, Mail, FaceTime, and Maps. Some third-party apps also work with Handoff.

You can use Handoff between your iPhone, iPad, and Mac. You can also hand off tasks between your Apple Watch and iPhone.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#)® turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Handoff](#).

Turn on Handoff

Turn on Handoff on both your iPad and your other Apple device.

- *On iPhone or iPad:* Go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then turn on Handoff.
 - *On your Mac:* Choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click General  in the sidebar, click AirDrop & Handoff, then turn “Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices” on or off.
- Note:* If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, click General, then select “Allow Handoff between this Mac and your iCloud devices.”

Hand off a task between your iPad and other devices

When your devices are near each other, an icon appears whenever a task can be handed off. Just tap or click the Handoff icon to continue working on your other device.

The Handoff icon appears in the following locations:

- *On an iPhone:* At the bottom of the [App Switcher](#) screen.
- *On an iPad:* At the right end of the Dock.
- *On a Mac:* Toward the right end of the Dock, if the Dock is at the bottom of the screen. If you set up the Dock to appear on the left or right side of your screen, the Handoff icon appears at the bottom of the Dock.

If Handoff isn't working

- Make sure that both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth®](#) turned on, and you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).
- Check that your app supports Handoff. Calendar, Contacts, FaceTime, Keynote, Mail, Maps, Pages, Numbers, Reminders, and Safari, as well as many third-party apps, allow Handoff.

Tip: When Handoff is on, you can use [Universal Clipboard](#) to copy and paste text, images, photos, and videos across devices.

Cut and paste between your iPad and other devices

With Universal Clipboard, you can copy content from one of your Apple devices and paste it into another. For example, you can copy text on your iPad and paste it into a note on your iPhone, or copy an image from a Safari webpage on your iPhone and paste into an email message on your Mac.

You can use Universal Clipboard with your iPhone, iPad, and Mac.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#), [Bluetooth®](#), and [Handoff](#) turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Universal Clipboard](#).

Copy and paste between your iPad and other devices

Universal Clipboard isn't a feature that you see, but it behaves just like copy and paste does on your iPad, except with Universal Clipboard, when you paste, you can do so into one of your other Apple devices, like an iPhone or a Mac.

1. Select the text or image on your iPad, then tap Copy.
2. On your other device, either tap (on another iPad or an iPhone) or place the pointer (on a Mac) where you want to paste the text or image, then tap or click Paste. You can also use keyboard shortcuts.

For more information on how to copy or paste on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac, see [How to copy and paste on an iPhone or iPad](#) or [How to copy and paste on a Mac](#).

Note: When you copy the content, it's available on your Clipboard for a short amount of time.

How to copy and paste on an iPhone or iPad

- *Select and copy text:* Double-tap with one finger to select a word or triple-tap with one finger to select a paragraph. (You can also move the grab points to adjust your selection.) Then tap Copy.
- *Select and copy an image:* Touch and hold to select an image, then tap Copy.
- *Paste text or an image:* Tap where you want to paste the text or image, then tap Paste.

To find additional gestures that allow you to copy and paste, see [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone](#) and [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPad](#).

How to copy and paste on a Mac

- *Select text or an image:* With your pointer, select the text or image you want to copy.
- *Copy text or an image:* Press Command-C or choose Edit > Copy from the menu bar.

- *Paste text or an image:* Move your pointer where you want to paste the text or image, then press Command-V, or choose Edit > Paste from the menu bar.

To find additional gestures that allow you to copy and paste, see [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone](#) and [Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPad](#).

If Universal Clipboard isn't working

- Make sure that you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Make sure that your iPhone and Mac have [Wi-Fi](#), [Bluetooth](#)®, and [Handoff](#) turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- If you're having difficulty getting Universal Clipboard to work, restart your devices and try again.

Universal Clipboard is best for sharing small selections of text or copied images between devices. If you want to share multiple files between your iPad and Mac, see [Transfer files from iPad to a storage device, a server, or the cloud](#)

Stream video and audio from your iPad with AirPlay

With AirPlay, you can stream video and audio from your iPad to a nearby Mac or TV. You can also mirror what's on your iPad screen.

You can use AirPlay with your iPad and a Mac, an Apple TV, or another TV.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) turned on and are connected to the same network.
- If you're streaming between your own Apple devices, it's useful to [sign in to the same Apple Account](#).
- To use AirPlay to stream content to a Mac, both devices meet [minimum system requirements](#).
- To use AirPlay to stream content to a TV, make sure you're using Apple TV or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

Set up a Mac to allow streaming from your iPad

1. On a Mac, choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click General in the sidebar (you may need to scroll down), then click AirDrop & Handoff.

Note: If you're using a Mac with macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, then click Sharing.

2. Turn on AirPlay Receiver.
3. Click the pop-up menu next to "Allow AirPlay for" and choose the devices that can use AirPlay to stream content to this Mac.
 - *Allow only your devices:* If you only want to allow AirPlay from devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, select "Current user."
 - *Allow any device:* Select "Anyone on the same network" or Everyone.

To require a password to use AirPlay with the Mac, select the option, then enter a password.

Stream photos or videos from your iPad to a Mac or TV

You can stream photos and videos from your iPad to a Mac, an Apple TV, or an AirPlay 2-enabled smart TV.

1. On your iPad, find the photo or video that you want to stream.
2. Tap .

Note: In some apps, you might need to tap a different button first. For example, in the Photos app, tap , then tap AirPlay.



3. Choose your Mac or TV from the list.
4. To show playback controls on the Mac, move the pointer over the video playing on the Mac screen.
5. To stop streaming, on your iPad, tap AirPlay in the app you're streaming from, then tap your iPad on the list.

Note: You can set up your iPad to discover and automatically connect to any Apple TV or smart TV that you use frequently when you play content from apps that you use regularly with AirPlay. To turn this feature on or off on your iPad, go to Settings > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then choose Automatic, Never, or Ask.

Share your iPad screen on a Mac or TV

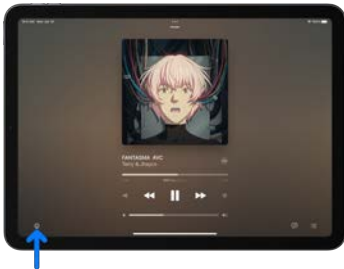
1. [Open Control Center](#) on your iPad.
2. Tap , then choose your Mac or TV as the playback destination.

To switch back, open Control Center, tap , then tap Stop Mirroring.

Play audio from iPad on Mac or TV

You can use AirPlay to stream audio from your iPad to a Mac or TV. If you're streaming to your Mac, make sure you've set up the Mac to allow streaming from another device first. See [Allow streaming from another device](#).

1. Open an audio app, such as Podcasts  or Music  on your iPad, then choose an item to play.
2. Tap , then choose a playback destination.



You can also use AirPlay to stream audio from your iPad to a HomePod. To learn more, see [Play audio on HomePod using an iOS or iPadOS device](#).

Use AirPlay in your hotel room

If you stay in a hotel room with a TV that supports AirPlay, you can use it to play movies, TV shows, music, and more from your iPad.

1. Open Camera  on your iPad.
2. If it's not already on, turn on the room's TV and locate the AirPlay QR code.
3. [Scan the QR code with your iPad camera](#), then follow the onscreen instructions to connect to your hotel Wi-Fi (if you're not already connected) and the room's TV.
4. Use your iPad to display content on the TV screen by [streaming photos or video](#), [mirroring your screen](#), or [playing audio](#). Choose your hotel TV as the playback destination.
5. To stop streaming or mirroring, tap the AirPlay or Screen Mirroring button ( or ) on your iPad, then tap your iPad in the list or tap Stop Mirroring.

Note: AirPlay in hotels is available in certain countries and regions.

If AirPlay isn't working

- Make sure that both of your devices are on the same network.
- Check that your Mac is set up to [allow streaming from another device](#).
- See the Apple Support article [If screen mirroring or streaming isn't working on your AirPlay-compatible device](#)

Use iPhone to allow calls and text messages on your iPad

You can relay phone calls and text messages through your iPhone to your iPad, so it's easy to stay in touch no matter what device you're on.

Use your iPhone to make and receive phone calls or messages on your iPad.

Note: Cellular charges may apply. Wi-Fi Calling isn't available from all carriers.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#)® turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- FaceTime is set up on your iPhone and iPad. See [Get started with FaceTime on iPhone](#) and [Get started with FaceTime](#).

Set up your iPhone to allow phone calls on your iPad

1. Go to Settings  > Cellular.

Note: If your iPhone has Dual SIMs, choose a line (below SIMs).

2. Do any of the following:

- Tap **Calls on Other Devices**, turn on **Allow Calls on Other Devices**, then choose the devices you want to allow to make and receive calls.
The devices you choose can make and receive calls when they're near your iPhone, connected to Wi-Fi, and signed in to the same Apple Account.
- Tap **Wi-Fi Calling**, turn on **Wi-Fi Calling on This iPhone**, then turn on **Add Wi-Fi Calling For Other Devices**.
Other devices can make and receive calls over Wi-Fi, even when they're not near your iPhone, as long as they're signed in to the same Apple Account.

3. On your iPad, go to **Settings** > **FaceTime**, then turn on **Allow Calls on Other Devices**.

Make or receive phone calls on your iPad

After you set up your iPhone to allow calls on your other devices, you can make and receive phone calls on your iPad and Mac.

- *Make a call:* Tap a phone number in **Contacts**, **Calendar**, **FaceTime**, **Messages**, **Search**, or **Safari**. Or open **FaceTime**, tap or click **New FaceTime**, then enter a contact or phone number.
If you make a call from another device by relaying it through your iPad with Dual SIM, the call is made using your default voice line.
- *Receive a call:* Swipe or tap the notification to answer or ignore the call.

Stop receiving phone calls on your iPad

If you no longer want to receive phone calls on your iPad, you can turn off the option on your iPhone.

1. Go to **Settings** > **FaceTime** on your iPhone.
2. Turn off **Allow Calls on Other Devices**.

Send and receive messages on your iPad

You can send and receive messages—both iMessage and SMS/MMS messages—on your iPad. For more information on iMessage and SMS/MMS messages, see [What is the difference between iMessage and SMS/MMS](#)

To send and receive iMessages on iPad, see [Set up iMessage on iPad](#).

To send and receive SMS/MMS messages on your iPad, see [Access your messages on all your Apple devices](#).

In addition to making and receiving phone calls on your iPad, you can also use Handoff to transfer a FaceTime call from one device to another. See [Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPad to your other Apple devices for iPad](#). For more information about Wi-Fi calls, see the Apple Support article [Make a call with Wi-Fi Calling](#).

Share your internet connection from iPad (Wi-Fi + Cellular) with Personal Hotspot

You can share the internet connection from your iPad (Wi-Fi + Cellular) with other devices using a feature called Instant Hotspot. Instant Hotspot uses your iPad device's Personal Hotspot, and is useful when your other device doesn't have internet access from a Wi-Fi network.

There are several ways to connect other devices to your Personal Hotspot:

- Connect your Mac to your iPad through Wi-Fi settings.
- Pair your two devices with Bluetooth®.
- Connect your Mac to your iPad with a cable.

You can share the Personal Hotspot on your iPad with another iPad, an iPhone, a Mac, a Windows device, and more.

Note: Personal Hotspot isn't available with all carriers. Additional fees may apply. The number of devices that can join your Personal Hotspot at one time depends on your carrier and iPad model. Contact your carrier for more information.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- The devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Instant Hotspot](#).

If you're sharing your Personal Hotspot with your Apple devices, it's faster to connect if you [sign in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.

Note: You can only use Personal Hotspot by sharing your iPad device's cellular internet connection. You can't connect your iPad to a Wi-Fi network, and then share that network with another device.

Set up Personal Hotspot on iPad

On your iPad, go to **Settings** > **Personal Hotspot**, then tap **Allow Others to Join**.

Optionally, you can change the Wi-Fi password. Your Wi-Fi network name is your device name, which you can change in **Settings** > **General** > **About**.

Note: If Cellular Data is turned on in **Settings** > **Cellular**, but you don't see **Set Up Personal Hotspot** as an option, contact your carrier about adding Personal Hotspot to your plan.

Turn Personal Hotspot on and off on iPad

On your iPad, [open Control Center](#). Tap  to make your Personal Hotspot discoverable.

You can choose who is allowed to use your Personal Hotspot, set a password, and—if you're in a Family Sharing group—decide if you want to automatically share your Personal Hotspot with specific family members.

Connect to a Personal Hotspot with Wi-Fi

You can connect another device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPad using Wi-Fi settings. You can connect another iPad, an iPhone, a Mac, a Windows device, and many other devices that are able to connect to a Wi-Fi network.

1. On the device that you want to connect to your iPad device's Personal Hotspot, do any of the following:
 - *On an iPhone with Touch ID:* Swipe down from the top-right edge to open Control Center. Tap  to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPad.
 - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Swipe up from the bottom to open Control Center. Tap  to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPad.
 - *On an iPad:* Swipe down from the top-right edge to open Control Center. Tap  to turn Wi-Fi on, then choose your iPad.
 - *On a Mac:* Click  in the menu bar, then choose your iPad.
 - *On a Windows device or other device:* Follow the manufacturer's instructions to connect to a Personal Hotspot.
2. Enter the password you set up for your Personal Hotspot to connect. If you're connecting another Apple device and you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) on both devices, you don't need to enter a password.

Note: When a Mac is connected to your Personal Hotspot, a blue band appears at the top of your iPad screen, and  appears in the status bar of the connected Mac.

When you're not using the hotspot, your devices automatically disconnect to save battery life.

Connect to a Personal Hotspot with Bluetooth

You can connect a Mac or Windows device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPad using Bluetooth instead of Wi-Fi. Both devices must have Bluetooth turned on.

1. On your Mac, choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click Bluetooth in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.)

Note: If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, then click Bluetooth.
2. On your iPad, go to Settings > Bluetooth to make it discoverable.
3. On your Mac, select your iPad when it appears. (It may take a moment.)

As soon as it's connected by Bluetooth, your Mac is able to use your iPad device's cellular connection.

To connect your Windows device to your iPad using Bluetooth, follow the manufacturer's directions to set up a Bluetooth network connection.

Connect to a Personal Hotspot with a USB cable

You can connect a Mac or Windows device to the Personal Hotspot on your iPad using the USB cable that came with your iPad (or another cable that matches the ports on your iPad and other device).

Note: If you see an alert on your iPad that says Trust This Computer? tap Trust. You may be asked to enter your device passcode to proceed. If you see an alert on your Mac that says "Allow accessory to connect?" click Allow.

As soon as it's connected by a cable, your Mac or Windows device is able to use your iPad device's cellular connection.

If your Personal Hotspot isn't working

- Make sure that your devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- Your devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another.
- See the Apple Support article [If Personal Hotspot is not working on your iPhone or iPad \(Wi-Fi + Cellular\)](#) for additional troubleshooting steps.
- Maximize compatibility in Settings > Personal Hotspot, then enable Maximize Compatibility. Maximize Compatibility may reduce performance for devices connected to your Personal Hotspot when turned on.

When you share a Personal Hotspot from your iPad, it uses cellular data for the internet connection. To monitor your cellular data network usage, go to Settings > Cellular. See [View or change cellular data settings](#).

If you use Family Sharing, you can share your Personal Hotspot with any member of your family. See [Set up Family Sharing](#).

Use iPad as a webcam for Apple TV

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords ">

ipde-do-not-answer

With Continuity Camera, you can use your iPad as a webcam or microphone for your Apple TV 4K, and take advantage of the powerful iPad camera and video effects for apps and FaceTime calls.

Here are some things you can do with Continuity Camera on Apple TV:

- [Use your iPad as a webcam in FaceTime](#).
- [Sing along to Apple Music and appear onscreen with visual effects](#)

Insert sketches, photos, and scans from your iPad on Mac

With Continuity Camera and Continuity Sketch, you can draw a sketch, take a photo, or scan a document using your nearby iPad and have it appear instantly on your Mac, exactly where you need it—for example, in an email, note, or folder. You can also mark up a file on your Mac with your iPad using Continuity Markup.

You can use Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, and Continuity Markup with an iPad and Mac.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#)® turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Both devices [meet minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, and Continuity Markup](#).

Depending on where the photo or scan is inserted, you can mark it up or adjust other aspects, such as crop it or apply a filter.

Insert a sketch, photo, or scan from your iPad

You can draw a sketch on your iPad and have it appear on your Mac with Continuity Sketch, or take a photo or scan a document on your iPad and have it appear on your Mac with Continuity Camera.

1. On your Mac, [Control-click](#) where you want to insert the sketch or photo—for example, in an open window, like a note or email message.

You can also Control-click the desktop or a folder in a Finder window.

2. Choose Import from iPad, then choose Add Sketch or Take Photo.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Add a sketch:* On your iPad, draw a sketch using your finger.

On iPad, you can also use Apple Pencil.

- *Take a photo:* On your iPad, take the photo, then tap Use Photo or Retake.

- *Scan a document:* On your iPad, take the scan. Your iPad detects the edges of the document and autocorrects any skewing of the image. If you want to adjust the area included in the scan, drag the frame or its edges. When you're ready, tap Keep Scan or Retake. You can continue to scan documents until you're done, then tap Save.

On your Mac, the sketch, picture, or scan appears in the location you chose in step 1. If you added it from the desktop or a folder, it appears as a file.

Depending on where the photo or scan is inserted, you can mark it up or adjust other aspects, such as crop it or apply a filter.

Note: Scans you take on your iPad aren't saved on the device.

Use your iPad to mark up a file on your Mac

Use your iPad to add text, make drawings, rotate, and crop images, PDF documents, and more on your Mac, called Continuity Markup.

1. On your Mac, open the Finder.
2. Select the file you want to mark up, then press the Space bar to open a preview window.
3. Click  in the toolbar.
4. Click the Annotate button, then use the [Markup tools](#) to draw, add text or shapes, use the magnifier, and more.

On iPad, you can also use Apple Pencil.

5. When you're done, tap Done on your iPad.
6. To save your changes, click Done on your Mac.

If Continuity Camera, Continuity Sketch, or Continuity Markup isn't working:

- Make sure you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Make sure that both devices have [Wi-Fi](#) and [Bluetooth](#) turned on.
- Make sure that your devices are within 30 feet of one another.
- Make sure your device meets [minimum system requirements for Continuity Camera](#).

Use iPad as a second display for your Mac

With Sidecar, you can extend the workspace of your Mac by using your iPad as a second display. The extended workspace allows you to use different apps on the different screens, or to use the same app across both screens, but control different aspects of it. For example, when you use the same app on both screens, you can view your artwork on your Mac while you use Apple Pencil and an app's tools and palettes on iPad.

You can use Sidecar with your Mac and iPad.



Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#), [Bluetooth®](#), and [Handoff](#) turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- The devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Sidecar](#).

Set up Sidecar

1. On your Mac, choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click Displays in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.)

Note: If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, then click Displays.

You can also connect your Mac and iPad using a USB cable. You can use the USB cable that came with your iPad or another cable that matches the ports on your Mac and iPad.

2. Click  on the right, then choose your iPad.

3. To change Sidecar options (for example, to show a sidebar or Touch Bar on your iPad or extend or mirror your Mac display) choose your iPad in Displays, then choose from the available options.

You can also adjust the arrangement of your Mac and iPad displays. Click Arrange, then drag your displays into a new position.

Tip: You can also use Control Center to set up Sidecar. Click screen mirroring in the menu bar, click Screen Mirroring, then choose your iPad. You can adjust some Display settings here, or click Display Settings for more options.

Use Sidecar with your Mac or iPad

Do any of the following:

- *Move windows between Mac and iPad:* Drag a window to the edge of the screen until the pointer appears on the other device. Or while using an app, choose Window > "Move to".
- *Use the sidebar on iPad:* With your finger or Apple Pencil, tap the icons in the sidebar to show or hide the menu bar, show  or hide  the Dock, or show the onscreen keyboard . Or tap one or more modifier keys, such as Control[^], to use keyboard shortcuts.
- *Use the Touch Bar on iPad:* With your finger or Apple Pencil, tap any button in the Touch Bar. The buttons available vary depending on the app or task.
- *Use Apple Pencil on iPad:* With your Apple Pencil, tap to select items such as menu commands, checkboxes, or files. If your Apple Pencil supports it (and you selected the option in Displays settings), you can double-tap the lower section of your Apple Pencil to switch drawing tools in some apps. See the Apple Support article [Pair Apple Pencil with your iPad](#).
- *Use gestures on iPad:* Use basic gestures, such as tap, swipe, scroll, and zoom, as well as gestures for entering and editing text. See the [Learn basic gestures to interact with iPad](#).
- *On iPad, switch between the Mac desktop and the iPad Home Screen:* To show the Home Screen, swipe up from the bottom edge of your iPad. To return to the Mac desktop, swipe up, then tap .

Turn off Sidecar

When you're ready to stop using your iPad as a second display for your Mac, do one of the following:

- *On a Mac:* Click  in the menu bar, click Display, then deselect your iPad from the list below "Mirror or extend to."
- *On an iPad:* Tap  at the bottom of the sidebar.

If Sidecar isn't working

- Make sure you're [signed in with the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Make sure that both devices have [Wi-Fi](#), [Bluetooth](#), and [Handoff](#) turned on and are on the same Wi-Fi network.
- Make sure that your devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another,
- For more troubleshooting tips, see the Sidecar system requirements in the Apple Support article [Use an iPad as a second display for a Mac](#)

Use a keyboard and mouse or trackpad to control Mac and iPad

With Universal Control, you can use the keyboard and mouse or trackpad connected to your Mac to work across your Mac and iPad when they're near each other. You can even connect an additional Mac or iPad and work across three devices. When you use Universal Control, you can open and use apps, enter text, and drag items across devices. If an external keyboard and mouse or trackpad are connected to your iPad, you can use them to work across both devices too.

You can use Universal Control with your Mac and iPad.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- Both devices have [Wi-Fi](#), [Bluetooth®](#), [Handoff](#), and [two-factor authentication](#) turned on.
- You're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- The devices must be within 30 feet (10 meters) of each other.
- Both devices meet [minimum system requirements for Universal Control](#).
- If your Mac doesn't have a built-in trackpad or keyboard, you must connect a keyboard and mouse or trackpad to your Mac. To connect an Apple keyboard, mouse, or trackpad, see [Connect an Apple wireless keyboard, mouse, or trackpad with Mac](#).

Set up Universal Control

To connect your Mac and iPad, make sure that both devices are awake and unlocked, then do one of the following:

- On your Mac, use your mouse or trackpad to move the pointer to the right or left edge of the screen, whichever is closest to your other device. Pause, then move the pointer slightly past the edge of the screen. When a border appears at the edge of the other device, continue moving the pointer to the other device's screen.
- On your Mac, click  in the menu bar, click Display, then choose your other device below "Link keyboard and mouse to." Then use your mouse or trackpad to move the pointer past the edge of the Mac screen until it appears on your other device.

After you establish a connection, you can move the pointer across screens until one of your devices goes to sleep or you disconnect them.

Use your Mac keyboard and mouse or trackpad with your iPad

Many actions and gestures that you can do on your iPad with an external mouse or trackpad also work with your Mac mouse or trackpad. See [Mouse actions and gestures](#) and [Trackpad gestures](#).

With your Mac keyboard, you can also use many iPad features available with external keyboards. See the keyboard topics in the Accessories chapter, beginning with [Switch between keyboards](#).

Change the screen arrangement between your Mac and iPad

The direction in which you move the pointer when establishing the Universal Control connection determines which side of the display you use to move the pointer across devices.

You can adjust the arrangement of your devices.

1. On your Mac, choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click Displays in the sidebar. (You may need to scroll down.) On the right, scroll down, then click Arrange.
Note: If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, then click Displays.
2. Drag the iPad image to the desired position.

Disconnect Universal Control between your Mac and iPad

You can disconnect your Mac and iPad to temporarily stop using Universal Control.

Do one of the following:

- *On your iPad:* Press the top button on your iPad to put it to sleep.
- *On your Mac:* Click  in the menu bar, click Display, then deselect your iPad, below "Link keyboard and mouse to."

Stop your Mac and iPad from automatically connecting

After you set up Universal Control, your Mac and iPad or another Mac automatically reconnect whenever they're close to each other and their screens are unlocked. To stop your Mac and iPad or another Mac from automatically connecting, you can turn off this option on your Mac.

On your Mac, choose Apple menu  > System Settings, then click Displays in the sidebar (you may need to scroll down). On the right, click Advanced, then turn off "Automatically reconnect to any nearby Mac or iPad."

Note: If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, then click Displays.

Turn off Universal Control

You can turn off Universal Control to prevent the use of your Mac keyboard and mouse or trackpad across your iPad and other devices.

1. On your Mac, choose Apple menu  > System Settings, click Displays in the sidebar (you may need to scroll down), then click Universal Control.
Note: If your Mac has macOS 12.5 or earlier, choose Apple menu  > System Preferences, click Displays, then click Universal Control.
2. Click Advanced on the right, then do one of the following:
 - *Turn off all Universal Control connections:* Turn off "Allow your pointer and keyboard to move between any nearby Mac or iPad."
 - *Prevent a connection when moving the pointer to the edge of the screen:* Turn off "Push through the edge of a display to connect to a nearby Mac or iPad."

To prevent connecting your iPad keyboard and mouse or trackpad to your Mac, on iPad go to Settings  > General > AirPlay & Continuity, then turn off Cursor and Keyboard.

If Universal Control isn't working

- Make sure you're [signed in with the same Apple Account](#) on both devices.
- Make sure that both devices have [Wi-Fi](#), [Bluetooth](#), [Handoff](#), and [two-factor authentication](#) turned on and are on the same Wi-Fi network.
- Make sure that your devices are within 30 feet (10 meters) of one another,
- For more troubleshooting tips, see the Sidecar system requirements in the Apple Support article [Universal Control: Use a single keyboard and mouse between Mac and iPad.](#)

Connect iPad and your computer with a cable

You can use a cable to directly connect your iPad to a Mac with OS X 10.9 or later, or to a Windows device with Windows 7 or later.

Using the charging cable for your iPad, connect iPad to the USB port on your computer. If the cable isn't compatible with the port on your computer, you'll need to use an adapter (sold separately).

Note: If an alert appears on your iPad asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. (See the Apple Support article [About the 'Trust This Computer' alert](#).)

After you connect your iPad to a computer with a cable, you can do any of the following:

- [Set up iPad](#) for the first time.
- [Share your internet connection with Personal Hotspot](#) with your computer.
- [Use your computer to erase all content and settings](#) from iPad.
- [Update iPad](#) using your computer.
- [Sync content or transfer files](#) between your Mac and iPad.
- [Sync content or transfer files](#) between your Windows device and iPad.

The iPad battery charges when iPad is connected to your computer and your computer is connected to power.

Transfer files between your iPad and computer

Transfer files between your iPad and your computer

There are multiple ways to transfer your photos, videos, and other files between your iPad and computer.

- *Quickly transfer files wirelessly:* See [Use AirDrop to send items to nearby devices](#).
- *Use iCloud:* See [Automatically keep your files up to date with iCloud](#).
- *Use an external storage device, a file server, or a service like Box or DropBox* See [Transfer files from iPad to a storage device, a server, or the cloud](#).
- *Use a cable:* For Mac, see [Connect iPad and your computer with a cable](#). For Windows devices, see [Transfer files between your PC and devices with iTunes](#).

Important: Transferring, sharing, or syncing may be restricted for some types of data, such as files saved in an app's proprietary format, files saved in older software versions, and files protected by copyrights.

Transfer files wirelessly between your iPad and computer with email, messages, or AirDrop

Use email to transfer files

- To transfer files using Mail on your iPad, see [Add email attachments](#) and [Download email attachments](#).
- To transfer files using Mail on your Mac, see [Add attachments to emails in Mail on Mac](#) and [Save email attachments in Mail on Mac](#).

Use text messages to transfer files

- To transfer files using Messages on your iPad, see [Turn on AirDrop](#).
- To transfer files using Messages on your Mac, see [Send photos and videos in Messages on Mac](#).

Use AirDrop to transfer files

- To transfer files using AirDrop on your iPad, see [Use AirDrop to send items to nearby devices](#).
- To transfer files using AirDrop on your Mac, see [Use AirDrop on your Mac to send files to devices near you](#).

Files sent to your iPad are located in the app where you saved the file or in the app that opens automatically when the file is received. Files sent to your Mac are located in the app where you saved the file or in the Downloads folder.

Transfer files or sync content between your iPad and computer with the Finder or iTunes

You can [connect your iPad to a computer](#) to do the following:

- Transfer files used by iPad apps that support file sharing.

- Sync supported content like movies and podcasts.

Depending on your computer, you use either the Finder or iTunes on your computer to sync content and transfer files.

Transfer files for supported apps

You can transfer files by copying them from one device to another using the Finder or iTunes. Only files from iPad apps that support file sharing can be transferred.

- *To transfer files with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See the Apple Support article [Use the Finder to share files between your Mac and your iPhone](#).
- *To transfer files with your Windows device or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article [Use iTunes to share files between your computer and your iOS or iPadOS device](#).

Sync supported content

Syncing with the Finder or iTunes keeps supported content up to date between your iPad and computer. For example, when you add a movie to your iPad, you can sync so that the movie also appears on your computer. After you set up syncing between your devices with a cable, you can set them to sync wirelessly and automatically whenever they're connected to the same Wi-Fi network.

You can sync content like music, movies, TV shows, podcasts, photos, contacts, and calendars.

- *To sync content with your Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* See [Sync content between your Mac and iPad](#) in the Mac User Guide.
- *To sync content with your Windows device or Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier):* See the Apple Support article [Use iTunes to sync your iPad with your computer](#).

If the files you want to share between your iPad and computer aren't supported by syncing or transferring with the Finder or iTunes, see [Transfer files between devices](#) for other options.

Automatically keep your files up to date on your iPad and computer with iCloud

You can store your files, photos, videos, and more in iCloud so you can access them and keep them synced on all your devices. Any change you make to a file on a device that's signed in to iCloud appears on all devices that are signed in.

You can also access your information in iCloud from anywhere by using a supported web browser. See [System requirements for iCloud](#).

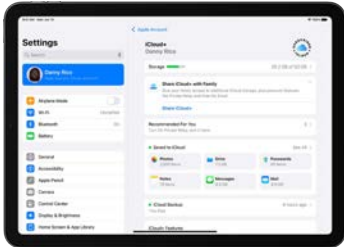
Important: OS X 10.10 (or later) or Windows 7 (or later) are required. You must be [signed in to your Apple Account](#) on both your iPad and your computer, along with any web browsers you might be using.

Set up iCloud on your iPad

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] on your iPad.

If you don't see your name, tap Apple Account, enter your Apple Account email or phone number, then enter your password.

2. Tap iCloud, then turn on items you want to keep there.



For example, turn on iCloud Drive to make your files in iCloud Drive available to your computer.

Set up iCloud on your Mac

1. Follow the instructions to [set up iCloud features on Mac](#) in the Mac User Guide.
2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPad.

Set up iCloud on your Windows device

1. Follow the instructions to [set up iCloud](#) in the iCloud for Windows User Guide.
2. Turn on the same items that you turned on for iPad, then click Apply.

iCloud comes with an email account and 5 GB of free storage for your data. For more storage and additional features, you can [Subscribe to iCloud+](#).

Note: Some iCloud features have minimum system requirements. iCloud may not be available in all areas, and iCloud features may vary by area. See the Apple Support article [System requirements for iCloud](#). For information about features, go to apple.com/icloud/.

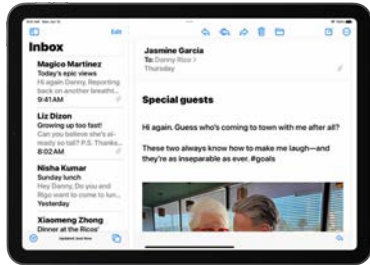
Accessibility

Get started with accessibility features on iPad

Customize iPad in ways that work best for you with features for vision, hearing, mobility, speech, and cognitive accessibility—whether you need them temporarily or on an ongoing basis.

You can [turn on accessibility features when you set up your iPad for the first time](#), or at any time in Settings  > Accessibility.

Vision



Use the built-in screen reader to hear what's on the screen and navigate iPad with gestures. Or make text bigger, zoom in on the screen, adjust display colors, and more.

You can even use your iPad as a magnifying glass, and hold it up to get descriptions of your surroundings if you can't see them.

[Learn more about accessibility features for vision](#)

Mobility



Navigate and perform actions on iPad using just your eyes or spoken commands. Or connect an assistive device or an external keyboard and use it to control iPad.

You can also make it easier to use gestures and set other options so iPad responds best to your touch.

[Learn more about accessibility features for mobility](#)

Hearing

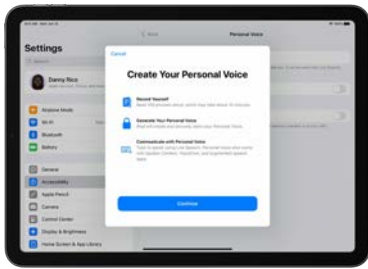


Get real-time captioning of spoken audio from an app or live conversation, turn on flash notifications, have iPad recognize sounds, and more.

You can also pair hearing devices with your iPad, and adjust headphone audio so it's right for you.

[Learn more about accessibility features for hearing](#)

Speech

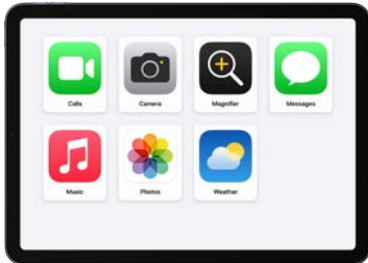


Create a custom voice that sounds like you, or choose one of dozens of system voices, then use it to have what you type spoken out loud.

You can also have Siri recognize a wider range of speech patterns, or teach iPad to perform an action when you speak a word or sound of your choosing.

[Learn more about accessibility features for speech](#)

Cognitive



iPadOS accessibility features can help you—or someone you care for—use iPad with greater independence. You can set up an iPad with a simplified interface for someone with a cognitive disability, or temporarily lock iPad to one app when you let a child use it.

[Learn more about cognitive accessibility features](#)

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with Siri, the click of a button, or from Control Center. See [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#).

Use accessibility features during iPad setup

iPad has accessibility features that you can turn on the first time you turn on your iPad, to make it easier to set up and personalize other iPad features.

Hear what's onscreen with VoiceOver

VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—tells you what's happening onscreen.

1. After iPad is turned on, triple-click the top button (on an iPad with Face ID) or triple-click the Home button (on other iPad models) to [turn on VoiceOver](#).
2. Do any of the following and more:
 - *Speak the entire screen:* Swipe up with two fingers.
 - *Find out what you're touching:* Touch the screen or drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. Swipe right to elect the next item. Tap with four fingers near the top to select the first item on the screen.
 - *Select an item:* Tap to select a button or link, and activate it by double-tapping.
 - *Scroll to another page:* Swipe with three fingers.
 - *Open the onscreen rotor:* Turn two fingers on the screen, as if rotating a dial. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor](#).

Note: When VoiceOver is on, basic gestures don't work as usual. See [Use VoiceOver gestures](#) and [Operate iPad when VoiceOver is on](#).

You can adjust audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, how much detail VoiceOver provides, and more in [VoiceOver settings](#).

Zoom in on part of the screen

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers, then use the slider to set a magnification level.
2. Use three fingers to scroll around the zoomed-in screen.

See [Zoom in](#).

Turn on other features during setup

You can turn on additional accessibility features from the Quick Start screen.

Tap  to turn on or adjust settings for any of the following:

- [VoiceOver](#)
- [Zoom](#)
- [Display & Text Size](#)
- [Motion](#)

- [Spoken Content](#)
- Touch (such as [AssistiveTouch](#) and [Touch Accommodations](#), [Switch Control](#), or any [external keyboard](#).)

If you've set up accessibility features on an iPhone or iPad that's nearby, you can transfer your settings to your new iPad with Quick Start—just follow the onscreen instructions. See [Turn on and set up iPad](#). (See [Move from an Android device to iPad](#) if your previous device wasn't made by Apple.)

Change Siri accessibility settings on iPad

You can change how quickly or when Siri responds, use text to make requests to Siri, have Siri listen for atypical speech patterns, have Siri audibly share notifications, and announce and end calls.

Tell Siri when and how to respond to requests

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Set how long Siri waits for you to finish speaking:* Below Siri Pause Time, choose Default, Longer, or Longest.
 - *Change how fast Siri speaks:* Adjust the slider below Speaking Rate.
 - *Decide when Siri responds aloud or in text:* Choose an option below Spoken Responses. You can also [change how Siri responds](#).
 - *Use Siri even when iPad is covered or facing down:* Turn on Always Listen for "Hey Siri."
To have Siri respond when iPad is facing up, go to Settings > Siri, then turn on Listen for "Siri" or "Hey Siri."
 - *Require "Siri" or "Hey Siri" in order to interrupt Siri:* Turn on Require "Siri" for Interruptions. This can be useful if you use VoiceOver or Voice Control and don't want VoiceOver speech or Voice Control commands to interrupt Siri.

To change how you activate Siri, see [Set up Siri](#) and [Change when Siri responds](#).

Type instead of speak to Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Type to Siri.
2. To make a request, [activate Siri](#), then interact with Siri using the keyboard and text field.

Have Siri recognize a wider range of speech patterns

You can have Siri listen for atypical speech. This may be helpful if you have an acquired or progressive condition that affects speech, such as cerebral palsy, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), or stroke.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Listen for Atypical Speech.

You can also teach iPad to perform an action when you speak a word or make a sound of your choosing. See [Use Vocal Shortcuts](#).

Announce calls and notifications for specific apps

You can have Siri [announce notifications](#) from apps like Messages on your iPad speaker, [supported headphones](#), and on [MFi hearing devices](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, then turn on Announce Notifications on Speaker.
2. Tap Announce Notifications, then for each app, choose whether to announce all notifications or only time-sensitive notifications.

End calls with Siri

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Siri, tap Call Hangup, then turn on Call Hangup.
Note: Available in select languages and [on supported models](#). Requires download of speech models.)
2. To end a call, say something like: "Siri, hang up." (Participants on the call will hear you.)

You can also [route and automatically answer calls](#) or have Siri [announce and answer calls](#).

Quickly turn accessibility features on or off on iPad

You can quickly turn many accessibility features on or off by clicking an iPad button. You can also use Control Center, Siri, or Vocal Shortcuts.

Use the Accessibility Shortcut

Triple-click the top button or Home button to turn the accessibility features of your choice on or off.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select the features you want.
If you select only one feature, the feature is immediately turned on or off when you click the button shortcut.
2. Triple-click one of the following:
 - The Home button (on an iPad with a Home button)
 - The top button (on other iPad models)

To have iPad recognize a slower triple-click, see [Adjust the top or Home button](#).
3. Tap the feature you want to turn on or off (if Accessibility Shortcut is set up with more than one feature).

Note: To add some features—like [Assistive Access](#) or [Guided Access](#)—to the Accessibility Shortcut, you need to set them up first. You can use the Accessibility Shortcut to enter and exit Assistive Access, but you can't use it to turn on other features while Assistive Access is active. To use the Accessibility Shortcut while Guided Access is on, you must turn on Accessibility Shortcut in [Guided Access settings](#)

Use Control Center

You can add accessibility features to [Control Center](#) for quick access when you swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen.

1. To change the features available in Control Center, swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen, tap+ in the top-left corner, then tap Add a Control.
2. Tap a control to add it to Control Center. Scroll down to see more controls, including categories of controls for accessibility, hearing, mobility, and vision.

You can change which features appear when you tap  in Control Center. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Control Center, then add or remove features.

Use Siri

Say something like: “Turn on Voice Control” or “Turn off VoiceOver.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Use a Vocal Shortcut

You can teach iPad to turn on an accessibility feature when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing. See [Use Vocal Shortcuts](#).

Vision

Accessibility features for vision on iPad

With built-in accessibility features for vision on iPad, you can make it easier to see what's on the screen, or you can hear what's on the screen spoken out loud. You can even use your iPad as a magnifying glass, and hold it up to get descriptions of what's around you if you can't see it.

To explore accessibility features for vision, go to Settings  > Accessibility. Vision features are at the top.

Hear what's on the screen

Have the built-in screen reader speak what's on the screen. Navigate your iPad with gestures, or with a connected keyboard or braille display.

[Turn on and practice VoiceOver](#)

Even if VoiceOver is off, have iPad read all text on the screen, what you're typing, and more.

[Hear what's on the screen or typed](#)

Get spoken descriptions of visual content in movies, TV shows, and other media, when available.

[Hear audio descriptions for video content](#)

	Control iPad with VoiceOver		Speak onscreen text
	Hear descriptions of video		
Tip: With Siri and Dictation, you can complete common tasks and enter text using just your voice. Get information about your surroundings Have iPad read text on household appliances, ATMs, and more. Read aloud text and labels around you Hold up iPad and get information about what your camera is pointed at, including when people, doors, or text are detected. Get live descriptions of visual information around you Use iPad as a magnifying glass to zoom in on items around you. Magnify and examine objects around you			
	Point at text and hear it spoken		Hear about your surroundings
	Get a closer look		

Make text and other onscreen content larger

Enlarge what you're viewing—the entire screen or one part of it.

[Zoom in](#)

Adjust the reading size for text across iPad apps and system features.

[Make text easier to read](#)

Display a separate window with a larger version of the text that you're typing.

[Use Hover Typing](#)



Zoom in



Make text bigger and bolder



Enlarge text as you type

If you use a mouse or trackpad with iPad, you can also [show a larger version of text when you hover over it](#) or [make the pointer easier to see](#).

View what's on the screen more comfortably

Pause animated images, and slow down the motion of user interface elements. Or dim your display when media you're viewing depicts strobe or flashing lights.

[Stop or reduce onscreen motion](#)

Get animated dots on the edges of the screen that may help reduce motion sickness.

[Use iPad more comfortably while riding as a passenger in a vehicle](#)

If you prefer light text on a dark background, choose a dark color scheme for the iPad user interface.

[Turn Dark Mode on or off](#)

Differentiate content on the screen more easily by inverting colors, applying a color filter, and more.

[Change display colors](#)



Reduce onscreen motion



Use iPad more comfortably in a car



Use Dark Mode



Adjust the display colors

Zoom in on the iPad screen

In many apps, you can zoom in or out on specific items. For example, you can double-tap or pinch to look closer in Photos or expand webpage columns in Safari. You can also use the Zoom feature to magnify the screen no matter what you're doing. You can magnify the entire screen (Full Screen Zoom), magnify only part of the screen with a resizable lens (Window Zoom), or magnify a portion of the screen that stays in one place (Pinned Zoom). And, you can use Zoom together with VoiceOver.

Set up Zoom

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Zoom, then turn on Zoom.
2. Adjust any of the following:
 - *Follow Focus*: Track your selections, the text insertion point, and your typing.
 - *Smart Typing*: Switch to Window Zoom when a keyboard appears.
 - *Keyboard Shortcuts*: Control Zoom using shortcuts on an external keyboard.
 - *Zoom Controller*: Turn the controller on, set controller actions, and adjust the color and opacity.
 - *Zoom Region*: Choose Pinned Zoom, Full Screen Zoom, or Window Zoom.
 - *Zoom Filter*: Choose None, Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
 - *Maximum Zoom Level*: Drag the slider to adjust the level.
3. If you use iPad with a pointer device, you can also set the following below Pointer Control:
 - *Zoom Pan*: Choose Continuous, Centered, or Edges to set how the screen image moves with the pointer.
 - *Adjust Size with Zoom*: Allow the pointer to scale with zoom.
4. To add Zoom to Accessibility Shortcut, go to Settings > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then tap Zoom.

Use Zoom

1. Double-tap the screen with three fingers or [use Accessibility Shortcut](#) to turn on Zoom.

2. To see more of the screen, do any of the following:

- *Adjust the magnification:* Double-tap the screen with three fingers (without lifting your fingers after the second tap), then drag up or down. Or triple-tap with three fingers, then drag the Zoom Level slider.
- *Move the Zoom lens:* (Window Zoom) Drag the handle at the bottom of the Zoom lens.
- *Pan to another area:* (Full Screen Zoom) Drag the screen with three fingers.

3. To adjust the settings with the Zoom menu, triple-tap with three fingers, then adjust any of the following:

- *Choose Region:* Choose Pinned Zoom, Full Screen Zoom, or Window Zoom.
- *Resize Lens:* (Window Zoom) Tap Resize Lens, then drag any of the round handles that appear.
- *Choose Filter:* Choose Inverted, Grayscale, Grayscale Inverted, or Low Light.
- *Show Controller:* Show the Zoom Controller.

4. To use the Zoom Controller, do any of the following:

- *Show the Zoom menu:* Tap the controller.
- *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap the controller.
- *Pan:* When zoomed in, drag the controller.

While using Zoom with an Apple external keyboard, the Zoom region follows the insertion point, keeping it in the center of the screen. See [iPad keyboards](#).

To turn off Zoom, double-tap the screen with three fingers or [use Accessibility Shortcut](#).

View a larger version of text you're reading or typing on iPad

With Hover Text on iPad, you can move the pointer over text and other items on the screen (such as icons) to view a larger version of them. Or use Hover Typing to display a separate window with a larger version of text that you're typing.

Before you begin

To use Hover Text, you need to connect a pointing device such as a trackpad or mouse with your iPad. On [supported iPad models](#), you can also use Apple Pencil (2nd generation) or Apple Pencil Pro as the pointing device.

You don't need to connect a pointing device to use Hover Typing.

Show a larger version of text when you hover over it

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hover Text, then turn on Hover Text.
2. Move the pointer over text to display a larger version of it. Or hover the tip of a supported Apple Pencil over the text.
3. If you have a connected keyboard, you need to press and hold the Control key to show the Hover Text window.

If you use iPad with a connected keyboard, you can have the Hover Text window automatically displayed when you move the pointer over text, without needing to press and hold a key every time. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hover Text, then turn on Activation Lock. To use activation lock, quickly press the Control key three times.

You can change the key you press to activate Hover Text and activation lock. Tap Activation Modifier, then choose another key.

Show a larger version of text you're typing

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hover Text, then tap Hover Typing.
2. Turn on Hover Typing.
3. As you type in a text entry field, a larger version of what you're typing is displayed.

To temporarily hide the Hover Typing window, swipe on it. It reappears when you start typing again.

Customize Hover Text or Hover Typing

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hover Text. To customize Hover Typing, tap Hover Typing.
2. Customize any of the following:
 - *Display mode:* Choose where to show the Hover Text or Hover Typing window—inline (near the cursor), or at the top or bottom of the screen.
 - *Appearance:* Choose the size, font, and color of the text in the Hover Text or Hover Typing window, or the colors of the window itself.
 - *Scrolling speed:* Choose a faster or slower speed (for scrolling in the Hover Text window when viewing large blocks of text).

Change display colors on iPad to make it easier to see what's onscreen

To make it easier to see what's on your iPad screen, you can invert and filter colors or make transparent items solid.

Tip: Quickly set brightness with the slider in [Control Center](#).

Invert colors

Make the background dark so text and content stand out. This can be especially useful in apps and websites that don't support [Dark Mode](#).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on one of the following:
 - *Smart Invert*: Reverse colors everywhere except images.
 - *Classic Invert*: Reverse all the colors onscreen.

Differentiate or tone down colors

You can apply a filter to view the entire screen in grayscale, adjust colors for color vision deficiencies, or tint the screen a color of your choosing.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Tap Color Filters, turn on Color Filters, then tap a color filter to apply it.

You can drag any slider that appears to adjust the intensity or hue. The pencils reflect how the filter affects a range of colors.

Note: Color filters can change the look of images and videos.

Turn on Reduce White Point to tone down the intensity of bright colors.

To have screen colors become warmer as it gets dark out, use [Night Shift](#). Night Shift automatically removes inverted colors and color filter effects (except grayscale).

You can also use the Magnifier app to capture an image of nearby text or objects and apply a color filter to it. See [Customize controls in Magnifier](#).

Make transparent items solid

Some backgrounds appear transparent or blurred by default. You can make these transparent backgrounds opaque by giving them a solid color. In this way you simplify those parts of your screen and make them easier to see.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Reduce Transparency.

Differentiate without color

Some screen items rely on color to convey information. You can replace these with alternative ways to tell them apart, like shapes or text.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Differentiate Without Color.

Use symbols for on/off switches

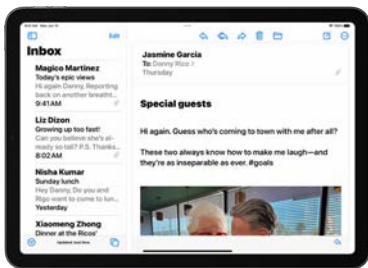
Switches turn green when they are on. You can also have switches use a vertical line to indicate when they're on and a circle to indicate when they're off.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on On/Off Labels.

To apply these settings to only the contents of the zoom window, see [Zoom in](#).

Make text easier to read on iPad

You can make it easier to read text on iPad by increasing its size, making it bold, and more.



Make text bigger and bolder

You can set a single preferred text size for all supported apps (including Calendar, Mail, Messages, Notes, Settings, and more). You can also turn on bold text.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Do any of following:
 - *Make text bigger*: Tap Larger Text, then drag the slider to adjust the text size.
For additional text sizes, turn on Larger Accessibility Sizes.
 - *Make text heavier*: Turn on Bold Text.

Tip: Change the size of text while you're in an app. [Open Control Center](#), then adjust the Text Size slider . If you don't see the Text Size slider, tap + in the top-left corner, tap Add a Control, then tap the Text Size control.

You can also [turn on Display Zoom](#) to increase the size of text as well as interface elements like icons and buttons.

Identify tappable text

You can underline any text that performs an action when you tap it.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Display & Text Size.
2. Turn on Button Shapes.

You can also [change display colors on iPad to make it easier to see what's onscreen](#) or [zoom in on the screen](#).

Stop or reduce onscreen motion on iPad

If you don't want visual motion on your iPad screen, you can stop or reduce the movement of some screen elements, such as:

- Parallax effect of wallpaper, apps, and alerts
- Screen transitions
- Siri animations
- Typing autocompletion
- Animated full-screen and bubble effects in the Messages app
- Animated images on the web and in apps

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Motion.
2. These settings stop or reduce motion:
 - *Reduce Motion*: Turn on. (When off, more items in the user interface animate, such as the parallax effect of icons.)
 - *Auto-Play Message Effects*: Turn off. (When on, the Messages app automatically plays full-screen effects. If you turn this setting off, you can still manually play effects by tapping Replay below the message bubble.)
 - *Auto-Play Video Previews*: Turn off. (When on, it allows apps such as the App Store to automatically play video previews.)
 - *Auto-Play Animated Images*: Turn off. (When on, rapid animated images and moving elements such as GIFs in Messages and Safari play automatically.)
 - *Dim Flashing Lights*: Turn on. (The display of media automatically dims when flashes or strobe effects are detected.)
 - *Prefer Non-Blinking Cursor*: Turn on. (Stop the blinking of the vertical bar that appears at the insertion point where you're typing. If you use a braille display with iPad, the cursor indicator on the display also stops blinking.)
 - *Limit Frame Rate*: Turn on. (On [models with ProMotion display technology](#), this limits the maximum frame rate of the display to 60 frames per second.)

To apply these effects to specific apps, see [Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps](#).

Important: Your iPad uses an on-device algorithm to detect flashing or strobing lights included in supported video content and automatically dims them on your iPad in real time. Motion settings should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, or for the treatment of any medical condition.

Use iPad more comfortably while riding in a vehicle

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords">

ipde-needs-review

If you experience discomfort when you use iPad while riding as a passenger in a car or other on-road vehicle, you can turn on Vehicle Motion Cues—onscreen cues that may help reduce motion sickness. Vehicle Motion Cues appear as animated dots on the edges of the screen that represent how the vehicle is moving without interfering with what you're doing on iPad.

Note: Vehicle Motion Cues should not be used while operating a moving vehicle and in other situations requiring attention to safety. For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [important safety information](#). Vehicle Motion Cues work best when you're seated facing forward in the vehicle.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Motion.
2. Tap Show Vehicle Motion Cues, then turn on Show Vehicle Motion Cues.
3. To show or hide Vehicle Motion Cues, [open Control Center](#), then tap .

Tip: You can also set up a shortcut to turn Vehicle Motion Cues on or off. See [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#).

Customize visual accessibility settings for specific apps on iPad

You can choose different color, text size, and motion settings for certain apps or for the Home Screen and App Library.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Per-App Settings.
2. Tap Add App, then choose an app from the list (or Home Screen & App Library).
3. Tap the name of the app (or Home Screen & App Library) to access its settings.

Hear iPad speak the screen, selected text, and typing feedback

Even if VoiceOver is turned off, you can have iPad read text on the screen out loud. Have iPad read the entire screen or a specific selection. Or hear what you type spoken out loud, character by character or word by word.

Have iPad speak onscreen text

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Spoken Content.
2. Turn on any of the following:
 - *Speak Selection*: Have iPad speak the text you select.
 - *Speak Screen*: Have iPad read all text on the screen, starting from the top.
Turn on Speech Controller to keep the Speak Screen controls on the screen.
Turn on Highlight Content to have words or sentences highlighted as iPad reads them out loud.
 - *Typing Feedback options*: As you type, have iPad speak character by character, word by word, and more.
3. Do any of the following:
 - *Hear selected text (if you turned on Speak Selection)*: Select the text you want spoken, then tap Speak.
 - *Hear all text on the screen (if you turned on Speak Screen)*: Swipe down with two fingers from the top of the screen.
Use the controls that appear to pause speaking, adjust the rate, navigate forward or back to the content you want to hear, or use Speak on Touch (tap the text you want iPad to read).
 - *Hear what you type (if you turned on Typing Feedback options)*: Start typing.

Say something like: "Speak screen." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Change how Spoken Content sounds

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Spoken Content.
2. Adjust any of the following:
 - *Voices*: Choose a voice and dialect.
 - *Speaking Rate*: Drag the slider.
 - *Pronunciations*: Dictate or spell out how you want certain phrases to be spoken.

Hear audio descriptions for video content on iPad

If you can't see your screen and your content includes audio descriptions, you can listen to an audio description—a separate audio track that narrates or describes the visual content of a clip, show, or movie.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio Descriptions.
2. Turn on Audio Descriptions.

If you don't see audio descriptions, see the Apple Support article [Turn on audio descriptions on your iPhone or iPad](#)

If you're a content creator and want to add audio descriptions to a file, see [Add descriptive audio tracks](#) in the Compressor User Guide.

VoiceOver

Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPad

With VoiceOver—a gesture-based screen reader—you can use iPad even if you can't see the screen. VoiceOver gives audible descriptions of what's on your screen—for example, hear the battery level, who's calling, or what item your finger is on. You can also customize the VoiceOver speaking voice to suit your needs.

When you touch the screen or drag your finger over it, VoiceOver speaks the name of the item your finger is on, including icons and text. To interact with the item, such as a button or link, or to navigate to another item, [use VoiceOver gestures](#).

When you go to a new screen, VoiceOver plays a sound, then selects and speaks the name of the first item on the screen (typically in the top-left corner). VoiceOver tells you when the screen changes to landscape or portrait orientation, when the screen becomes dimmed or locked, and what's active on the Lock Screen when you wake iPad.

Turn VoiceOver on or off

Important: VoiceOver changes the gestures you use to control iPad. When VoiceOver is on, you must use VoiceOver gestures to operate iPad.

To turn VoiceOver on or off, do any of the following:

- Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn VoiceOver on or off.
- Use [Control Center](#) if you've added VoiceOver there.
- Use [the Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up to turn on VoiceOver.

Say something like: "Turn on VoiceOver" or "Turn off VoiceOver." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Siri knows when VoiceOver is on and often reads more information back to you than appears on the screen. You can also use VoiceOver to read what Siri shows on the screen.

Use an interactive tutorial to learn VoiceOver

You can learn VoiceOver basics and practice essential gestures with the interactive VoiceOver Tutorial.

With VoiceOver turned on, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then tap VoiceOver Tutorial to get started.

Practice VoiceOver gestures

You can use the VoiceOver Practice area to safely try out VoiceOver gestures and hear what they do—without performing any action or otherwise affecting iPad.

Try different techniques to discover which works best for you. If a gesture doesn't work, try a quicker movement, especially for a double tap or swipe gesture. To swipe, try brushing the screen quickly with your finger or fingers. For best results using multifinger gestures, touch the screen with some space between your fingers.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Turn on VoiceOver, tap VoiceOver Practice, then double-tap to start.
3. Practice the following gestures with one, two, three, and four fingers:
 - Tap
 - Double tap
 - Triple tap
 - Swipe left, right, up, or down
4. When you finish practicing, tap Done, then double-tap to exit.

Change your VoiceOver settings on iPad

You can customize the settings for VoiceOver, such as the audio options, language, voice, speaking rate, and verbosity.

Adjust the volume of VoiceOver speech and sounds

- To increase or decrease your iPad's volume, including the volume of VoiceOver speech and sounds, as well as all other iPad audio, press the volume buttons on iPad.
- To increase or decrease just the volume of VoiceOver speech, without affecting the volume of other iPad audio, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, tap Audio Ducking, then drag the VoiceOver Speech Volume slider.
- To temporarily reduce the volume of media playback and calls when VoiceOver speaks, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, tap Audio Ducking, then select When Speaking.
- To set other audio options, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Audio, then set options such as the following:
 - *Sounds*: Adjust and preview sound effects.
 - *Send to HDMI*: Route audio to externally connected devices, such as an instrument amplifier or a DJ mixer.

Set the VoiceOver language

- *Change the primary language*: VoiceOver uses the same language you choose for your iPad. To choose a different primary language, go to Settings  > General > Language & Region, then tap Add Language.
- *Switch languages using the rotor*: [Use the rotor](#) to switch to a voice for another language.
- *Automatically switch languages*: VoiceOver can detect text in another language and automatically switch to a voice for that language. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Speech, then turn on Detect Languages.

Note: VoiceOver is not available in all languages. See the Apple Support article [Languages supported by VoiceOver](#).

Change the speaking voice

You can change the VoiceOver speaking voice, or add another voice [use the rotor](#) to switch between voices as needed.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Tap Speech, then do one of the following:
 - *Change the primary voice*: Tap the name of the current primary voice, then tap Voice.
 - *Add another voice*: Tap Add Rotor Voice.
3. Choose a voice. To choose an enhanced voice, tap  first.

Adjust the speaking voice

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then do any of the following:

- *Adjust the speaking rate*: Drag the Speaking Rate slider.
- *Adjust the pitch*: Tap Speech, tap a voice, then drag the slider. You can also turn on Pitch Change to have VoiceOver use a higher pitch when speaking the first item of a group (such as a list or table) and a lower pitch when speaking the last item of a group.
- *Specify the pronunciation of certain words*: Tap Speech > Pronunciations, tap , enter a phrase, then dictate or spell out how you want the phrase to be pronounced.

Note: You can dictate only if you turned on Enable Dictation in Settings > General > Keyboards.

Set how much VoiceOver tells you

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity, then do any of the following:

- *Change how VoiceOver speaks punctuation:* Tap Punctuation, then choose a group. You can also create new groups—for example, a programming group in which “[” is spoken as “left brack.”
- *Change how VoiceOver reads notifications:* Tap System Notifications. By default, VoiceOver reads notifications, including incoming text messages, as they occur—even if iPad is locked. Unacknowledged notifications are repeated when you unlock iPad.
- *Choose additional options:* Have VoiceOver speak hints, uppercase letters, embedded links, and more. VoiceOver can even confirm rotor actions and tell you when the flashlight is turned on.

Customize VoiceOver settings for an activity

You can customize a group of VoiceOver settings for an activity, such as programming. Then, when you open certain apps or adjust the rotor, the settings for speech, audio, verbosity, typing, navigation, and braille are applied automatically.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Activities.
2. Choose an existing activity or tap Add Activity.
3. Adjust the settings, then below Automatic Switching, do any of the following:
 - *Apply the settings for certain apps:* Tap Apps, then select the ones you want this setting to apply to.
 - *Apply the settings for certain contexts:* Tap Context, then select one or more contexts, such as Word Processing, Messaging, or Console.

Use flat or grouped navigation

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigation Style, then choose one of the following:

- *Flat:* VoiceOver moves sequentially through each item on the screen when you use the move next and previous commands.
- *Grouped:* VoiceOver moves through items and groups of items on the screen. To move into a group, use a two-finger swipe right. To move out of a group, use a two-finger swipe left.

Set a delay between touching the screen and selecting an item

You can control the amount of time between when you touch the screen and when VoiceOver selects the item you’ve touched. Increasing this value may help reduce accidental touches.

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver, tap Delay before Selection, then tap + or - to increase or decrease the delay.

Adjust VoiceOver visuals

Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver, then turn on any of the following:

- *Large Cursor:* If you have difficulty seeing the outline around the selected item, you can enlarge and thicken the outline.
- *Caption Panel:* The text spoken by VoiceOver is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Use Quick Settings to adjust VoiceOver from anywhere on iPad

When VoiceOver is turned on, you can access Quick Settings by doing a two-finger quadruple tap.

To customize Quick Settings, do the following:

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Quick Settings.
2. Choose the settings you want, or drag ≡ to reorder settings.

Use VoiceOver gestures on iPad

When VoiceOver is on, standard touchscreen gestures have different effects, and additional gestures let you move around the screen and control individual items. VoiceOver gestures include two-, three-, and four-finger taps and swipes.

You can use different techniques to perform VoiceOver gestures. For example, you can perform a two-finger tap using two fingers on one hand, one finger on each hand, or your thumbs. Instead of selecting an item and double-tapping, you can use a split-tap gesture—touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another finger.

Explore and speak items on the screen

To explore the screen, drag your finger over it. VoiceOver speaks the name of each item you touch.

You can also use VoiceOver gestures to explore the screen in order, from top to bottom and left to right.

Action	Gesture
Select and speak an item	Tap or touch the item
Select the next item	Swipe right
Select the previous item	Swipe left

Move into a group of items	Two-finger swipe right
Move out of a group of items	Two-finger swipe left
Select the first item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the top of the screen
Select the last item on the screen	Four-finger tap near the bottom of the screen
Speak the entire screen from the top	Two-finger swipe up
Speak the entire screen from the selected item	Two-finger swipe down
Pause or continue speaking	Two-finger tap
Speak additional information, such as the position within a list or whether text is selected	Three-finger tap

For more information about navigation styles, see [Use flat or grouped navigation](#).

Scroll up, down, left, and right

Use VoiceOver gestures to move to another page.

Action	Gesture
Scroll up one page	Three-finger swipe down
Scroll down one page	Three-finger swipe up
Scroll left one page	Three-finger swipe right
Scroll right one page	Three-finger swipe left

Take action on an item

Use VoiceOver gestures to perform actions on an item.

Action	Gesture
Select an item	Tap
Activate the selected item	Double tap
Double-tap the selected item	Triple tap
Drag a slider	Tap the slider to select it, then swipe up or down with one finger; or double-tap and hold the slider until you hear three rising tones, then drag the slider
Start or stop the current action (for example, play or pause music or a video, take a photo in Camera, start or stop a recording, start or stop the stopwatch)	Two-finger double tap
Dismiss an alert or return to the previous screen	Two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z")
Edit an item's label to make it easier to find	Two-finger double tap and hold

Tip: As an alternative to selecting an item and double-tapping to activate it, touch and hold an item with one finger, then tap the screen with another.

Use gestures to control VoiceOver

Use these gestures to control VoiceOver.

Action	Gesture
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	Three-finger double tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger triple-tap gesture.

Turn the screen curtain on or off (When the screen curtain is on, the screen contents are active even though the display is black and appears to be turned off.)	Three-finger triple tap. If both VoiceOver and Zoom are turned on, use the three-finger quadruple-tap gesture.
Use a standard gesture	Double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones, then make the gesture. When you lift your finger, VoiceOver gestures resume. For example, to drag a volume slider with your finger instead of swiping up and down, select the slider, double-tap and hold, wait for the three tones, then slide left or right.
Open the Item Chooser	Two-finger triple tap. To move quickly through the list of items, type a name in the search field, swipe right or left to move through the list alphabetically, or tap the table index to the right of the list and swipe up or down. You can also use handwriting to select an item by writing its name. If you use Braille Screen Input to type braille directly on the screen , when you're not entering text, you can type to search for an item. To dismiss the Item Chooser without making a selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").
Open the VoiceOver quick settings	Two-finger quadruple tap.
Start or stop Live Recognition	Four-finger triple tap. See Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver .

Use the VoiceOver rotor

You can use the onscreen rotor to change VoiceOver settings, jump from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor](#).

You can use these gestures with the rotor.

Action	Gesture
Choose a rotor setting	Two-finger rotation
Move to the previous item or increase (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe up
Move to the next item or decrease (depending on the rotor setting)	Swipe down

Operate iPad when VoiceOver is on

When VoiceOver is on, you need to use special gestures to unlock iPad, go to the Home Screen, open Control Center, switch apps, and more.

Unlock iPad

- *On an iPad with a Home button:* Press the Home button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.
- *On an iPad with Touch ID:* Rest your finger on the top button using the finger you registered with Touch ID.
- *On an iPad with Face ID:* Wake iPad and glance at it, then drag up from the bottom edge of the screen until you hear two rising tones (if Face ID is enabled).

If prompted, enter your passcode. To avoid having your passcode spoken as you enter it, [enter your passcode silently using handwriting mode](#) or [type onscreen braille](#).

Go to the Home Screen

- Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you hear two rising tones, then lift your finger.
- On an iPad with a Home button, press the Home button.

Use the dock

Slide one finger up from the bottom edge until you hear two rising tones, then swipe down.

Switch to another app

Swipe right or left with four fingers to cycle through the open apps.

Alternatively, you can use the App Switcher.

1. To open the App Switcher, do one of the following:
 - Drag one finger up from the bottom edge of the screen until you hear three tones, then lift your finger.
 - Double-click the Home button (on an iPad with a Home button).
2. To browse the open apps, swipe left or right until the app you want is selected.
3. Double-tap to open the app.

Open Control Center

- Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you hear two rising tones.
- Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe up with three fingers.

To dismiss Control Center, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

View notifications

- Drag one finger down from the top edge of the screen until you hear three rising tones.
- Tap any item in the status bar, then swipe down with three fingers.

To dismiss the notifications screen, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

Speak status bar information

1. Tap the status bar at the top of the screen.
2. Swipe left or right to hear the time, battery state, Wi-Fi signal strength, and more.

Rearrange apps on your Home Screen

Do one of the following:

- *Drag and drop:* Tap an icon on the Home Screen, then double-tap and hold your finger on the screen until you hear three rising tones. The item's relative location is described as you drag. Lift your finger when the icon is in its new location. Drag an icon to the edge of the screen to move it to another Home Screen.
- *Move actions:* Tap an app, then swipe down to hear available actions. When you hear "Edit Mode," double-tap to start arranging apps. Find the app you want to move, then swipe down to the Move action and double-tap. Move the VoiceOver cursor to the new destination for the app, then choose from the available actions: Cancel Move, Create New Folder, Add to Folder, Move Before, or Move After.

When you're finished, tap Done, then double-tap.

Search from the Home Screen

1. Tap anywhere on the Home Screen outside the status bar.
2. Swipe down with three fingers.

Control VoiceOver using the rotor on iPad

You can use the onscreen VoiceOver rotor to change how VoiceOver works. You can adjust the VoiceOver volume or speaking rate, move from one item to the next on the screen, select special input methods such as Braille Screen Input or Handwriting, and more.



When you [use an Apple external keyboard to control VoiceOver](#), use the rotor to adjust settings such as volume, speech rate, use of pitch or phonetics, typing echo, and reading of punctuation.

Use the VoiceOver rotor

1. When VoiceOver is turned on, rotate two fingers on your screen as if you're turning a dial. If you prefer to use one finger on each hand, simultaneously drag up with one finger and drag down with the other.

VoiceOver speaks the rotor setting. Keep rotating your fingers to hear more settings. Stop rotating your fingers when you hear the setting you want.

2. Swipe your finger up or down on the screen to use the setting.

The available rotor settings and their effects depend on what you're doing. For example, if you choose Headings when you're browsing a webpage, swipe down or up to move the VoiceOver cursor to the next or previous heading.

Customize the VoiceOver rotor

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Add or reorder the rotor settings:* Tap Rotor, then choose the settings you want, or drag  to reorder settings.
 - *Add another language:* See [Change the speaking voice](#).
 - *Have VoiceOver confirm rotor actions:* Tap Verbosity, then turn on Speak Confirmation.

Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPad

VoiceOver changes how you use the onscreen keyboard when you activate an editable text field. You can enter, select, and delete text; change the keyboard language; and more.

Enter text with the onscreen keyboard

1. Select a text field, then double-tap.

The insertion point and the onscreen keyboard appear.
2. To enter text, do one of the following:
 - *Standard typing:* Select a key by swiping left or right on the keyboard, then double-tap to enter the character. Or move your finger around the keyboard to select a key and, while continuing to touch the key with one finger, tap the screen with another finger. VoiceOver speaks the key when it's selected, and again when the character is entered.
 - *Touch typing:* Touch a key on the keyboard to select it, then lift your finger to enter the character. If you touch the wrong key, slide your finger to the key you want. VoiceOver speaks the character for each key as you touch it, but doesn't enter a character until you lift your finger.
 - *Direct Touch typing:* VoiceOver is disabled for the keyboard only, so you can type just as you do when VoiceOver is off.
 - *Dictation:* Use a two-finger double tap on the keyboard to start and stop dictation.

To enter an accented character, do one of the following:

- *Standard typing:* Select the plain character, then double-tap and hold until you hear a tone indicating alternate characters have appeared. Drag left or right to select and hear the choices. Release your finger to enter the current selection.
- *Touch typing:* Touch and hold a character until the alternate characters appear.

Edit text with the onscreen keyboard

- *Move the insertion point:* Swipe up or down to move the insertion point forward or backward in the text. Use the rotor to choose whether you want to move the insertion point by character, by word, or by line. To jump to the beginning or end, double-tap the text.

VoiceOver makes a sound when the insertion point moves, and speaks the character, word, or line that the insertion point moves across. When moving forward by words, the insertion point is placed at the end of each word, before the space or punctuation that follows. When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the end of the preceding word, before the space or punctuation that follows it.
- *Move the insertion point past the punctuation at the end of a word or sentence:* Use the rotor to switch back to character mode.

When moving the insertion point by line, VoiceOver speaks each line as you move across it. When moving forward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the next line (except when you reach the last line of a paragraph, when the insertion point is moved to the end of the line just spoken). When moving backward, the insertion point is placed at the beginning of the line that's spoken.
- *Delete a character:* Use .
- *Select text:* Do any of the following:
 - Set the rotor to Text Selection, swipe up or down to choose Character, Word, Line, or Sentence, then swipe left or right to move backward or forward. (You may need to enable Text Selection—go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor.)
 - Set the rotor to Edit, swipe up or down to choose Select or Select All, then double-tap. If you choose Select, the word closest to the insertion point is selected when you double-tap. To increase or decrease the selection, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z") to dismiss the pop-up menu, then pinch.
- *Cut, copy, or paste:* Set the rotor to Edit, select the text, swipe up or down to choose Cut, Copy, or Paste, then double-tap.
- *Fix misspelled words:* Set the rotor to Misspelled Words, then swipe up or down to jump to the previous or next misspelled word. Swipe left or right to choose a suggested replacement, then double-tap to use the replacement.
- *Undo:* Shake iPad, swipe left or right to choose the action to undo, then double-tap.

Change the keyboard settings

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.

2. Tap any of the following:

- *Typing Style*: You can choose a new style. Or, set the rotor to Typing Mode, then swipe up or down.
- *Phonetic Feedback*: Speak text character by character. VoiceOver first speaks the character, then its phonetic equivalent—for example, "f" and then "foxtrot."
- *Typing Feedback*: Choose to speak characters, words, both, or nothing.
- *Verbosity*: Tap Deleting Text. To have VoiceOver speak deleted characters in a lower pitch, tap Change Pitch.

Write with your finger in VoiceOver on iPad

With handwriting mode in VoiceOver, you can enter text by writing characters on the screen with your finger. In addition to typing or dictation, use handwriting mode to enter your iPad passcode silently or to open apps from the Home Screen.

Use handwriting mode

1. Set the rotor to Handwriting.

If Handwriting isn't in the rotor, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor, then add it.

2. To choose a character type (lowercase, numbers, uppercase, or punctuation), swipe up or down with three fingers.

To hear the selected character type, tap with three fingers.

3. Trace a character on the screen with your finger.

You can also do any of the following:

- *Enter an alternate character (a character with an accent, for example)*: Write the character, then swipe up or down with two fingers until you hear the character you want.
- *Enter a space*: Swipe right with two fingers.
- *Go to a new line*: Swipe right with three fingers.
- *Delete the previous character*: Swipe left with two fingers.

4. To exit handwriting mode, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z"), or set the rotor to a different setting.

Enter your passcode silently with handwriting mode

1. On the passcode screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Write the characters of your passcode with your finger.

Select an item on the Home Screen

1. On the Home Screen, set the rotor to Handwriting.
2. Start writing the name of the item with your finger.

If there are multiple matches, continue to spell the name until it's unique, or swipe up or down with two fingers to choose from the current matches.

Quickly navigate a long list

1. Select the index to the right of the list (for example, next to your Contacts list or in the VoiceOver Item Chooser).
2. Set the rotor to Handwriting, then use your finger to write the letter you want to navigate to.

Keep the screen off when you use VoiceOver on iPad

If you use VoiceOver on iPad, and don't need to see what's on the screen, you can turn on the screen curtain to improve battery life and maintain privacy. When the screen curtain is on, your iPad is active even though the display is off.

With VoiceOver on, triple-tap with three fingers to turn the screen curtain on or off. If both VoiceOver and the Zoom feature are turned on, quadruple-tap with three fingers.

Use VoiceOver on iPad with an Apple external keyboard

If you [use an Apple external keyboard](#) with iPad, you can use keyboard shortcuts to activate VoiceOver commands.

Additionally, you can use VoiceOver Help to learn the keyboard layout and the actions associated with various key combinations. VoiceOver Help speaks keys and keyboard commands as you type them, without performing the associated action.

Choose the VoiceOver modifier

The modifier is a key or set of keys you press with one or more other keys to enter VoiceOver commands. You can set the modifier to be the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys pressed at the same time.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Typing > Modifier Keys.
2. Choose the modifier for VoiceOver commands: the Caps Lock key or the Control and Option keys.

This modifier is abbreviated as "VO" below.

VoiceOver keyboard commands

You can control VoiceOver using key combinations.

(VO = modifier keys)

Action	Shortcut
Turn on VoiceOver Help	VO-K
Turn off VoiceOver Help	Esc (Escape)
Select the next or previous item	VO-Right Arrow or VO-Left Arrow
Activate the selected item	VO-Space bar
Touch and hold the selected item	VO-Shift-M
Read from the current position	VO-A
Read from the top	VO-B
Pause or resume reading	Control
Copy the last spoken text to the clipboard	VO-Shift-C
Search for text	VO-F
Mute or unmute VoiceOver	VO-S
Go to the Home Screen	VO-H
Move to the status bar	VO-M
Open the notifications screen	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Move to the status bar (VO-M), then Option-Down Arrow
Open Search	Option-Up Arrow
Open the App Switcher	VO-H-H
Switch apps	Command-Tab or Command-Shift-Tab
Open the Item Chooser	VO-I
Change the label of the selected item	VO-Slash
Start, stop, or pause an action	VO-Hyphen
Swipe up or down	VO-Up Arrow or VO-Down Arrow
Turn the rotor left or right	VO-Command-Left Arrow or VO-Command-Right Arrow
Adjust the setting specified by the rotor	VO-Command-Up Arrow or VO-Command-Down Arrow
Turn the screen curtain on or off	VO-Fn-Hyphen (or VO-Globe key-Hyphen, depending on your keyboard)
Return to the previous screen	Esc

Quick Nav using the arrow keys

Turn on Quick Nav to control VoiceOver using the arrow keys.

Action	Shortcut
Turn Quick Nav on or off	Left Arrow-Right Arrow
Select the next or previous item	Right Arrow or Left Arrow

Select the next or previous item specified by the rotor	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Select the first or last item	Control-Up Arrow or Control-Down Arrow
Tap an item	Up Arrow-Down Arrow
Scroll up, down, left, or right	Option-Up Arrow, Option-Down Arrow, Option-Left Arrow, or Option-Right Arrow
Adjust the rotor	Up Arrow-Left Arrow or Up Arrow-Right Arrow

Single-key Quick Nav for web browsing

To navigate a webpage quickly, turn on Quick Nav (VO-Q), then press keys on the keyboard to navigate to specific item types, such as headings or links. To move to the previous item, hold the Shift key as you press a key for the item type.

Item type	Shortcut
Heading	H
Link	L
Text field	R
Button	B
Form control	C
Image	I
Table	T
Static text	S
ARIA landmark	W
List	X
Item of the same type	M
Level 1 heading	1
Level 2 heading	2
Level 3 heading	3
Level 4 heading	4
Level 5 heading	5
Level 6 heading	6

Text editing

Use these commands (with Quick Nav turned off) to work with text. VoiceOver reads the text as you move the insertion point.

Action	Shortcut
Go forward or back one character	Right Arrow or Left Arrow
Go forward or back one word	Option-Right Arrow or Option-Left Arrow
Go up or down one line	Up Arrow or Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the line	Command-Left Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Go to the beginning or end of the paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow

Go to the previous or next paragraph	Option-Up Arrow or Option-Down Arrow
Go to the top or bottom of the text field	Command-Up Arrow or Command-Down Arrow
Select text as you move	Shift + any of the insertion point movement commands above
Select all text	Command-A
Copy, cut, or paste the selected text	Command-C, Command-X, or Command-V
Undo or redo last change	Command-Z or Shift-Command-Z

Use a braille display with VoiceOver on iPad

With VoiceOver, you can connect a Bluetooth® wireless refreshable braille display and use it to control and navigate iPad and read what's on the screen. The braille you type on the display is automatically translated into text, and the display shows what you're typing in context. You can read and type using contracted or uncontracted braille, with support for many international braille tables.

For a list of supported braille displays, see the Apple Support article [Braille displays supported by iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

Connect a braille display and learn commands to control iPad

1. Turn on the braille display.
2. On iPad, go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then choose the display.
3. On iPad, go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille, then choose the display.
4. To see the braille commands for controlling iPad, tap More Info, then tap Braille Commands.

See the Apple Support article [Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#)

Change the braille display settings

1. On iPad, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille.

2. Set any of the following:

Setting	Description
Match Input and Output Tables	Set the braille display to use the same method for both the input and the output.
Output	Choose the braille table you want to use to read braille output. You can choose from tables for additional languages as well as six-dot or eight-dot and contracted or uncontracted braille.
Input	Choose the braille table you want to use to type braille input. You can choose from tables for additional languages as well as six-dot or eight-dot and contracted or uncontracted braille.
Braille Screen Input	Choose the input method for entering braille using the screen. See Type braille on the screen .
Braille Tables	Add tables to the braille table rotors.
Automatic Translation	Turn this option on to automatically translate the braille you type into text soon after you stop typing.
Status Cells	Turn on the general and text status cells and choose their location.
Equations use Nemeth Code	Turn on Nemeth Code for mathematical equations.
Show On-screen Keyboard	Display the keyboard on the screen.
Turn Pages when Panning	Automatically turn pages when panning.
Word Wrap	Wrap words to the next line.
Braille Alert Messages	When turned on, your braille display shows an alert message for the specified duration.
Ignore Chord Duration	Adjust the amount of time required before subsequent key presses are recognized as braille chords.
Auto Advance Duration	Adjust this setting to your preferred reading speed.
Sound Curtain	When a braille display is connected to iPad, mute most sounds. Emergency alerts will still play sounds.
Enable Bluetooth on Start	Automatically turn on Bluetooth when you turn on VoiceOver so that braille displays can connect to iPad.

Output closed captions in braille during media playback

1. On iPad, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Verbosity.
2. Choose Braille or Speech and Braille.

Use a 2D braille display

If you use a supported 2D braille display, you can use the rotor to switch between different output modes, such as the mode for displaying images or the mode for reading text on multiple lines.

1. [Connect your braille display](#) to iPad.
2. With VoiceOver turned on, use the Braille Text Mode rotor to switch between output modes. See [Control VoiceOver using the rotor](#).

Type braille directly on the iPad screen with VoiceOver

When you turn on Braille Screen Input in VoiceOver, you can use your fingers to type braille directly on the iPad screen, without a physical braille keyboard. You can also use Braille Screen Input to enter braille commands for navigating and controlling your iPad.

Type braille on the screen

1. With VoiceOver turned on, [set the rotor](#) to Braille Screen Input.

If Braille Screen Input isn't in the rotor, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Tap Rotor Items, then select Braille Screen Input.

2. Place iPad in one of the following positions:

- *Tabletop mode*: Lay iPad flat in front of you.
- *Screen away mode*: Hold iPad with the screen facing away from you. Your fingers wrap around the sides of iPad to tap the screen.

3. Enter braille characters by tapping the screen with one or more fingers at the same time.

Tip: To hear where each dot is located, touch and hold, then drag your finger around the screen. To move the entry dots to match your natural finger positions, double-tap all six typing fingers at the same time (your right three fingers for dots 4, 5, and 6, and your left three fingers for dots 1, 2, and 3).

You can also use gestures to perform actions such as the following:

Action	Gesture
Enter a space	Swipe right with one finger; in screen away mode, swipe to <i>your</i> right
Delete the previous character	Swipe left with one finger
Move to a new line	Swipe right with two fingers
Cycle through spelling suggestions	Swipe up or down with one finger
Enter a carriage return, or send a message (in Messages)	Swipe up with three fingers
Cycle through modes (like Braille Entry Mode and Command Mode)	Swipe left or right with three fingers
Translate immediately (if you're typing contracted braille)	Swipe down with two fingers
Switch to the next braille table	Swipe up with two fingers

4. To exit Braille Screen Input, do a two-finger scrub (draw the letter "z" by quickly moving two fingers back and forth three times).

Tip: You can view and edit the commands and gestures you can perform when Braille Screen Input is turned on. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Braille Screen Input.

Type on the screen to enter braille commands

With Braille Screen Input Command Mode, you can control iPad by typing braille commands on the screen. You can use the same commands you use with a refreshable braille display.

1. With VoiceOver turned on, place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap to start Braille Screen Input.
2. Switch to Command Mode by swiping left or right with three fingers.
3. Type braille commands directly on the screen.

See the Apple Support article [Common braille commands for VoiceOver on your iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#)

Change Braille Screen Input settings

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Braille > Braille Screen Input.
2. Set any of the following:
 - *Use Activation Gestures*: To start Braille Screen Input, place one finger from each hand at the top and bottom edges of the screen and double-tap. To exit Braille Screen Input, slide two fingers in opposite directions. If you turn this option off, you enter and exit Braille Screen Input using the rotor.
 - *Start Automatically when Editing*: Have Braille Screen Input start automatically when you enter a text input area.
 - *Keep Active until Dismissed*: After you launch an app or choose an item in Braille Entry Mode, automatically switch to Command Mode and keep it active.
 - *Reverse Dot Positions*: For six-dot braille, swap the positions of dots 1 and 3, and dots 4 and 6.
 - *Visual Text Feedback*: As you type in braille, display a text translation of what you're typing.
 - *Typing Feedback*: Get sound or haptic feedback as you enter text with Braille Screen Input.
 - *Mode announcements*: When you switch Braille Screen Input modes, have VoiceOver speak, play sounds, or both.
 - *Braille table*: Set the method for braille screen input.

Customize VoiceOver gestures and keyboard shortcuts on iPad

You can customize the gestures and keyboard shortcuts that activate VoiceOver commands.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands.

2. Tap any of the following:

- *All Commands*: Navigate to the command you want to customize, then tap Edit, Add Gesture, or Add Keyboard Shortcut.
- *Touch Gestures*: List the gestures and the associated commands.
- *Handwriting*: List the gestures for handwriting and the associated commands.
- *Braille Screen Input*: List the gestures for Braille Screen Input and the associated commands.

To clear your custom gestures and keyboard shortcuts, tap Reset VoiceOver Commands.

Use VoiceOver on iPad with a pointer device

If you use a pointer device with iPad, you can adjust how it works with VoiceOver.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver.
2. Below Pointer Control, tap any of the following:
 - *Pointer*: Set the pointer to ignore, follow, or move the VoiceOver cursor.
 - *Speak Under Pointer*: You can adjust the delay to speak the item under the pointer.

Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver on iPad

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use VoiceOver Recognition on iPad to scan your surroundings and get live descriptions of the scenes detected in the camera view. You can also get descriptions of onscreen images and user interface elements, even in apps and on webpages that don't provide accessibility information.

Important: VoiceOver Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, for navigation, or for the diagnosis or treatment of any medical condition.

Get live descriptions of your surroundings

1. With VoiceOver on, triple-tap the screen with four fingers to start Live Recognition.
2. Choose the kinds of visual information you want VoiceOver to describe, like scenes, people, doors, furniture, or text. At the bottom of the screen, select a category, then double-tap to turn it on or off. If you turn on Point & Speak, you can point your finger at text and have VoiceOver read it aloud.

Note: Detection of people, doors, and furniture is available only on [supported iPad models](#).
3. Position iPad so the rear camera can detect what's around you. VoiceOver describes what it detects.

To interrupt VoiceOver speech and move to the next detected item, tap the screen with two fingers.
4. To turn off Live Recognition, triple-tap the screen with four fingers. Or if the VoiceOver cursor is focused on an interface element for Live Recognition, do a two-finger scrub (move two fingers back and forth three times quickly, making a "z").

Tip: You can set up a shortcut to quickly start and stop Live Recognition. See [Set up shortcuts for Live Recognition](#).

You can also use Detection Mode in the Magnifier app to detect and describe scenes, people, and more. See [Get live descriptions of visual information around you with Magnifier](#).

To change Live Recognition settings, go to the Magnifier app , tap , then tap Detect. Tap [Scenes](#), [People](#), [Doors](#), [Furniture](#), [Text](#), or [Point & Speak](#).

Get descriptions of images in apps and on the web

With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of the people, objects, and text in images in apps and on webpages, even if they don't provide accessibility information. You can move your finger over a photo to discover a person's position relative to other objects, or navigate nutrition labels and receipts in the order items are listed.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition, then turn on Image Descriptions.
2. To get descriptions of text found in images, turn on Text Recognition.
3. Go to an app such as Photos  or Safari , then select an image.
4. Swipe up to hear more options, then double-tap when you hear Explore Image
5. Move your finger around the image to find out the position of each object.

You can [add custom descriptions](#) to your images with Markup.

Note: Image Descriptions are not available in all languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS 18 Feature Availability](#) webpage.

Get descriptions of user interface elements

With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of user interface elements in apps and on webpages, even if they don't provide accessibility information.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition.
2. Turn on Screen Recognition.

Use VoiceOver in apps on iPad

You can use VoiceOver in all the built-in apps that come with your iPad—such as Safari, Maps, and more. With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of images and screen elements on webpages and in apps, even if they don't provide accessibility information.

Browse the web in Safari

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Safari app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Search the web:* Select the address field, double-tap to show the keyboard, then enter a search term, phrase, or URL. Double-tap Go, or select a search suggestion, then double-tap.
 - *Skip to the next element on a webpage:* Set the rotor to the element type—such as headings, links, and form controls—then swipe up or down.
 - *Set the rotor settings for web browsing:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Rotor. Select or deselect items, or drag  up or down to reposition an item.
 - *Skip images while navigating:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Navigate Images. You can choose to skip all images or only those without descriptions.
 - *Reduce page clutter for easier reading and navigation:* In the Safari address field, select the Format Options button, double-tap, select Show Reader View (not available for all webpages), then double-tap.

Tip: If you [use an Apple external keyboard](#) with iPad, you can [use single-key Quick Nav for web browsing](#).

Navigate in Maps

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Maps app  on your iPad.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Control how the map tracks your current location:* Select , then double-tap until you hear the tracking option you want.
 - *Tracking on:* The map automatically centers on your current location.
 - *Tracking on with heading:* The map automatically centers on your current location and rotates so that the heading you're facing is at the top of the screen. In this mode, iPad speaks street names and points of interest as you approach them.
 - *Tracking off:* The map doesn't automatically center on your current location.
 - *Explore the map:* Drag your finger around the screen, or swipe left or right to move to another item.
 - *Zoom in or out:* Select the map, set the rotor to Zoom, then swipe up or down with one finger.
 - *Pan the map:* Select the map, then swipe with three fingers.
 - *Browse locations and pins on the map:* Select the map, set the rotor to Points of Interest, then swipe up or down with one finger.
 - *Follow a road:* Hold your finger down on the road, wait until you hear "pause to follow," then move your finger along the road.
 - *Get information about a location:* Select the location (for example, a business, landmark, or pin), then double-tap to open the information card. Swipe left or right to hear information such as directions, street address, phone number, business hours, and customer reviews.
 - *Get guidance to the starting point:* When you start walking directions in Maps, iPad guides you in the direction of the starting point using sound.

Read PDFs

In the Books and Files apps, you can use VoiceOver to read PDFs. VoiceOver even describes detailed information—such as forms, tables, and lists.

Take photos and videos

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Camera app  on your iPad. VoiceOver describes objects in the viewfinder.
2. Select Camera Mode, then swipe up or down with one finger to switch between modes, like Photo or Video.
3. To take a photo or start or stop recording a video, double-tap the screen with two fingers.

Trim voice memo recordings

You can use VoiceOver to edit recordings in the Voice Memos app.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Voice Memos  app on your iPad.
2. Select the recording you want to trim, then double-tap.
3. Select Edit at the top right, then double-tap.
4. Select , then double-tap.
5. In the Waveform Overview, select Trim Beginning or Trim End, double-tap and hold, then swipe up or down to adjust the start or end time.
6. Select Trim, then double-tap.
7. Select Save, then double-tap.

8. Select Done, then double-tap.

Hear visual Weather data as sound

Some maps in the Weather app are encoded to allow you to hear the data as a changing tone or pitch. For example, as intensity of weather condition changes in a visual animation on screen, you can have these described using variations in sound.

1. With VoiceOver on, go to the Weather app on your iPad.
2. Open a location page with a precipitation, wind, or air quality map.
3. Double-tap and hold the map until you hear a tone or the words "Weather Map Snapshot." If you hear spoken instructions, follow them.

As you run your finger or pointer over a sonified map, the pitch shifts to represent the changing values.

Read math equations

VoiceOver can read math equations on the web (encoded using MathML) and in supported Apple apps such as Numbers and Keynote.

- *Hear an equation:* Have VoiceOver read the text as usual. VoiceOver says "math" before it starts reading an equation.
- *Explore the equation:* Double-tap the selected equation to display it in full screen and move through it one element at a time. Swipe left or right to read elements of the equation. Use the rotor to select Symbols, Small Expressions, Medium Expressions, or Large Expressions, then swipe up or down to hear the next element of that size. To drill down into the selected element, double-tap it, then swipe left or right to read one part of the element at a time.

Equations spoken by VoiceOver can also be output to a braille device using Nemeth Code, as well as the codes used by Unified English Braille, British English, French, and Greek. See [Use a braille display with VoiceOver](#).

Use VoiceOver Recognition

With VoiceOver Recognition, you can get descriptions of images and screen elements on webpages and in apps, even if they don't provide accessibility information.

Important: VoiceOver Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you could be harmed or injured, in high-risk situations, for navigation, or for the diagnosis or treatment of any medical condition.

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility > VoiceOver > VoiceOver Recognition.
2. Turn on any of the following:
 - *Image Descriptions:* Get descriptions of images in apps and on the web.
 - *Screen Recognition:* Get descriptions of screen elements in apps.
 - *Text Recognition:* Get descriptions of text found in images.
3. Tap Feedback Style, then choose Speak, Play Sound, or Do Nothing.

Mobility

Accessibility features for mobility on iPad

With built-in accessibility features for mobility, you can navigate and interact with iPad using just your eyes, spoken commands, assistive devices, an external keyboard, and more. You can also set options so it's easier to use gestures and press iPad buttons.

To explore accessibility features for mobility, go to Settings > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Physical and Motor section.

Action	Related features and settings
Navigate your iPad hands-free	• Eye Tracking • Voice Control • Siri • Shortcuts • Call audio routing • Use simple sounds to perform gestures
Let iPad type for you	• Dictation • Predictive text • Scribble
Connect other inputs	• Switch Control • Keyboards • Bluetooth accessories • Head tracking • Eye-tracking device • iPad keyboards

Control other devices	• Apple TV Remote • Platform Switching
Customize gestures	• AssistiveTouch • AirPods • Pointer scrolling speed • Home or top button • Face ID and attention
Adjust the sensitivity of your input	• Slow Keys and Sticky Keys • Siri Pause Time • Touch accommodations

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

Use AssistiveTouch on iPad

With AssistiveTouch on iPad, you can adapt the touchscreen to fit your needs. If certain gestures don’t work for you, replace them with a tap or alternate gesture, or use a simple sound. You can also use AssistiveTouch when you need to press iPad buttons. You can use AssistiveTouch without any accessory or with a compatible adaptive accessory (such as a joystick).



You can use AssistiveTouch to perform actions such as the following:

- Go to the Home Screen
- Double-tap
- Perform multifinger gestures
- Perform scroll gestures
- Activate Siri
- Access Control Center, notifications, the Lock Screen, or the App Switcher
- Adjust the volume on iPad
- Shake iPad
- Take a screenshot
- Use Apple Pay
- Speak screen
- Adjust dwell settings
- Control Analytics
- Restart iPad

Set up AssistiveTouch

Say something like: “Turn on AssistiveTouch” or “Turn off AssistiveTouch.” [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

Or do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch. The AssistiveTouch menu button  appears on the screen.

3. To customize AssistiveTouch, tap any of the following:

- *Customize Top Level Menu:* Tap an icon to change its action. Tap  or  to change the number of icons in the menu. The menu can have up to eight icons.
- *Single-Tap, Double-Tap, or Long Press:* Assign custom actions that run when you interact with the menu button.
- *Create New Gesture:* Add your favorite gestures.
- *Idle Opacity:* Adjust the visibility of the menu button when not in use.
- *Virtual Trackpad:* Turn a small region of the screen into a resizable trackpad. See [Use an adjustable onscreen trackpad on iPad](#).
- *Confirm with AssistiveTouch:* On an [iPad with Face ID](#), use AssistiveTouch to confirm payments with Face ID instead of double-clicking the top button. Or on iPad (10th generation), iPad mini (6th generation), and iPad Air (4th generation and later), use AssistiveTouch to confirm payments with your passcode instead of double-clicking the top button.

Tip: To quickly turn AssistiveTouch on or off, you can [set up the Accessibility Shortcut](#), then triple-click the top or Home button.

Use AssistiveTouch

When AssistiveTouch is on, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button , then choose an action or gesture.

To return to the previous menu, tap the arrow in the center of the menu. To exit the menu without performing a gesture, tap anywhere outside the menu.

To move the AssistiveTouch menu button, drag it to a new location on the screen.

For a multifinger gesture, do the following:

- *Pinch and Rotate:* Tap Custom, then tap Pinch and Rotate. When the two pinch circles appear, touch anywhere on the screen to move the pinch circles, then drag them in or out to perform a pinch or rotate gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.
- *Multifinger swipe or drag:* Tap Device > More > Gestures, then tap the number of digits needed for the gesture. When the circles appear on the screen, swipe or drag in the direction required by the gesture. When you finish, tap the menu button.

Control iPad with a pointer device

You can connect Bluetooth® and USB assistive pointer devices, such as trackpads, game controllers, and mouse devices.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.
3. Below Pointer Devices, tap any of the following:
 - *Devices:* Pair or unpair devices and customize buttons.
 - *Mouse Keys:* Allow the AssistiveTouch pointer to be controlled using the keyboard.
 - *Pointer Style:* Adjust the size, color, and auto-hide settings.
 - *Show Onscreen Keyboard:* Display the onscreen keyboard.
 - *Sound on Click:* Play a sound when the pointer device is clicked.
 - *Always Show Menu:* Show the AssistiveTouch menu when a pointer device is connected.
 - *Tracking Sensitivity:* Adjust how quickly the pointer moves when you drag the mouse or your finger on the trackpad.

You can also [change the appearance of the pointer](#).

Set up Dwell Control

iPad performs a selected action when you hold the cursor still on a screen element or an area of the screen.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn on Dwell Control.
2. Adjust any of the following:
 - *Fallback Action:* Turn on to revert the dwell action to the selected fallback action after performing an operation.
 - *Movement Tolerance:* Adjust the distance the cursor can move while dwelling on an item.
 - *Hot Corners:* Perform a selected action—such as take a screenshot, open Control Center, activate Siri, scroll, or use a shortcut—when the cursor dwells in a corner of the screen.
 - *Time needed to initiate a dwell action:* Tap  or .

Use simple sounds to perform gestures

With AssistiveTouch, you can have iPad perform a gesture or other action when you make a simple sound, such as a mouth pop or an S-sound.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then turn AssistiveTouch on.
2. Tap Sound Actions, then tap a sound.
3. Select the gesture or other action you want performed when you make the sound.
4. To perform the gesture or action, just make the sound.

Create custom gestures

You can add gestures you use often (such as touch and hold or two-finger rotation) to the AssistiveTouch menu. You can even create several gestures with, for example, different degrees of rotation.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Create New Gesture.
2. Perform your gesture on the recording screen. For example:
 - *Touch-and-hold gesture*: Touch and hold your finger in one spot until the recording progress bar reaches halfway, then lift your finger. Be careful not to move your finger while recording, or the gesture will be recorded as a drag.
 - *Two-finger rotation gesture*: Rotate two fingers on the iPad screen around a point between them. (You can do this with a single finger or stylus—just create each arc separately, one after the other.)

If you record a sequence of taps or drag gestures, they're all played back at the same time. For example, using one finger or a stylus to record four separate, sequential taps at four locations on the screen creates a simultaneous four-finger tap.

3. If your gesture doesn't turn out quite right, tap Cancel, then try again.
4. When you're satisfied with your gesture, tap Save, then name the gesture.

To use your custom gesture, tap the AssistiveTouch menu button , tap Custom, then choose the gesture. When the blue circles representing your gesture appear, drag them to where you want to use the gesture, then release.

Use an adjustable onscreen trackpad on iPad

With Virtual Trackpad on iPad, you can turn a small region of the screen into a resizable trackpad, and use it to move and click an onscreen pointer.



Set up Virtual Trackpad

Before you can use Virtual Trackpad, you need to add it to AssistiveTouch.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *Add Virtual Trackpad to the AssistiveTouch menu*: Tap Customize Top Level Menu, tap , tap the + button that appears, then choose Virtual Trackpad.
 - *Set a custom action to open Virtual Trackpad*: Tap an action (such as double-tap or long press) below Custom Actions, then choose Virtual Trackpad.

Use Virtual Trackpad

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Turn on AssistiveTouch.
3. Depending on how you [set up Virtual Trackpad](#), do one of the following to open it:
 - *Use the AssistiveTouch menu*: Tap the AssistiveTouch menu button , then tap Virtual Trackpad.
 - *Use the custom action you set*: Tap, double-tap, or long press the AssistiveTouch menu button .
4. Do any of the following:
 - Drag your finger on the trackpad to move the pointer.
 - Tap the trackpad to click at the location of the pointer.
 - Drag the arrows in the top-left corner of the trackpad to resize it.
 - Drag a border of the trackpad to move it.
5. To close Virtual Trackpad, repeat the action you use to open it.

Change Virtual Trackpad settings

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch.
2. Tap Virtual Trackpad.
3. Change any of the following:
 - *Tracking*: Adjust how quickly the pointer moves.
 - *Scrolling*: Adjust the scrolling speed. Or turn Natural Scrolling—content moves in the same direction as your fingers—on or off.
 - *Appearance*: Change how the trackpad looks, make it fill the entire screen, or adjust how long it takes for the trackpad to fade after you stop using it.

You can also [change the appearance of the pointer](#).

Control iPad with the movement of your eyes

With Eye Tracking, you can control iPad using just your eyes. An onscreen pointer follows the movement of your eyes, and when you look at an item and hold your gaze steady or *dwell*, you perform an action, such as a tap. All data used to set up and control Eye Tracking is processed on device.

Before you begin

Eye Tracking uses the built-in, front-facing camera on iPad. For best results, make sure that the camera has a clear view of your face and that your face is adequately lit. iPad should be on a stable surface about a foot and a half away from your face.

Eye Tracking is available with [supported iPad models](#).

Turn on Eye Tracking

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Eye Tracking, then turn on Eye Tracking.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to calibrate Eye Tracking. As a dot appears in different locations around the screen, follow its movement with your eyes.

Note: You need to calibrate Eye Tracking every time you turn it on.

Use Eye Tracking

After you turn on and calibrate Eye Tracking, an onscreen pointer follows the movement of your eyes. When you're looking at an item on the screen, an outline appears around the item.

When you hold your gaze steady at a location on the screen, the dwell pointer  appears where you're looking and the dwell timer begins (the dwell pointer circle starts to fill). When the dwell timer finishes, an action—tap, by default—is performed.

To perform additional onscreen gestures or physical button presses, use the AssistiveTouch menu . See [Use AssistiveTouch](#).

Recalibrate Eye Tracking

When Eye Tracking is on, you can recalibrate it as needed. You may want to do this if you change the position of your face or your iPad.

1. Look at the top-left corner of your screen and hold your gaze steady.
The dwell pointer  appears and the dwell timer begins (the dwell pointer circle starts to fill). When the dwell timer finishes, Eye Tracking calibration starts.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to calibrate Eye Tracking. As a dot appears in different locations around the screen, follow its movement with your eyes.

You can change which corner of the screen you need to look at to start recalibration or assign actions to other corners. See [Set up Dwell Control](#).

Set options for Eye Tracking

You can set options for how the Eye Tracking pointer responds to your gaze.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Eye Tracking, then adjust any of the following:
 - *Smoothing:* Increase this value to make the movement of the pointer smoother. Or decrease this value to make the pointer more responsive.
 - *Snap to Item:* Have the Eye Tracking pointer automatically move to the item on the screen that's closest to where you're looking.
 - *Zoom on Keyboard Keys:* When you dwell on the keyboard, zoom in on the section of the keyboard you're looking at. Dwell again on a key to tap it.
 - *Auto-Hide:* Show the Eye Tracking pointer when you hold your gaze steady for the amount of time specified. When your eyes are moving, the pointer automatically fades.
 - *Dwell Control:* Turn Dwell Control on or off. To adjust settings for Dwell Control, such as the default dwell action and the duration of the dwell timer, see [Set up Dwell Control](#).

To change the size or color of the Eye Tracking pointer, go to Settings > Accessibility > Pointer Control. See [Make the pointer easier to see](#).

Use an external eye-tracking device with iPad

You can also use a [Made for iPhone \(MFi\)](#) eye-tracking device to control iPad.

1. Follow the eye-tracking device manufacturer's instructions to connect your device to iPad with a Lightning or USB-C connector (depending on your iPad model).
2. Set up your eye-tracking device using the device's companion app.
3. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch, then [turn on AssistiveTouch](#).
4. If you want to be able to interact with an item on the screen when you hold your gaze steady on the item, turn on Dwell Control.

To adjust settings for Dwell Control, such as the default dwell action and the duration of the dwell timer, see [Set up Dwell Control](#).

5. To set additional options for your eye-tracking device, tap **Devices** (below **Pointer Devices**), tap the name of the device, then adjust any of the following:

- *Customize Additional Buttons:* Perform actions using a physical switch (if supported by your eye-tracking device).
- *Snap to Item:* Have the pointer automatically move to the item on the screen that's closest to where you're looking.
- *Auto-Hide:* Show the pointer when you hold your gaze steady for the amount of time specified. When your eyes are moving, the pointer automatically fades.

To change the color and size of the pointer, go to **Settings > Accessibility > Pointer Control**. See [Adjust pointer settings](#).

Adjust how iPad responds to your touch

If you have difficulties with hand tremors, dexterity, or fine motor control, you can adjust how the iPad touchscreen responds to tap, swipe, and touch-and-hold gestures. You can have iPad recognize faster or slower touches and ignore multiple touches. You can also prevent iPad from waking when you touch the screen, or turn off **Shake to Undo** if you unintentionally shake iPad.

Adjust settings for taps, swipes, and multiple touches

1. Go to **Settings** > **Accessibility > Touch > Touch Accommodations**, then turn on **Touch Accommodations**.
2. You can configure iPad to do any of the following:
 - *Respond to longer or shorter touches:* Turn on **Hold Duration**, then tap  or  to adjust the duration.
 - *Prevent unintended swipe gestures:* If you turn on **Hold Duration** (above), you can increase the amount of movement required before a swipe gesture begins. Tap **Swipe Gestures**, turn on **Swipe Gestures**, then adjust required movement.
 - *Treat multiple touches as a single touch:* Turn on **Ignore Repeat**, then tap  or  to adjust the amount of time allowed between multiple touches.
 - *Respond to the first or last place you touch:* Choose **Use Initial Touch Location** or **Use Final Touch Location**.

If you choose **Use Initial Touch Location**, iPad uses the location of your first tap—when you tap an app on the Home Screen, for example.

If you choose **Use Final Touch Location**, iPad registers the tap where you lift your finger. iPad responds to a tap when you lift your finger within a certain period of time. Tap  or  to adjust the timing. Your iPad can respond to other gestures, such as a drag gesture, if you wait longer than the gesture delay.

Adjust settings for touch-and-hold gestures

You use the touch-and-hold gesture to see additional options or actions you can perform, or show a preview of content. If you have trouble performing this gesture, do the following:

1. Go to **Settings** > **Accessibility > Touch > Haptic Touch**.
2. Choose the touch duration—**Fast** or **Slow**.
3. Test your new settings on the image at the bottom of the screen.

Turn off Tap to Wake

On a [supported iPad model](#), you can prevent touches on the screen from waking iPad. Go to **Settings** > **Accessibility > Touch**, then turn off **Tap to Wake**.

Turn off Shake to Undo

If you tend to unintentionally shake iPad, you can turn off **Shake to Undo**. Go to **Settings** > **Accessibility > Touch**.

Tip: To undo text edits, swipe left with three fingers.

Route and automatically answer calls on iPad

You can automatically direct the audio of FaceTime calls to the iPad speaker, a Bluetooth® headset, or your hearing device. iPad can also automatically answer calls after a length of time you set.

1. Go to **Settings** > **Accessibility > Touch > Call Audio Routing**, then choose an audio destination.
2. Tap **Auto-Answer Calls**, turn on **Auto-Answer Calls**, then set the duration of time before the call is answered by tapping  or .

During a call, you can switch the audio routing from your hearing aid to the iPad speaker by removing the hearing aid from your ear.

Change Face ID and attention settings on iPad

On an iPad with Face ID, you can adjust Face ID and attention settings if you have physical or vision limitations.

Set up Face ID with Accessibility Options

Setting up Face ID usually requires you to gently move your head in a circle to show all the angles of your face. If you can't perform the full range of head motion, you can still set up Face ID without moving your head.

1. Go to **Settings** > **Face ID & Passcode**.
2. Position your face within the frame, then tap **Accessibility Options**.

Face ID is still secure but requires more consistency when you unlock iPad.

Change attention settings

For additional security, Face ID is *attention-aware*. It unlocks iPad only when your eyes are open and looking at the screen. iPad can also reveal notifications and messages, keep the screen lit when you're reading, or lower the volume of alerts.

If you don't want iPad to check for your attention, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on or off any of the following:
 - Require Attention for Face ID
 - Attention Aware Features

These settings are turned off by default if you turn on VoiceOver when you first set up iPad.

Note: Requiring attention makes Face ID more secure.

Use Voice Control commands to interact with iPad

After you turn on Voice Control on your iPad, you can speak commands to interact with what's on the screen, perform gestures and button presses, dictate and edit text, and more.

Note: When Voice Control is on, you use Voice Control to dictate text; standard iPadOS Dictation isn't available. If you just want to enter text using Dictation, without controlling your iPad with your voice, see [Dictate text](#). Voice Control isn't available in all languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

Set up Voice Control

Before you turn on Voice Control for the first time, make sure iPad is connected to the internet over a Wi-Fi network. After iPad completes a one-time file download from Apple, you don't need an internet connection to use Voice Control.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control.
2. Tap Set Up Voice Control, then tap Continue to start the file download.

When the download is complete,  appears in the status bar to indicate that Voice Control is turned on.

3. Set options such as the following:
 - *Language*: Set the language and download languages for offline use.
 - *Customize Commands*: View the available commands and create new commands.
 - *Vocabulary*: Teach Voice Control to recognize new words and phrases. You can enter a word or phrase and teach Voice Control how you pronounce it, or import a vocabulary list.

Note: Not all Voice Control languages support a custom vocabulary.
 - *Show Confirmation*: When Voice Control recognizes a command, a visual confirmation appears at the top of the screen.
 - *Play Sound*: When Voice Control recognizes a command, an audible sound is played.
 - *Show Hints*: See command suggestions and hints.
 - *Overlay*: Display numbers, names, or a grid over screen elements.
 - *Attention Aware*: On an [iPad with Face ID](#), Voice Control wakes up when you look at your iPad and goes to sleep when you look away.

Turn Voice Control on or off

After you set up Voice Control, you can turn it on or off quickly by doing any of the following:

- Use [Control Center](#) if you've added it there.
- Use [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up.

Say something like: "Turn on Voice Control" or "Turn off Voice Control." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Start using commands

To use Voice Control on your iPad, just say a command.

 **Voice Control:** Say, for example, "Open Control Center," "Go home," "Tap *item name*," or "Turn up volume."

Tip: Use the interactive Voice Control Tutorial to get familiar with Voice Control and practice essential commands. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Voice Control, then tap Open Voice Control Tutorial.

Pause or resume Voice Control

Pause Voice Control when you don't want words you say to be interpreted as commands or dictation. Resume Voice Control when you're ready for it to listen for commands and dictation again.

 **Voice Control:** Say "Stop listening" or "Start listening."

See what commands you can use

Display a list of the available commands, which vary depending on the app you're working in and what you're doing. For example, you see text formatting commands while writing a document.

 **Voice Control:** Say "Show commands."

To browse the full list of supported commands and see examples of how to use them, go to Settings > Accessibility > Voice Control > Commands.

Label onscreen items

When you're not sure what to call something, you can display a name or number next to each item on the screen. You can then use the item's name or number to interact with it.

 **Voice Control:** Say "Show names" or "Show numbers."

To interact with an item, say its name or number, or say a command—such as "Long press"—followed by the item's name or number. The item names or numbers disappear after you say the command.

Show a numbered grid on the screen

You can make it easier to interact with a precise area of the screen by superimposing a grid.

 **Voice Control:** Say "Show grid."

- *Interact with a location on the grid:* If a number is at the location you want to interact with, say any command—such as "Tap"—followed by the grid number. The grid disappears after you say the command.
- *Drill down on an area of the grid:* If you need to further refine the location, say a grid number to show a more detailed grid in that area.

Say "Hide names," "Hide numbers," or "Hide grid" to turn the overlay off.

Enter text

When working in a text input area, you can dictate word by word (with Dictation mode) or character by character (with Spelling mode). To avoid mistakenly entering a Voice Control command as text, have Voice Control respond only to commands (with Command mode).

When you're in a text input area and [label onscreen items with numbers](#), numbers are shown next to each line of text. Select a line or another section of the text to display a number for each word in the selection; select a single word to show a number for each character in the word. To interact with a text item (such as a line or a word), say a command followed by the item's name or number. For example, you can say "Delete [*item number*]" or "Uppercase [*item number*]."

Command	Description
 Voice Control: Say "Dictation mode."	Dictate word by word. Any words you say that aren't Voice Control commands are entered as text. Dictation mode is on by default. In some Voice Control languages, if several words phonetically match what you say, they appear onscreen. Tap to choose the one you want.
 Voice Control: Say "Spelling mode."	Dictate character by character. Spelling mode is helpful when you need to enter a password, a web address, or another sequence of characters that wouldn't be recognized as a word in Dictation mode. When Spelling mode is on,  appears in the text input area. To increase accuracy when entering letters, you can use the letter's phonetic alphabet code word (for example, say "Alfa Bravo Charlie" to enter "abc"). <i>Note:</i> Spelling mode isn't available in all Voice Control languages.
 Voice Control: Say "Command mode."	Voice Control responds only to commands. Words and characters that aren't commands are ignored and aren't entered as text. Command mode is helpful when you need to say a series of commands and don't want them inadvertently entered in a text input area. When Command mode is on,  appears in the text input area to indicate you can't dictate to enter text.

Adjust settings for the top or Home button

You can adjust accessibility settings for the Home button (on an iPad that has one) or top button (on other iPad models).

1. Go to Settings > Accessibility, then tap Home Button (on an iPad with a Home button) or Top Button (on other iPad models).
2. Set any of the following:
 - *Click Speed:* Choose the speed required to double-click or triple-click the button—Default, Slow, or Slowest.
 - *Press and Hold to Speak:* Choose whether Siri responds when you press and hold the button.
 - *Rest Finger to Open:* On an [iPad with Touch ID](#), you can unlock and open iPad by resting your finger on Touch ID.

On an [iPad with Face ID](#), you can also [use AssistiveTouch](#) or [use Switch Control](#) to confirm payments with Face ID instead of double-clicking the top button.

Use buttons on the Apple TV Remote on iPad

On the Apple TV Remote on iPad, you can use buttons instead of swipe gestures.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Apple TV Remote, then turn on Directional Buttons.

Make the pointer easier to see when using a mouse or trackpad with iPad

If you have difficulty seeing or following the pointer when you [use a mouse or trackpad](#) with iPad, you can change its size and color so it's easier to locate on the screen.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Pointer Control, then adjust any of the following:

- Increase Contrast
- Automatically Hide Pointer
- Color
- Pointer Size
- Pointer Animations
- Trackpad Inertia (available when a supported multi-touch trackpad is connected)
- Scrolling Speed

To customize the buttons of the pointing device, go to Settings > Accessibility > Touch > AssistiveTouch > Devices.

Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings for accessibility on iPad

You can set the onscreen keyboard on iPad to show only uppercase letters, and if you use a physical keyboard with your iPad, adjust key sensitivity and make it easier to press combinations of keys.

You can also [set typing options](#), such as auto-correction and slide to type, and [add keyboards](#) for other languages or alternative layouts.

Set the onscreen keyboard to display only uppercase letters

If it's easier to read uppercase letters, you can set an option so the onscreen keyboard doesn't display lowercase letters.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, then turn off Show Lowercase Keys.

Tip: Rotate iPad to landscape orientation to use a larger keyboard for typing in many apps, including Mail, Messages, Notes, and Safari. See [Change or lock the screen orientation](#).

Change how the keys respond on an external keyboard

If you [use a physical keyboard](#) with iPad, you can adjust the sensitivity of keys and make it easier to press combinations of keys.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap any of the following:

- *Key Repeat:* You can set how long you must press and hold a key before it starts repeating and how fast it repeats once it starts. You can also prevent the key from repeating at all.
- *Sticky Keys:* When you need to press multiple keys at the same time, you can press each key separately instead. For example, enter the keyboard shortcut Command-Z by pressing Command, then pressing Z.
- *Slow Keys:* Adjust the time between when you press a key and when it's activated.

Control iPad with an external keyboard

If you [use a physical keyboard](#) with iPad, you can use Full Keyboard Access to control your device with keyboard shortcuts instead of the touchscreen. Full Keyboard Access highlights the item on the screen that has focus.

Control iPad using Full Keyboard Access

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, tap Full Keyboard Access, then turn on Full Keyboard Access.

2. Navigate iPad using the following default commands.

Action	Shortcut
View available Full Keyboard Access commands	Tab-H
Move forward	Tab
Move backward	Shift-Tab
Activate the selected item	Space bar
Go to the Home Screen	Fn-H
Open the App Switcher	Fn-Up Arrow
Open Control Center	Fn-C
Open Notification Center	Fn-N

Customize Full Keyboard Access

You can change the keyboard shortcuts associated with Full Keyboard Access commands, and customize the appearance of Full Keyboard Access (such as the color, contrast, and size of the highlight).

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Keyboards, then tap Full Keyboard Access.
2. Do any of the following:
 - *View a complete list of Full Keyboard Access commands and customize them:* Tap Commands.
 - *Change the look of Full Keyboard Access:* Tap an option below Appearance.

Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods on iPad

If you have AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can adjust the accessibility settings to suit your mobility or hearing needs.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > AirPods.
2. If you have multiple AirPods, select one.
3. Set any of the following options:
 - *Press Speed:* Adjust how quickly you must press two or three times before an action occurs.
 - *Press and Hold Duration:* Adjust the duration required to press and hold on your AirPods.
 - *Noise Cancellation with One AirPods:* (AirPods Pro) Turn on noise cancellation even when you're using only one of your AirPods.
 - *Spatial Audio Head Tracking:* When you turn on Follow iPad, Spatial Audio sounds like it's coming from your iPad instead of following the movement of your head (for supported audio and video content).
4. To customize your audio, tap Audio Accessibility Settings.

Change Apple Pencil double tap and squeeze settings for accessibility

If you have difficulty using double tap or squeeze on Apple Pencil, you can adjust Apple Pencil settings for accessibility.

Note: Double tap is available on [supported iPad models](#) with Apple Pencil (2nd generation) and Apple Pencil Pro. Squeeze is available on supported iPad models with Apple Pencil Pro.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Apple Pencil.
2. Do any of the following:
 - Drag the slider to adjust how firmly you need to press for the squeeze action. Turn on Extended Range for additional firmness options.
 - Turn double tap on or off.
 - Choose a slower duration for double tap.

Tip: More options for customizing Apple Pencil are available in Apple Pencil settings. Go to Settings  > Apple Pencil.

Switch Control

Intro to Switch Control on iPad

Switch Control is an assistive technology for anyone with limited mobility. It enables you to interact with iPad by activating a *switch*, such as pressing an external adaptive button, performing a head movement, or making a voiced or voiceless sound. Using one or more switches, you can navigate a cursor around the iPad screen, then open the Scanner menu to choose an available action such as tap, zoom in, zoom out, and more.

What is a switch?

A switch can be an external hardware device or a feature on your iPad.

Switches on iPad don't require any additional hardware. For example:

- **Screen:** Use a tap or long press anywhere on the iPad screen. You can set up tap and long press as two different switches with separate actions.
- **Camera:** While in view of the front-facing iPad camera, move your head to the left or right, or pinch your left or right index finger and thumb. You can set up each gesture as a different switch with a separate action.
- **Back Tap:** Double-tap or triple-tap the back of iPad. You can set up double tap and triple tap as two different switches with separate actions.
- **Sound:** Make simple voiced sounds (such as "Oo") or voiceless sounds (such as a pop). You can set up each sound as a different switch with a separate action.
- **AirPods:** Nod or shake your head while wearing [supported AirPods](#) that are paired with your iPad. You can set up nod and shake as two different switches with separate actions.
- **Gaming:** Turn any switch into a virtual game controller to play your favorite games on iPad.

External switches connect to iPad through Bluetooth® or the Lightning connector or USB-C connector. For example:

- Adaptive accessory
- Joystick
- Game controller
- [MFi](#) switch or switch interface

How does Switch Control work?

In Switch Control, each switch performs a specific action—for example, Move To Next Item moves the cursor to the next item on the screen. The switch's action is performed when you activate the switch—such as by pressing the adaptive button, moving your head, or making a sound.

You can use just one switch, or you can use multiple switches for different actions, depending on how you like to work. For example, you can activate your Move to Next Item switch to move the cursor from one item to the next. When the cursor highlights the item you want, you can activate your Select Item switch.

Set up and turn on Switch Control on iPad

To set up [Switch Control](#), you need to connect and add one or more [switches](#), then assign an action to each switch. You can choose a scanning style and fine-tune other settings to suit your needs. After you turn on Switch Control, you may need to change the assigned actions or readjust the settings. If you have difficulty performing these steps, you can get personalized help at your nearest Apple Store.

Step 1: Connect an external switch (optional)

If you want to use an adaptive accessory, joystick, game controller, or [MFi](#) device for Switch Control, you need to first connect it to iPad by following the manufacturer's instructions. If the switch connects using Bluetooth®, you need to pair it with iPad.

1. Turn on the switch.
2. Go to Settings  > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, tap the name of the switch, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Step 2: Add switches and assign actions

You can use only one switch, or you can use multiple switches to accommodate different actions. Each switch performs an assigned action, such as selecting an item or moving the cursor to the next item.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches.
2. Tap Add New Switch, then choose External, Screen, Camera, Back Tap, or Sound.

If you're trying to add an external switch but it isn't shown in the list, make sure it's connected to your iPad as described above in [Step 1: Connect an external switch \(optional\)](#).

3. Assign an action to the switch.

The action for the switch depends on the number of switches you have and the scanning style you choose in [Step 3: Choose a scanning style](#), below. If you don't know which action to assign, choose Select Item, which is compatible with Auto Scanning (the default scanning style). You can return to this setting later to change the assigned action.

Tip: Turn your iPad into a game controller that uses gestures you've already set up, like the same switch (or alternative input method) that you navigate and control your iPad with.

Step 3: Choose a scanning style

By default, the cursor automatically moves from one item to the next after a specified duration. If you prefer to move the cursor manually, you can choose a different scanning style.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control > Scanning Style, then choose one of the following:

- **Auto Scanning:** The cursor automatically moves to the next item after a specified duration. This is the default scanning style.
If you use Auto Scanning with just one switch, make sure the Select Item action is assigned to the switch.

- *Manual Scanning:* When you activate your Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item.

Manual Scanning requires at least two switches. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to one switch, and the Select Item action is assigned to another switch.

- *Single Switch Step Scanning:* When you activate the Move to Next Item switch, the cursor moves to the next item; if no action is taken within a specified duration, the current item is automatically selected.

This scanning style requires only one switch. Make sure the Move to Next Item action is assigned to the switch.

Step 4: Fine-tune Switch Control settings

You can adjust the behavior of Switch Control in a variety of ways, to suit your specific needs and style. For example, you can change the scanning speed or have iPad speak the highlighted items.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control, then adjust any of the following:

- *Auto Scanning Time:* Adjust the item scanning speed.
- *Pause on First Item:* Set scanning to pause on the first item in a group.
- *Loops:* Choose how many times to cycle through the screen before hiding Switch Control.
- *Move Repeat:* Set the delay before moving to the previous or next item while a switch is pressed.
- *Long Press:* Set whether a different action occurs when you press and hold a switch, and how long to wait before performing that action.
- *Tap Behavior:* Choose a tap behavior and set the interval for performing a second switch action to show the Scanner menu.
- *Focused Item After Tap:* Choose whether Switch Control resumes scanning at an item you tap or from the beginning.
- *Hold Duration:* Specify how long you need to press and hold a switch before it's accepted as a switch action.
- *Ignore Repeat:* Ignore accidental repeated switch triggers.
- *Sound Effects:* Turn on sound effects.
- *Speech:* Speak items as they're scanned.
- *Menu Items:* Choose the actions shown in the Scanner menu and the order in which they appear.
- *Group Items:* Group items for faster navigation.
- *Large Cursor:* Make the highlight more prominent.
- *Cursor Color:* Choose a different highlight color.

Step 5: Turn on Switch Control

Important: When Switch Control is turned on, you can't use the standard gestures on the touchscreen to exit Switch Control.

Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control, then turn on Switch Control.

Tip: You can add Switch Control to [Accessibility Shortcut](#), then quickly turn it on or off by triple-clicking the Home button (on iPad with a Home button) or the top button (on other iPad models).

Use Switch Control on iPad to select items, perform actions, and more

After you [set up and turn on Switch Control](#), you can select items on the screen by doing any of the following:

- *Item mode:* The cursor sequentially highlights items or groups of items. This is the default method when you first turn on Switch Control and whenever the Scanner menu appears.
- *Gliding cursor:* You select a point on the screen using scanning crosshairs. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.
- *Head tracking:* On [supported models](#), you can move your head (detected by the front-facing camera) to control the cursor on the screen. This method is useful when you need to select a specific point, such as in Maps, or on a screen with many items.

When the cursor is on the item you want, the Scanner menu opens to show the available actions such as tap, scroll, control the volume, and more.

Use item mode to select items and perform actions

1. Depending on the [scanning style](#) you're using, do one of the following:
 - *If using Auto Scanning:* Watch or listen as groups of items are sequentially highlighted.
 - *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.
 - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Activate your Move to Next Item switch to navigate through the groups of items on the screen.
2. When the group you want is highlighted, do one of the following:
 - *If using Auto Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.
 - *If using Manual Scanning:* Activate your Select Item switch.
 - *If using Single Switch Step Scanning:* Wait until the current group is automatically selected.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and select an item within the group.
4. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to scan and choose an action in the Scanner menu. The dots at the bottom of the menu provide more options.

To dismiss the Scanner menu without choosing an action, activate your Select Item switch when the original item is highlighted and all the icons in the menu are dimmed.

Use the gliding cursor to select a point

By default, Switch Control starts in item mode. To use the gliding cursor instead, do the following:

1. [Use item mode](#) to select any item, then choose Gliding Cursor (in the Scanner menu).
2. To position the vertical crosshair, activate your Select Item switch when the wide vertical band is over the item you want.
3. Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine vertical line is over the item.
4. To position the horizontal crosshair, activate your Select Item switch when the wide horizontal band is over the item you want.
5. Activate your Select Item switch again when the fine horizontal line is over the item.
6. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

Set up head tracking

On an [iPad with Face ID](#), you can move your head to control a cursor on the screen. You can also assign actions to facial expressions, such as a smile or raised eyebrows.

To set up head tracking, do the following:

- Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Switch Control > Switches, then make sure you've [set up switches](#).
- Go to Settings > Accessibility > Switch Control > Head Tracking, turn on Head Tracking, then set any of these options:
 - *Assign actions to facial expressions:* Each expression can perform a different action and require a different degree of expressiveness.
 - *Choose how the pointer tracks your head movement:* Tap Tracking Mode, then choose With Face, When Facing Screen Edges, or Relative to Head.
 - *Adjust the pointer speed:* Tap  or .

Use head tracking

To use head tracking, do the following:

1. [Use item mode](#) to select any item, then choose Head Tracking (in the Scanner menu).
2. Move your head to position the cursor on the location you want, then activate it using your Select Item switch or facial expression.
3. In the Scanner menu, select the action you want, then activate your Select Item switch or facial expression.

To return to item mode, open the Scanner menu, then choose Item Mode.

Control several devices with one switch on iPad

You can remotely control your other Apple devices without adjusting any switch connections. With Platform Switching, you can navigate your iPad, Mac, or Apple TV using the same switch that you use to control your iPad.

1. Connect your devices to the same Wi-Fi network.
2. [Sign in with the same Apple Account](#) on all your devices.
3. [Set up and turn on Switch Control](#), then turn on Switch Control for the others: [iPhone](#), [Mac](#), or [Apple TV](#).
4. [Use the switch](#) to open the Scanner menu.
5. Choose Device, choose Use Other Device, then choose Connect.

To remove control from your iPad, choose Devices on the connected device, then choose Disconnect.

Hearing

Accessibility features for hearing on iPad

iPad comes with built-in tools designed to help you hear better—or stay connected without hearing a sound.

To explore accessibility features for hearing, go to Settings  > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Hearing section.

Use alternatives to sound

With Live Captions, get a transcription of the audio from any app and from live conversations around you.

[Get live captions of spoken audio](#)

Change how subtitles look. Or instead of standard subtitles, use closed captions and SDH when available.

[Display subtitles and captions](#)

If you can't hear your alerts, get notified visually.

[Flash the indicator light for notifications](#)

With Sound Recognition, have iPad listen for sounds—such as a doorbell or siren—and alert you when it recognizes them.

Recognize sounds

Type your Siri requests instead of speaking them.

Change Siri accessibility settings

Type to communicate on calls. The person you’re talking to sees your message as you type it.

Set up and use RTT

	Get real-time captions of spoken audio		Customize subtitles and captions
	Blink the iPad light for notifications		Get notified about sounds around you
	Type to Siri		Make Real-Time Text (RTT) calls

You can also get transcriptions of [audio messages](#), [HomePod Intercom messages](#), and [podcasts](#).

Use hearing devices and make audio adjustments

Pair [Made for iPhone \(MFi\)](#) hearing aids or sound processors with iPad and adjust their settings.

Use hearing devices

Stream sound from the iPad microphone to your MFi hearing devices or AirPods.

Use Live Listen

Play stereo audio as mono, adjust left-right stereo balance, and more.

Adjust audio settings

Set accessibility options for AirPods and other Apple headphones paired with your iPad.

Adjust the accessibility settings for AirPods

Have your iPad play ambient sounds—such as ocean waves or rain—to help you focus or rest.

Play background sounds

	Hearing devices		Live Listen
	Audio balance		AirPods
	Background sounds		

You can also [have Siri announce notifications and calls](#) on your MFi hearing devices.

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

Use hearing devices with iPad

You can use [MFi](#) hearing aids or sound processors with iPad and adjust their settings. See the Apple Support article [Made for iPhone compatible hearing devices](#) for a list of models that work well with iPad.

Pair hearing devices with iPad

If your hearing devices aren’t listed in Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, you need to pair them with iPad.

If your hearing devices are already paired to another nearby device, such as a Mac or iPad, make sure Bluetooth[®] is turned off on those devices. (When you finish pairing your hearing devices to your iPad, you can turn Bluetooth on again on those devices.)

1. On iPad, go to Settings > Bluetooth, then make sure Bluetooth is turned on.
2. Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices.

3. Turn your hearing devices off and back on again.

If you're unsure how to turn them off, refer to the instructions that came with them, or check with the audiologist who helped you set them up.

4. When their name appears below MFi Hearing Devices (this could take a minute), tap the name and respond to the pairing requests.

Pairing can take as long as 60 seconds—don't try to stream audio or otherwise use the hearing devices until pairing is finished. When pairing is finished, you hear a series of beeps and a tone, and a checkmark appears next to the hearing devices in the Devices list.

You need to pair your devices only once (and your audiologist might do it for you). After that, your hearing devices automatically reconnect to iPad whenever they turn on.

Adjust the settings and view the status of your hearing devices

- *In Settings:* Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices.
- *By triple-clicking the top or Home button:* Use the [Accessibility Shortcut](#) if you've set it up.
- *In Control Center:* Tap . (If you don't see , add it to [Control Center](#).)
- *On the Lock Screen:* Go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices > MFi Hearing Devices, then turn on Control on Lock Screen. From the Lock Screen, you can do the following:
 - Check battery status.
 - Adjust ambient microphone volume and equalization.
 - Choose which hearing device (left, right, or both) receives streaming audio.
 - Control Live Listen.
 - Choose whether phone and media audio are routed to the hearing device.

Use your hearing devices with more than one device

If you pair your hearing devices with more than one device (both iPhone and iPad, for example), the connection for your hearing devices automatically switches from one to the other when you do something that generates audio on the other device, or when you receive a phone call on iPhone.

Changes you make to hearing device settings on one device are automatically synced with your other devices.

1. [Sign in to your Apple Account](#) on all the devices.
2. Connect all the devices to the same Wi-Fi network.

Stream audio to your hearing devices

You can stream audio from Siri , Apple Music , Apple Podcasts , Apple TV , and more.

1. Tap  in Control Center, on the Lock Screen, or in the Now Playing controls for the app you're listening to.
2. Choose your hearing device.

You can also automatically [route audio calls](#) to a hearing device.

To troubleshoot issues you have using your hearing devices with iPad, see the Apple Support article, [Use Made for iPhone hearing devices](#).

Use iPad as a remote microphone with Live Listen

You can stream sound from the microphone on iPad to your [MFi](#) hearing devices or AirPods. This can help you hear better in some situations—for example, when having a conversation in a noisy environment.

1. If you're using AirPods, place them in your ears.

If your AirPods don't automatically connect to iPad, tap  in Control Center or on the Lock Screen, then choose your AirPods.
2. To turn Live Listen on or off, do one of the following:
 - [Open Control Center](#), tap , tap your hearing device or AirPods, then tap Live Listen.

(If you don't see , add it to Control Center—go to Settings  > Control Center, then tap  next to Hearing.)
 - If you've [set up the Accessibility Shortcut](#), triple-click the side or Home button, tap Hearing Devices, then tap Live Listen.
 - If you're using hearing aids, go to Settings > Accessibility > Hearing Devices, then turn on Live Listen.
3. Position iPad near the sound source.

Recognize sounds using iPad

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __ " Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

Your iPad can continuously listen for certain sounds—such as a doorbell, siren, or crying baby—and notify you when it recognizes these sounds.

Note: Don't rely on your iPad to recognize sounds in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, in high-risk or emergency situations, or for navigation.

Set up Sound Recognition

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Sound Recognition, then turn on Sound Recognition.

2. Tap Sounds, then turn on the sounds you want iPad to recognize.

Tip: To quickly turn Sound Recognition on or off, add it to [Control Center](#).

Add a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell

You can also set up iPad to recognize a custom alarm, appliance, or doorbell if they aren't recognized automatically.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Sound Recognition > Sounds.
2. Tap Custom Alarm or Custom Appliance or Doorbell, then enter a name.
3. When your alarm, appliance, or doorbell is ready, place iPad near the sound and minimize background noise.
4. Tap Start Listening, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Set up and use RTT on iPad

<__ class="__ GenerativeKeywords" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-do-not-answer

With real-time text (RTT) and Wi-Fi calling on your iPhone, you can also make and receive RTT calls in the FaceTime app  on your iPad.

Important: RTT isn't supported by all carriers or in all countries or regions. RTT functionality depends on your carrier and network environment. When making an emergency call in the U.S., iPhone sends special characters or tones to alert the operator. The operator's ability to receive or respond to these tones can vary depending on your location. Apple doesn't guarantee that the operator will be able to receive or respond to an RTT call.

Set up RTT

1. Make sure you can [make and receive Wi-Fi calls on iPad](#).
2. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > RTT.
3. Turn on Software RTT, then do any of the following.
 - Tap Relay Number, then enter the phone number to use for relay calls using Software RTT.
 - Turn on Send Immediately to send each character as you type. Turn it off to complete messages before sending.

When RTT is turned on,  appears in the status bar at the top of the screen.

Start an RTT call

1. Open the FaceTime app  on iPad.
2. Tap New FaceTime, then type the name or number you want to call or tap  to add a contact.
3. Tap , tap Call, then tap RTT Call or RTT Relay Call.

Type text during an RTT call

1. After accepting or a [starting an RTT call](#) in the FaceTime app  on iPad, tap Use RTT, then tap .
2. Enter your message in the text field.

If you turned on Send Immediately in Settings, your recipient sees each character as you type. Otherwise, tap  to send the message.
3. To also transmit audio, tap  in the top-right corner.

Note: Standard voice call rates apply for RTT calls.

Flash the iPad indicator light for notifications

On an [iPad with an indicator light](#), you can set it to blink when you receive a notification. This can be useful if you can't hear the sounds that announce incoming calls or other alerts, or if you might miss audible alerts in a noisy environment.

The indicator light is the light-emitting diode (LED) located on the back of iPad, next to the camera lens.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio & Visual, then turn on LED Flash for Alerts.
2. Turn any of the following on or off:
 - *Flash While Unlocked:* The indicator light flashes even when iPad is unlocked.
 - *Flash in Silent Mode:* The indicator light flashes even when iPad is in Silent mode.

Adjust audio settings on iPad

You can use mono audio, adjust left-right stereo balance, and—with supported headphones—amplify soft sounds and adjust certain frequencies to best suit your hearing needs.

Balance the audio

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio & Visual.

2. Adjust any of the following:

- *Mono Audio*: Turn on Mono Audio to make the left and right speakers play the same content.
- *Stereo Audio Balance*: Drag the Balance slider left or right.

Adjust certain frequencies and soft sounds

With Headphone Accommodations for [supported Apple and Beats headphones](#), you can adjust certain sounds to best suit your hearing. Make soft sounds louder and boost some frequencies so phone calls and media sound crisper and clearer.

1. Make sure you're in a quiet environment and that you've [paired your AirPods](#) or [paired other supported Bluetooth® headphones](#).
2. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio & Visual > Headphone Accommodations, then turn on Headphone Accommodations.
3. Adjust any of the following:
 - *Frequencies*: Below Tune Audio For, choose an option to boost different frequencies.
 - *Soft sounds*: Drag the slider to set an amplification level for soft sounds.
4. Scroll down, then do any of the following:
 - Turn on Phone to apply the settings to phone calls.
 - Turn on Media to apply the settings to media playback like music, movies, and podcasts.

With some supported headphones, you can use Headphone Accommodations to personalize your headphone audio based on what sounds good to you. Tap Custom Audio Setup, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Tip: Quickly access Headphone Accommodations by tapping  in [Control Center](#). (If you don't see , add it—tap , tap Add a Control, scroll down to Hearing Accessibility, then tap Headphone Accommodations.)

For information about applying Headphone Accommodations settings to Transparency Mode and Conversation Boost when using AirPods Pro and iPad, see [Customize Transparency mode for AirPods Pro](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

Make dialogue sound clearer in videos

When you watch supported video content, you can turn on voice isolation so the dialogue is easier to hear. During dialogue, voices are isolated and all other audio is substantially reduced.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio & Visual.
2. Turn on Add Voice Isolation.
3. While watching a supported video in the Apple TV app , do one of the following:
 - Tap .
 - Tap , then tap Audio.
4. Tap Enhance Dialogue, then tap Isolate.

Play background sounds on iPad

You can have iPad play ambient background sounds—such as ocean waves or rain—to help you focus or rest.

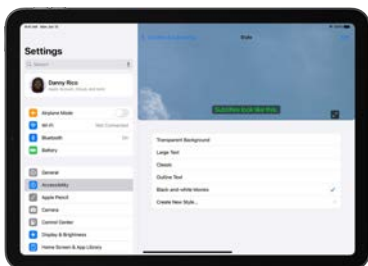
1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Audio & Visual > Background Sounds, then turn on Background Sounds.

Tip: Control Background Sounds with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#)

2. Set any of the following:
 - *Sound*: Choose a sound; the audio file downloads to your iPad.
 - *Volume*: Drag the slider.
 - *Use When Media is Playing*: Adjust the volume of the background sound when iPad is playing music or other media.
 - *Stop Sounds When Locked*: Background sounds stop playing when iPad is locked.

Display subtitles and captions on iPad

iPad can provide subtitles, closed captions, and transcriptions so you can follow along more easily with audio and video.



Turn on subtitles and captions in the Apple TV app

When you play video content in a supported app, you can turn on subtitles and closed captions (if available). iPad usually shows standard subtitles and captions, but you can also choose special accessible captions—such as subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing (SDH)—if available.

1. While playing video content, tap .
2. Choose from the list of available subtitles and captions.

Customize the subtitles and captions in supported video apps

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning.
2. If you prefer closed captioning or subtitles for the deaf and hard of hearing when available, turn on Closed Captions + SDH.
3. Tap Style, then choose an existing caption style or create a new style based on the following:
 - Font, size, and color
 - Background color and opacity
 - Text opacity, edge style, and highlight

Show transcriptions for Intercom messages from HomePod on iPad

If members of your home [use HomePod for Intercom messages](#), iPad can transcribe the messages for you.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Subtitles & Captioning, then turn on Show Audio Transcriptions.
2. In the Home app , tap , then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Intercom, then choose when you receive notifications.

See [Use HomePod as an Intercom](#) in the HomePod User Guide.

Get live captions of spoken audio on iPad

<__ class=" GenerativeKeywords __" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

With Live Captions on iPad, you can get a real-time transcription of spoken audio. Use Live Captions to more easily follow the audio in any app, such as FaceTime or Podcasts, and in live conversations around you.

Note: Live Captions is available on [supported models](#) when the [primary language is set](#) to English (U.S.) or English (Canada). The accuracy of Live Captions may vary and shouldn't be relied upon in high-risk or emergency situations.

Set up and customize Live Captions

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Live Captions, then turn on Live Captions.
2. Tap Appearance to customize the text, size, and color of the captions.
3. By default, Live Captions are shown across all apps. To get live captions only for certain apps such as FaceTime or RTT, turn them on below In-App Live Captions.

Use Live Captions

With Live Captions turned on, iPad automatically transcribes the spoken audio in apps—or from dialogue around you. You can do any of the following:

- *Transcribe an in-person conversation:* Tap Live Captions, then tap Microphone.
- *Transcribe iPad audio:* Tap Live Captions, then tap iPad Audio.
- *Pause the transcription:* Tap Live Captions, then tap Pause Listening.
- *Move the Live Captions window:* Drag the Live Captions window to reposition it on the screen.
- *Hide the Live Captions window:* The Live Captions window is automatically hidden when no audio is detected. If the window is showing, swipe left or right on the window to hide it. To restore the window, tap .
- *Make the transcription window full-screen:* Tap . To restore the window to the smaller size, tap .

Speech

Accessibility features for speech on iPad

iPad comes with built-in tools for communicating in the way that works best for you, whether you're nonspeaking, at risk of speech loss, or someone with a speech disability. You can have what you type spoken out loud, create a synthesized voice that sounds like you, and more.

To explore accessibility features for speech, go to Settings  > Accessibility, then scroll down to the Speech section.

Type to speak

If you're unable to speak or you have a speech disability, type what you want to say and have iPad speak it.

[Type to speak using Live Speech](#)

If you're at risk of losing your ability to speak, create a synthesized voice that sounds like you.

[Record your Personal Voice](#)

Type your Siri requests instead of speaking them.

[Type instead of speaking to Siri](#)



Live Speech



Personal Voice



Type to Siri

Control iPad with your voice

Speak commands to navigate and interact with what's on the screen, dictate and edit text, and more.

[Use Voice Control commands](#)

You can use voiced or voiceless sounds—like an S-sound or a mouth pop—to navigate and interact with what's on the screen.

[Use sound actions with Switch Control](#)

Have iPad perform an action when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing.

[Use Vocal Shortcuts](#)

If you have an acquired or progressive condition that affects speech, have Siri recognize a wider range of atypical speech patterns.

[Change Siri accessibility settings](#)



Use voice commands



Use simple sounds



Vocal Shortcuts



Have Siri listen for atypical speech

You can also [have Siri wait longer for you to finish speaking](#), or use [Dictation](#) to enter text using just your voice.

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

Type to speak using Live Speech on iPad

If you're unable to speak or have lost your speech over time, you can use Live Speech on iPad to have what you type spoken out loud during in-person conversations and in apps like FaceTime. You can choose from dozens of system voices or use [a Personal Voice you create](#).

Note: Live Speech is not available in all languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability](#) webpage.

Turn on Live Speech

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Live Speech, then turn on Live Speech.
2. Choose a voice. You can use Live Speech with any voice you choose, including your Personal Voice.
3. Triple-click the top button or Home button (depending on your iPad model), then tap Live Speech (if the Accessibility Shortcut is set up with more than one feature).

Have what you type spoken out loud

1. After you [turn on Live Speech](#), type what you want to have spoken in the Live Speech window.
You can also paste copied text into the window, or tap suggested words that appear above the keyboard as you type.
2. Tap Speak to have your text spoken out loud.

If you're on a FaceTime call, Live Speech is output on the other end of the call. Otherwise, the speaker on your iPad outputs Live Speech.

Have saved phrases spoken out loud

With Live Speech, you can select from a list of phrases you use often.

1. After you [turn on Live Speech](#), tap Keyboard at the top of the Live Speech window.
2. Tap a category, like Recent or Saved, then tap a phrase to have it spoken out loud.
3. To hide your saved phrases and return to entering text with the keyboard, tap Phrases at the top of the Live Speech window.

Add or remove saved phrases

Add or remove phrases from the list of saved phrases that you use often.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Live Speech, then tap Phrases.

2. Tap Saved or another category you've created, then do any of the following:
 - *Add a saved phrase:* Tap [+](#), enter your phrase in the text field, then tap Save.
 - *Remove a saved phrase:* Tap a phrase, then tap Delete Phrase.

Create categories for saved phrases

Organize your saved phrases into categories, such as for different activities—like work, school, or gaming.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Live Speech, then tap Phrases.
2. Tap [+](#), enter a name for the category, choose an icon, then tap Done.

Record your personal voice on iPad

If you're at risk of speech loss or someone with a speech disability, you can use Personal Voice on iPad to create a synthesized voice that sounds like you. You can use your personal voice with Live Speech and [have what you type spoken out loud on iPad](#) during in-person conversations, in Phone and FaceTime calls, and in assistive communication apps.

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Personal Voice.
2. Tap Create a Personal Voice, then follow the onscreen instructions.
(If you need to pause your recording session, tap Done. To resume, tap Continue Recording.)

Note: To see the option to create your personal voice, you must first [set a passcode](#). Personal Voice is available on supported iPad models and is not available in all languages. See the Apple Support article [Create a Personal Voice on your iPhone, iPad, or Mac](#).

Your personal voice is saved securely on your iPad for you to use during Phone and FaceTime calls, in-person conversations, and third-party alternative and augmentative communication (AAC) apps.

Important: Personal Voice can be used only with Live Speech and with third-party apps that you allow, such as Augmentative and Alternative Communication (AAC) apps. You can use Personal Voice only to create a voice that sounds like you on device, using your own voice, and for your own personal, noncommercial use. Your [Legacy Contact](#) won't be able to access your Personal Voice.

Use Vocal Shortcuts on iPad

With Vocal Shortcuts, you can teach iPad to perform an action when you speak a word or another sound of your choosing. Vocal Shortcuts can be useful if you have moderate to severe atypical speech but can reliably vocalize certain utterances. Audio is processed on device.

Set up Vocal Shortcuts

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Vocal Shortcuts.
2. Tap Set Up, then tap Continue.
3. Choose an action for iPad to perform when you say the shortcut. If you want the action to be a request to Siri, tap Siri Request, then enter the request.
4. Enter the phrase you'll say when you want iPad to perform the action, then follow the onscreen instructions to repeat the phrase out loud so that iPad can recognize it.

Add a Vocal Shortcut

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Vocal Shortcuts.
2. Tap Add Action, then tap Continue.
3. Choose an action for iPad to perform when you say the shortcut. If you want the action to be a request to Siri, tap Siri Request, then enter the request.
4. Enter the phrase you'll say when you want iPad to perform the action, then follow the onscreen instructions to repeat the phrase out loud so that iPad can recognize it.

Use a Vocal Shortcut

After you've [set up Vocal Shortcuts](#), just say the phrase for one the [shortcuts you've created](#).

Delete a Vocal Shortcut

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Vocal Shortcuts.
2. Tap Edit, tap  next to the shortcut you want to delete, then tap Delete.

Tip: If you have an acquired or progressive condition that affects speech, you can have Siri listen for and recognize a wider range of atypical speech patterns. See [Change Siri accessibility settings](#).

Cognitive

Cognitive accessibility features on iPad

iPad comes with built-in options to suit your cognitive needs—or those of someone you care for.

To explore accessibility features on iPad, go to Settings  > Accessibility.

Adapt iPad for someone you care for

If someone you care for has a cognitive disability, set up an iPad with a simplified interface. Choose and customize core features that work best for them.

[Assistive Access User Guide](#)

When you let a child use your iPad, limit their access to a single app.

[Lock iPad to one app](#)



Keep iPad simple



Lock iPad to one app

You can also reduce sensory stimulus from the screen—for example, automatically dim the display of content that depicts flashing or strobing lights, and pause the display of rapid animated images such as GIFs. See [Stop or reduce onscreen motion](#).

iPad offers many additional tools to help you focus, make it easier to enter text, or follow along with what you're reading or listening to with features like [Focus](#), [Dictation](#), [Spoken Content](#), and [Live Captions](#).

For more resources, visit the [Apple Cognitive Accessibility webpage](#).

Tip: Control your go-to accessibility features and settings with the click of a button or from Control Center. See [Quickly open features with Accessibility Shortcut](#).

Lock iPad to one app with Guided Access

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

With Guided Access, you can temporarily restrict iPad to a single app. This can be useful when you let a child use your iPad or when you want to stay focused on a task. You can set a time limit, and customize which features, hardware buttons, and areas of the screen are available.



Set up Guided Access

1. Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Guided Access, then turn on Guided Access.
2. Adjust any of the following:
 - **Passcode Settings:** Tap Set Guided Access Passcode, then enter a passcode.
You can also turn on [Face ID](#) (on an iPad with Face ID) or [Touch ID](#) (on other iPad models) as a way to end a Guided Access session.
 - **Time Limits:** Play a sound or speak the time remaining before a Guided Access session ends.
 - **Accessibility Shortcut:** Allow the use of [Accessibility Shortcut](#) during Guided Access sessions.
 - **Display Auto-Lock:** Set how long it takes iPad to automatically lock during a Guided Access session.

Start a Guided Access session

1. Open the app you want to use.
2. To turn on Guided Access, do one of the following:
Say something like: "Turn on Guided Access." [Learn how to use Siri](#).
 - Use [Control Center](#) if you've added Guided Access there.
 - Use the [Accessibility Shortcut](#).
3. Circle any areas of the screen you want to disable. Drag the mask into position or use the handles to adjust its size.

4. Tap Options, then turn on or off any of the following:

- Top Button
- Volume Buttons
- Motion (to prevent iPad from switching from portrait to landscape or from responding to other motions)
- Software Keyboards
- Touch
- Time Limit

5. Tap Start.

End a Guided Access session

Depending on the passcode options you chose when you [set up Guided Access](#), do any of the following:

- *Use the passcode:* Triple-click the top button (on an iPad with Face ID) or Home button (on other iPad models), then enter the Guided Access passcode. If you didn't set a Guided Access passcode, enter your iPad passcode.
- *Use Face ID or Touch ID:* If you turned on the Face ID or Touch ID option in Guided Access Passcode Settings, double-click the top button or Home button, then unlock your iPad with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your iPad model).

To set up an iPad with a simplified user interface and a customizable set of core features, see the [Assistive Access User Guide](#).

Privacy and security

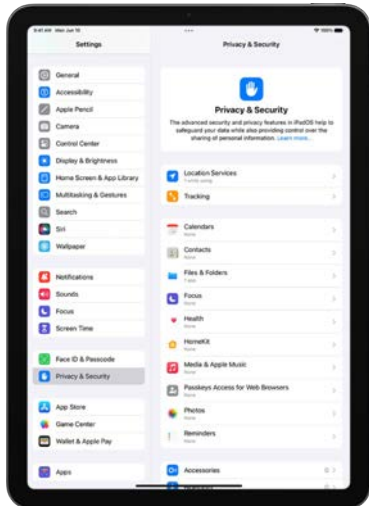
Control what you share on iPad

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-needs-review

Apps ask for permission the first time they want to use something on your iPad. You can control which apps can access your data, location, camera, and microphone, and manage safety protections. You can later change how much you want to share.

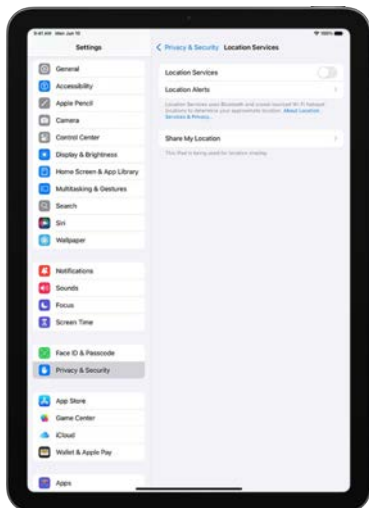
Control which apps have access to information on your iPad



You can let third-party apps use information in your iPad apps—such as Contacts, Photos, and Calendar—to help you get things done more quickly. For example, a message app may request access to your contacts to find friends who are using the same app. You can turn access on or off for any individual app.

[How to allow access to information in iPad apps](#)

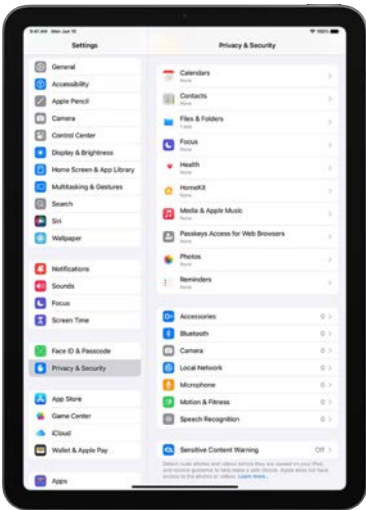
Control which apps can use the location of your iPad



When you give apps access to the location of your iPad, those apps can help you get directions, receive assistance in an emergency, and more. For example, a ride-sharing app may request access to your location to pick you up. When an app is using Location Services,  appears in the status bar.

[How to allow access to the location of your iPad](#)

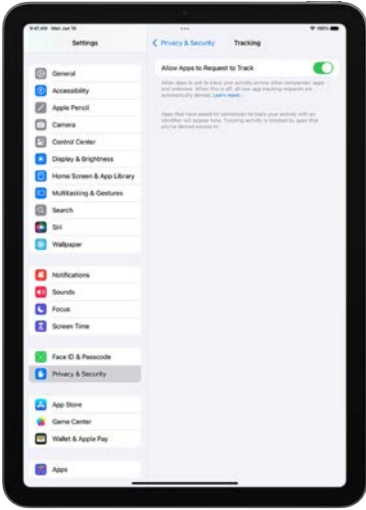
Control which apps have access to the camera and microphone on your iPad



You can let apps use the camera and microphone to make it easier to post content directly to those apps. For example, a social networking app may ask to use your camera so that you can take and upload pictures to that app. Whenever an app uses the camera (including when the camera and microphone are used together), a green indicator appears.

[How to allow access to the camera and microphone](#)

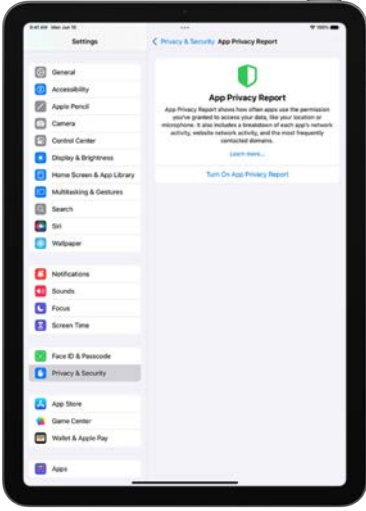
Control which apps can track you or your iPad across websites or other apps



All apps are required to ask your permission before tracking you or your iPad across websites or apps owned by other companies (for example, advertising or to share your information with data brokers). After you grant or deny permission to an app, you can change permission later. You can also stop all apps from requesting permission.

[How to allow access to your web activity](#)

Review how apps are using the permissions you grant them



You can see how apps are using the permissions you've granted them, and their network activity, by reviewing an App Privacy Report.

[How to view an app privacy report](#)

To learn more about how Apple protects your information, go to the [Privacy website](#). To learn how Apple designs security into the core of its platforms, see the [Apple Platform Security Guide](#).

Protect access to your iPad

Set a passcode on iPad

For better security, set a passcode that needs to be entered to unlock iPad when you turn it on or wake it. Setting a passcode also turns on data protection, which encrypts your iPad data with 256-bit AES encryption. (Some apps may opt out of using data protection.)

Set or change the passcode

1. Go to Settings , then depending on your model, tap one of the following:

- Face ID & Passcode
- Touch ID & Passcode

2. Tap Turn Passcode On or Change Passcode.

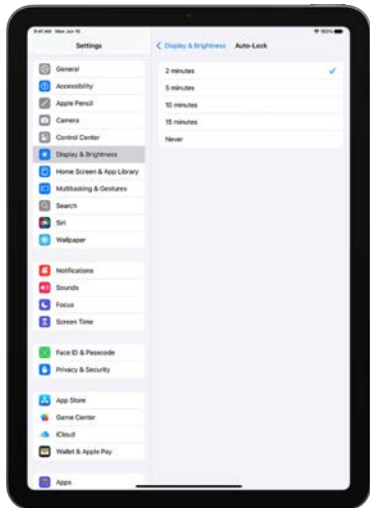
To view options for creating a passcode, tap Passcode Options. The most secure options are Custom Alphanumeric Code and Custom Numeric Code.

After you set a passcode, on supported models you can use [Face ID](#) or [Touch ID](#) to unlock iPad (depending on your model). For additional security, however, you must always enter your passcode to unlock your iPad under the following conditions:

- You turn on or restart your iPad.
- You haven't unlocked your iPad for more than 48 hours.
- You haven't unlocked your iPad with the passcode in the last 6.5 days, and you haven't unlocked it with Face ID or Touch ID in the last 4 hours.
- Your iPad receives a remote lock command.
- There are five unsuccessful attempts to unlock your iPad with Face ID or Touch ID.

Change when iPad automatically locks

Go to Settings  > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then set a length of time.



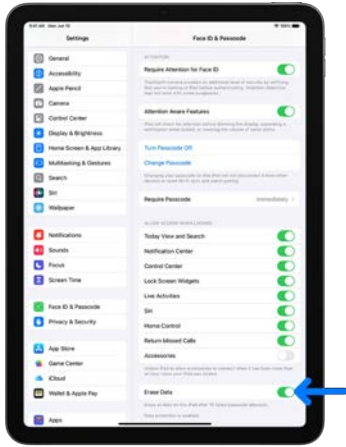
Erase data after 10 failed passcodes

Set iPad to erase all information, media, and personal settings after 10 consecutive failed passcode attempts.

1. Go to Settings , then depending on your model, tap one of the following:

- Face ID & Passcode
- Touch ID & Passcode
- Passcode

2. Turn on Erase Data.



Note: If you keep your iPad on the Home Screen and don't take any action, your Auto-Lock time is reduced by half.

After all data is erased, you must [restore iPad from a backup](#). If you didn't back up your iPad, you need to [set it up again as new](#).

Turn off the passcode

1. Go to Settings , then depending on your model, tap one of the following:

- Face ID & Passcode
- Touch ID & Passcode
- Passcode

2. Tap Turn Passcode Off.

Reset the passcode

If you enter the wrong passcode four times in a row, you'll be locked out of your device, and you'll receive a message that says iPad is disabled. If you can't remember your passcode, you can erase your iPad with a computer or with recovery mode, then set a new passcode. See the Apple Support article [If you forgot your iPad passcode](#).

Note: If you made an iCloud or computer backup before you forgot your passcode, you can restore your data and settings from the backup.

Set up Face ID on iPad

Use Face ID ([supported models](#)) to securely and conveniently unlock iPad, authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps by simply glancing at your iPad.

To use Face ID, you must also [set a passcode](#) on your iPad.

Set up Face ID or add an alternate appearance

- If you didn't set up Face ID when you first set up your iPad, go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode > Set up Face ID, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- To set up an additional appearance for Face ID to recognize, go to Settings > Face ID & Passcode > Set Up an Alternate Appearance, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Choose when to use Face ID

You can use Face ID to unlock your iPad, authorize payments, automatically fill in passwords, and open password-protected apps.

Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode, then turn on options below Use Face ID For.

Temporarily disable Face ID

You can temporarily prevent Face ID from unlocking your iPad.

1. Press and hold the top button and either volume button for 2 seconds.
2. After the sliders appear, press the top button to immediately lock iPad.
iPad locks automatically if you don't touch the screen for a minute or so.

The next time you unlock iPad with your passcode, Face ID is enabled again.

Turn off Face ID

1. Go to Settings  > Face ID & Passcode.
2. Do one of the following:
 - *Turn off Face ID for specific items only:* Turn off one or more of the options.
 - *Turn off Face ID:* Tap Reset Face ID.

If your device is lost or stolen, you can prevent Face ID from being used to unlock your device. See [Mark a device as lost in Find My](#).

For more information about Face ID, see [About Face ID advanced technology](#).

Set up Touch ID on iPad

On an iPad with a Home button, iPad (10th generation), iPad Air (4th generation and later), or iPad mini (6th generation), you can use Touch ID to securely and conveniently [unlock iPad](#), authorize purchases and payments, and sign in to many third-party apps.

To use Touch ID, you must [set a passcode](#) on your iPad.

Turn on Touch ID

1. Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Turn on any of the options below Use Touch ID For, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you turn on iTunes & App Store, you're asked for your [Apple Account](#) password when you make your first purchase from the App Store, Apple Books, or the iTunes Store. When you make your next purchases, you're asked to use Touch ID.

Note: If you can't add a fingerprint or unlock your iPad using Touch ID, see the Apple Support article [If Touch ID isn't working on your iPhone or iPad](#).

Choose when to use Touch ID

You can use Touch ID to unlock your iPad, authorize payments, automatically fill in passwords, and open password-protected apps.

Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode, then turn on options below Use Touch ID For.

Add a fingerprint

You can add multiple fingerprints (both of your thumbs and forefingers, for example).

1. Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.
2. Tap Add a Fingerprint.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Name or delete a fingerprint

1. Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode.

If you added more than one fingerprint, do one of the following to identify its print:

- *On an iPad with a Home button:* Rest a finger on the Home button.
- *On iPad (10th generation), iPad mini (6th generation), and iPad Air (4th generation and later):* Rest a finger on the top button.

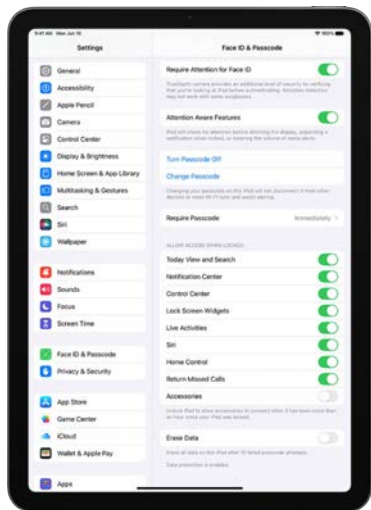
2. Tap the fingerprint, then enter a name (such as "Thumb") or tap Delete Fingerprint.

Turn off Touch ID

Go to Settings  > Touch ID & Passcode, then turn off one or more of the options.

Turn on Lock Screen features on iPad

You can make some commonly used features (such as Control Center, widgets, and media playback controls) available on the Lock Screen for easy access when iPad is locked.



1. Go to Settings , then depending on your model, tap one of the following:
 - Face ID & Passcode
 - Touch ID & Passcode
 - Passcode

2. Turn on options below Allow Access When Locked.

If you turn off Lock Screen access to a feature, you prevent someone who has your iPad from viewing any personal information that it might contain (such as an upcoming event in the Calendar widget). However, you also lose quick access to the information yourself.

Keep your Apple Account secure on iPad

Your Apple Account is the account you use to access Apple services like the App Store, Apple Music, iCloud, iMessage, and FaceTime. Your account includes the email address and password you use to sign in as well as the contact, payment, and security details you use across Apple services. Apple employs industry-standard practices to safeguard your Apple Account.

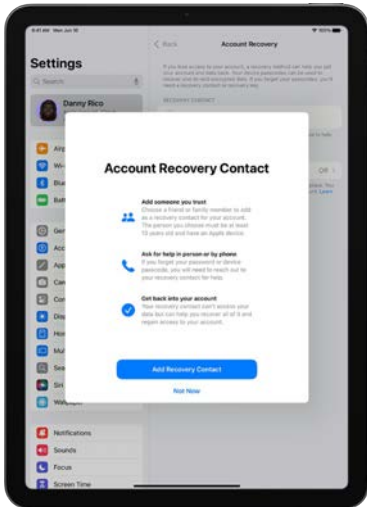
Best practices for maximizing the security of your Apple Account

- Don't let others use your Apple Account, even family members.
To share purchases, subscriptions, a family calendar, and more without sharing Apple Accounts, [set up Family Sharing](#).
- Use two-factor authentication. If you created your Apple Account on a device with iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later, your account automatically uses two-factor authentication. If you previously created an Apple Account without two-factor authentication, [turn on two-factor authentication](#) now.
- Never provide your password, security questions, verification codes, recovery key, or any other account security details to anyone else. Apple will never ask you for this information.
- When accessing your Apple Account page in Safari or another web browser, look for  in the address field to verify that your session is encrypted and secure.
- When using a public computer, always sign out when your session is complete to prevent other people from accessing your account.
- Avoid phishing scams. Don't click links in suspicious email or text messages and never provide personal information on any website you aren't certain is legitimate. See the Apple Support article [Recognize and avoid phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams](#).
- Don't use your password with other online accounts.
- If one of your devices is lost or stolen, turn on [Lost Mode](#) as soon as possible for that device. (You can do this on a friend's device and don't need to use your own.)

Add Account Recovery Contacts

If you forget your password or get locked out, choose one or more people you trust as Account Recovery Contacts to help you reset your Apple Account password and regain access to your account.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security > Account Recovery, tap Add Recovery Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.



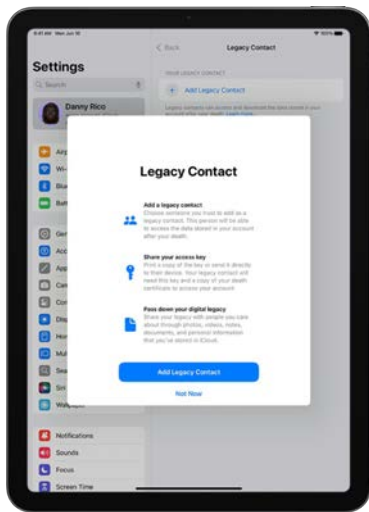
For more information, go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security, then tap “Learn more” below Add Recovery Contact.

Add Legacy Contacts

The Digital Legacy program allows you to designate people as Legacy Contacts so they can access your Apple Account in the event of your death.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > Sign-In & Security > Legacy Contact, tap Add Legacy Contact, then follow the onscreen instructions.

For more information about how to share the access key with a legacy contact, how to remove a legacy contact, and how your legacy contact can request access to your account, see the Apple Support article [How to add a Legacy Contact for your Apple Account](#). Also see the Apple Support article [Data that a Legacy Contact can access](#).



Generate a recovery key for your account

For additional control over your account security, you can generate a recovery key that helps you reset your account password or regain access to your Apple Account. A recovery key is a randomly generated 28-character code that you should keep in a safe place. You can reset your account password by either entering your recovery key or using another device already signed in to your Apple Account. To ensure you have access to your account, you are personally responsible for maintaining access to the recovery key and your trusted devices.

See the Apple Support article [How to generate a recovery key](#).

For more information about best practices, see the Apple Support article [Security and your Apple Account](#).

To set up or manage your Apple Account, go to the [Apple Account website](#).

If you forgot your Apple Account password, see the [Recover your Apple Account website](#).

Manage what you share with apps

Control app tracking permissions on iPad

All apps are required to ask your permission before tracking you or your iPad across websites or apps owned by other companies for advertising or to share your information with data brokers. After you grant or deny permission to an app, you can change permission later. You can also stop all apps from requesting permission.

Review or change an app's permission to track you

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Tracking.

The list shows the apps that requested permission to track you. You can turn permission on or off for any app on the list.

2. To stop all apps from asking permission to track you, turn off Allow Apps to Request to Track (at the top of the screen).

For more information about app tracking, tap “Learn more” near the top of the screen.

Control the location information you share on iPad

You control whether iPad and apps have information about your location.

To figure out where you are when getting directions, setting up meetings, and more, Location Services uses information (when available) from GPS networks (iPad models with Wi-Fi + Cellular), your Bluetooth® connections, your local Wi-Fi networks, and your cellular network (iPad models with Wi-Fi + Cellular, if you have Cellular Data turned on). When an app is using Location Services,  appears in the status bar.

When you set up iPad, you're asked if you want to turn on Location Services. Afterward, you can turn Location Services on or off at any time.

The first time an app wants location data from your iPad, you receive a request with an explanation. Some apps may make a one-time only request for your location. Other apps may ask you to share your location now and in the future. Whether you grant or deny ongoing access to your location, you can change an app's access later.



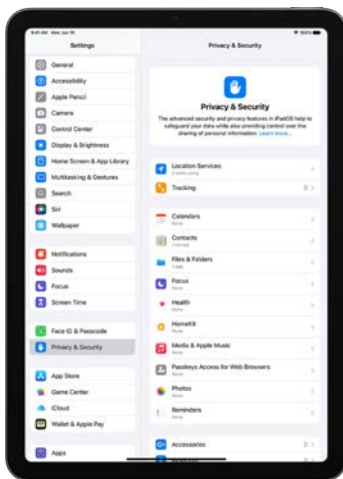
Turn on Location Services

If you didn't turn on Location Services when you first set up iPad, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.

Important: If you turn off Location Services, many important iPad features stop working.

View apps using your location information

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services.
2. To review or change access settings for an app or to see its explanation for requesting Location Services, tap the app.



To allow an app to use your specific location, leave Precise Location turned on. To share only your approximate location—which may be sufficient for an app that doesn't need your exact location—turn Precise Location off.

Note: If you set the access for an app to Ask Next Time, you're asked to turn on Location Services again the next time an app tries to use it.

To understand how a third-party app uses the information it's requesting, review its terms and privacy policy. See the Apple Support article [About privacy and Location Services in iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS](#).

Hide the map in Location Services alerts

When you allow an app to always use your location in the background, you may receive alerts about the app's use of that information. (These alerts let you change your permission, if you want to.) In the alerts, a map shows locations recently accessed by the app.

To hide the map, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Location Alerts, then turn off Show Map in Location Alerts.

With the setting off, you continue to receive location alerts, but the map isn't shown.

Review or change Location Services settings for system services

Several system services, such as location-based suggestions and location-based ads, use Location Services.

To see the status for each service, to turn Location Services on or off for each service, or to show  in the status bar when enabled system services use your location, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services.

Control access to information in apps on iPad

You control whether third-party apps have access to information in Contacts, Photos, Calendar, and other apps.

Review or change access to information in apps

The first time an app wants to use information from another app, you receive a request with an explanation. For example, a messaging app may request access to your contacts to find friends who are using the same app. After you grant or deny access, you can change access later.

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap a category of information, such as Calendars, Reminders, or Motion & Fitness.

The list shows the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

Review how apps are using the permissions you grant them

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security, then tap App Privacy Report.

The App Privacy Report shows you how apps are using the permissions you granted them and shows you their network activity.

To turn off the report and delete its data, go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > App Privacy Report, then tap Turn Off App Privacy Report. You can return to this Settings screen to turn the report on again.

Control access to your contacts on iPad

On iPad, you control which of your contacts an app can access. The first time an app wants to access your contacts, you receive a request from the app, along with an explanation. For example, a messaging app may ask to access your contacts in order to find friends who are using the same app. After you grant or deny the app's request, choose which contacts the app can access. You can always change the access you granted later.

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap Contacts, then tap the app.
3. Choose how much access to your contacts you're giving the app (below Contacts Access).
4. If you're giving Limited Access, tap Edit Selected Contacts to choose individuals.

Select or deselect individual contacts, then tap Done.

Control how Apple delivers advertising to you on iPad

You control how Apple delivers advertising.

Ads delivered by Apple may appear in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. These ads don't access data from any other apps. In the App Store and Apple News, your search and download history may be used to serve you relevant search ads. In Apple News and Stocks, ads are served based partly on what you read or follow. This includes publishers you've enabled notifications for and the type of publishing subscription you have. The articles you read are not used to serve targeted ads to you outside these apps, and information collected about what you read is linked to a random identifier rather than to your Apple Account.

Review the information Apple uses to deliver ads

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising > View Ad Targeting Information.

The information is used by Apple to deliver more relevant ads in the App Store, Apple News, and Stocks. Your personal data isn't provided to other parties.

Turn personalized ads on or off

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising, then turn Personalized Ads on or off.

Note: Turning off personalized ads limits Apple's ability to deliver relevant ads to you. It may not reduce the number of ads you receive.

Learn more about privacy and Apple's advertising platform

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Apple Advertising > About Advertising & Privacy.

Control access to hardware features on iPad

Before apps use the camera or microphone on your iPad, they're required to request your permission and explain why they're asking. For example, a social networking app may ask to use your camera so that you can take and upload pictures to that app. Apps are similarly required to request your permission to use various other hardware features, including Bluetooth® connectivity, motion and fitness sensors, and devices on your local network.

You can review which apps have requested access to these hardware features, and you can change their access at your discretion.

Review or change access to the camera, microphone, and other hardware features

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap a hardware feature, such as Camera, Bluetooth, Local Network, or Microphone.

The list shows the apps that requested access. You can turn access on or off for any app on the list.

Note: Whenever an app uses the camera (including when the camera and microphone are used together), a green indicator appears. An orange indicator appears at the top of the screen whenever an app uses the microphone without the camera. Also, a message appears at the top of Control Center to inform you when an app has recently used either.

Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings on iPad

When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use Hide My Email to keep your personal email address private. With Hide My Email, you can generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your real email address when filling out forms or signing up for newsletters on the web, or when sending email.

You can create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings . Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud > Hide My Email, then do any of the following:

- *Create a Hide My Email address:* Tap Create New Address, then follow the onscreen instructions.

- **Deactivate a Hide My Email address:** Tap an address (below Create New Address), then tap Deactivate Email Address. After you deactivate the address, it no longer forwards emails to you.
- **Change which personal email address to forward to:** Tap Forward To, then choose an email address. Options consist of addresses that are available with your Apple Account.
- **Copy a forwarding address to use elsewhere:** Tap an address (below Create New Address), touch and hold the Hide My Email section, then tap Copy. To immediately use that address elsewhere, touch and hold in a text field, then tap Paste.

You can also generate Hide My Email addresses in Safari and Mail wherever email addresses are required. In supporting apps, you can also generate a Hide My Email address when an email address is required by tapping the email address field, then tapping Hide My Email above the keyboard.

Protect your web browsing with iCloud Private Relay on iPad

When you [subscribe to iCloud+](#), you can use iCloud Private Relay to help prevent websites and network providers from creating a detailed profile about you. When iCloud Private Relay is on, the traffic leaving your iPad is encrypted and sent through two separate internet relays. This prevents websites from seeing your IP address and exact location while preventing network providers from collecting your browsing activity in Safari.

Note: iCloud Private Relay isn't available in all countries or regions. For more information, see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability](#) website.

Turn iCloud Private Relay on

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Private Relay, then tap Private Relay.

Note: You need to turn on iCloud Private Relay on each device where you want to use it.

Turn iCloud Private Relay off

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Private Relay, then tap Private Relay.
2. Do one of the following:
 - **Turn off iCloud Private Relay temporarily:** Tap Turn Off Until Tomorrow.
Within 24 hours, iCloud Private Relay will turn back on automatically. If you want it to resume sooner, follow the instructions for turning it on at any time.
 - **Turn off iCloud Private Relay completely:** Tap Turn Off Private Relay.

For information about turning off iCloud Private Relay temporarily for a specific website, see [Temporarily allow a website to see your IP address](#).

Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a Wi-Fi network

1. Go to Settings  > Wi-Fi.
2. Tap , then turn Limit IP Address Tracking on or off.

If you turn off Limit IP Address Tracking for a Wi-Fi network on your iPad, iCloud Private Relay is turned off for this network across all your devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

Turn iCloud Private Relay on or off for a cellular network (Wi-Fi + Cellular models)

1. Go to Settings  > Cellular Data, then do one of the following:
 - **If your iPad has a single plan:** Tap Cellular Data Options.
 - **If your iPad has multiple plans:** Select a plan (below Cellular Plans).
2. Turn Limit IP Address Tracking on or off.

The network setting is specific to a physical SIM or eSIM in your iPad (eSIM not available in all countries or regions). See [View or change your cellular data account](#).

Set the specificity of your IP address location

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Private Relay > IP Address Location, then choose one of the following:

- **Maintain General Location** (for example, to see local content in Safari)
- **Use Country and Time Zone** (to make your location more obscure)

iCloud Private Relay is not available in all countries or regions.

Use a private network address on iPad

To help protect your privacy, your iPad uses a unique private network address, called *media access control (MAC) address*, on each Wi-Fi network it joins.

If a network can't use a private address (for example, to provide parental controls or to identify your iPad as authorized to join), you can stop using a private address for that network.

Turn a private address off for a network

1. Go to Settings  > Wi-Fi, then tap  for a network.

2. Turn Private Address off.

Important: For better privacy, leave Private Address turned on for all networks that support it. Using a private address helps reduce tracking of your iPad across different Wi-Fi networks.

Use Advanced Data Protection for your iCloud data

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __ " Type="Do not translate">

ipde-do-not-answer

By default, iCloud secures your information by encrypting it when it's in transit, storing it in an encrypted format, and securing your encryption keys in Apple data centers. In addition, many Apple services use end-to-end encryption; your information is encrypted using keys derived from your devices and your device passcode, which only you know.

For the highest level of cloud data security, you can turn on Advanced Data Protection (iPadOS 16.2 or later required). It uses end-to-end encryption on more data categories such as the following:

- Device backup
- Messages backup
- iCloud Drive
- Notes
- Photos
- Reminders
- Safari bookmarks
- Siri Shortcuts
- Voice Memos
- Wallet passes

With Advanced Data Protection, your protected data can be decrypted only on your trusted devices, protecting your information even in the case of a data breach in the cloud. Not even Apple can access your information.

For detailed information about the requirements for using Advanced Data Protection, see the Apple Support article [How to turn on Advanced Data Protection for iCloud](#).

Turn on Advanced Data Protection

1. Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud, then tap Advanced Data Protection.
2. Tap Turn On Advanced Data Protection.
3. If you haven't set up a Recovery Contact or Recovery Key, tap Account Recovery, tap Set Up Account Recovery, then follow the onscreen instructions.

WARNING: If you use Advanced Data Protection, you're responsible for your data recovery. Because Apple won't have the keys required to recover your data, you'll need to have a Recovery Contact or Recovery Key set up on your account. You can use these additional recovery methods to regain access to your data if you ever forget your password or lose access to your account.

If you choose to turn off Advanced Data Protection later, your iCloud data will revert to the standard level of security.

Harden your iPad from a cyberattack with Lockdown Mode

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="GenerativeKeywords __ ">

ipde-do-not-answer

Lockdown Mode is an extreme protection feature for iPad. Protections include safer wireless connectivity defaults, media handling, media sharing defaults, sandboxing, and network security optimizations.

Lockdown Mode is optional and should be used only if you believe you might be targeted by a highly sophisticated cyberattack, such as by a private company developing state-sponsored mercenary spyware.

Important: Most people are never targeted by attacks of this nature.

When iPad is in Lockdown Mode, it doesn't function as it typically does. Apps, websites, and features are strictly limited for security, and some functionality isn't available.

Learn about Lockdown Mode

Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Lockdown Mode, then tap Learn More.

Turn on Lockdown Mode

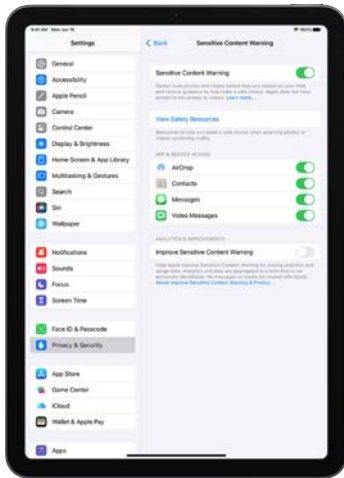
Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Lockdown Mode, then turn on Lockdown Mode.

Receive warnings about sensitive content on iPad

You can have your iPad (or your family member's iPad) check for sensitive images and warn you before you view them.

Turn on Sensitive Content Warning

1. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security.
2. Tap Sensitive Content Warning, then turn on Sensitive Content Warning.



You (or your family member) will receive a warning before receiving or sending sexually explicit photos.

Note: Sensitive Content Warning is turned on automatically if you set up Screen Time and turn on Communication Safety. See [Check for nude content on a family member's iPad](#).

In Screen Time, you can also block inappropriate content and set restrictions on purchases.

Use Contact Key Verification on iPad

You can use Contact Key Verification to receive automatic alerts that help verify you're communicating only with the people you intend. You can also generate unique codes that you and your contacts can compare simultaneously in the Messages app to further verify each other's identities. Additionally, you can post your Public Verification Code to a social media account so other people can confirm that it's you when they send you a message, and you can save other people's codes in the Contacts app.

Note: Contact Key Verification is designed to prevent highly sophisticated cyberattacks; it isn't designed to prevent fraud such as phishing or other text-based scams. To learn more about Contact Key Verification and troubleshooting, see the Apple Support article [About iMessage Contact Key Verification](#).

Before you begin

To use Contact Key Verification, make sure of the following:

- Your devices are passcode or password protected.
- You're signed in to iCloud and iMessage with the same Apple Account and you have two-factor authentication turned on for your Apple Account.
- The person you're trying to verify is in your contacts.

Turn on Contact Key Verification

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Contact Key Verification.
2. Turn on Verification in iMessage, then tap Continue.

Note: When you turn on Contact Key Verification, you're prompted to update all of your Apple devices to compatible software. If you have a device that can't be updated, you need to sign out of iMessage on that device before you can turn on this feature.

Share a Public Verification Code

You can share your Public Verification Code in a message, or post it on a social media account so other people can verify your identity.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > Contact Key Verification.
2. Tap Show Public Verification Code.
3. To share your Public Verification Code, tap Copy Verification Code, tap OK, then paste the code wherever you want to share it.

You can also use someone else's Public Verification Code to verify their identity. For example, if someone shares a Public Verification Code with you that doesn't match the code they have displayed on their social media profile, you should stop sending them messages until you can confirm their identity.

Generate verification codes in Messages

For a higher level of security, you and your contacts can generate a verification code in Messages, then save each other's Public Verification Codes in Contacts. This is useful when you want to verify each other simultaneously, or if the Public Verification Code you received doesn't match the one your contact shares with you.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPad.
 2. Tap the person's name at the top of the conversation, scroll down, then tap Verify Contact.
- When the other person taps Verify Contact on their device, a contact verification code appears.

3. Compare the verification codes on both devices, then do one of the following:

- *If the codes match:* Tap Mark as Verified, tap Update to add the verification code to the other person's contact card, then tap Done.
- *If the codes don't match:* You might not be communicating with the person that you intend. Tap No Match, then stop sending messages to the person until you can verify their identity.

After you verify a contact, a checkmark appears next to their name in Messages. You can also check their verification status in the Conversation Details, or find their Public Verification Code in Contacts.

Restart, update, reset, and restore

Turn iPad on or off

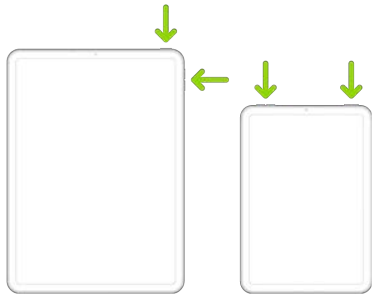
Use the top button to turn on iPad. You can use the top button (along with either volume button on some models) or Settings  to turn off iPad.

If your iPad isn't working as expected, you can try restarting it by turning it off, then turning it back on. If turning it off and on doesn't fix the issue, try [forcing it to restart](#).

Turn iPad on or off (models with Face ID or with Touch ID in the top button)

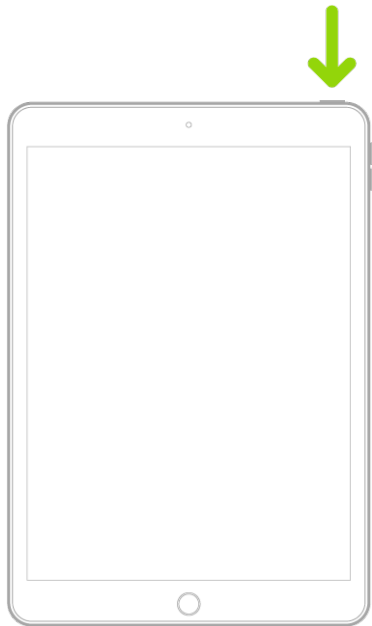
If your iPad doesn't have the Home button, do the following:

- *Turn on iPad:* Press and hold the top button until the Apple logo appears.
- *Turn off iPad:* Simultaneously press and hold the top button and either volume button, then drag the slider.



Turn iPad on or off (models with the Home button)

- *Turn on iPad:* Press and hold the top button until the Apple logo appears.
- *Turn off iPad:* Press and hold the top button, then drag the slider.



To turn off any model, you can go to Settings  > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.

Force restart iPad

If iPad isn't responding, and you can't restart it by [turning it off then on](#), try forcing it to restart.

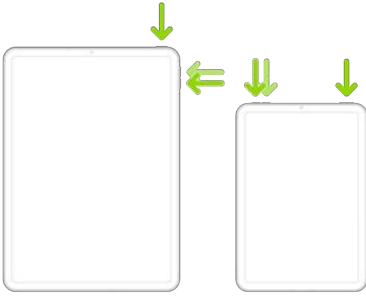
Note: If iPad doesn't restart after you try these steps, see the Apple Support article [If your iPad won't turn on or is frozen](#). Or if your iPad isn't working as expected after you restart it, see the [iPad Support website](#).

Force restart iPad (models with Face ID or with Touch ID in the top button)

If your iPad doesn't have the Home button, do the following:

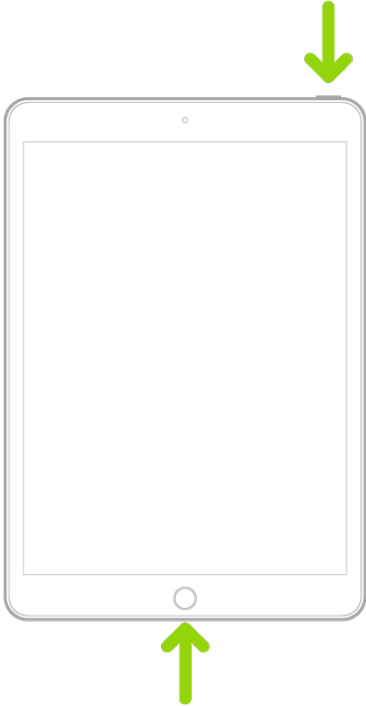
1. Press and quickly release the volume button nearest to the top button.

2. Press and quickly release the volume button farthest from the top button.
3. Press and hold the top button.
4. When the Apple logo appears, release the top button.



Force restart iPad (models with the Home button)

Press and hold the top button and the Home button at the same time. When the Apple logo appears, release both buttons.



Update iPadOS

When you update to the latest version of iPadOS, your data and settings remain unchanged.

Before you update, set up iPad to [back up](#) automatically, or back up your iPad manually.

Update iPad automatically

If you didn't turn on automatic updates when you first set up your iPad, do the following:

1. Go to Settings  > General > Software Update > Automatic Updates.
2. Turn on iOS Updates below Automatically Install and Automatically Download.

When an update is available, iPad downloads and installs the update overnight while charging and connected to Wi-Fi. You're notified before an update is installed.

Update iPad manually

At any time, you can check for and install software updates.

Go to Settings  > General > Software Update.

The screen shows the currently installed version of iPadOS and whether an update is available.

To turn off automatic updates, go to Settings > General > Software Update > Automatic Updates.

Update using your computer

1. [Connect iPad and your computer with a cable](#)

2. Do one of the following:

- *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* In the Finder sidebar, select your iPad, then click General at the top of the window.
- *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows device:* Open the iTunes app, click the button resembling an iPad near the top left of the iTunes window, then click Summary.

Note: Use the latest version of iTunes. See the Apple Support article [Update to the latest version of iTunes](#).

3. Click Check for Update.

4. To install an available update, click Update.

See the Apple Support articles [Update to the latest iOS](#) and [If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

Back up iPad

You can back up iPad using iCloud or your computer. To decide which method is best for you, see [About backups for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch](#).

Tip: If you replace your iPad, you can use its backup to transfer your information to the new device. See [Restore all content from a backup](#).

Back up iPad using iCloud

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > iCloud Backup.

2. Turn on Backup This iPad.

iCloud automatically backs up your iPad daily when iPad is connected to power, locked, and connected to Wi-Fi.

Note: On Wi-Fi + Cellular models [that support 5G](#), your carrier may give you the option to back up iPad using your cellular network. Go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud > iCloud Backup, then turn Backup Over Cellular on or off .

3. To perform a manual backup, tap Back Up Now.

To view details about iCloud backups, such as last backup, backup size, and the apps included in the backup, go to Settings > [your name] > iCloud > iCloud Backups, then tap a device. You can turn off apps you don't want to back up to iCloud anymore; this will also delete the app's existing backup data from iCloud.

Note: If you turn on an app or feature to use iCloud syncing (in Settings > [your name] > iCloud > See All), its information is stored in iCloud. Because the information is automatically kept up to date on all your devices, it's not included in your iCloud backup. See the Apple Support article [What does iCloud back up?](#).

Back up iPad using your Mac

1. [Connect iPad and your computer with a cable](#)

2. In the Finder sidebar on your Mac, select your iPad.

To use the Finder to back up iPad, macOS 10.15 or later is required. With earlier versions of macOS, [use iTunes](#) to back up iPad.

3. At the top of the Finder window, click General.

4. Select "Back up all of the data on your iPad to this Mac."

5. To encrypt your backup data and protect it with a password, select "Encrypt local backup."

6. Click Back Up Now.

Note: You can also connect iPad to your computer wirelessly if you [set up syncing over Wi-Fi](#).

Back up iPad using your Windows device

1. [Connect iPad and your computer with a cable](#)

2. In the iTunes app on your Windows device, click the iPad button near the top left of the iTunes window.

3. Click Summary.

4. Click Back Up Now (below Backups).

5. To encrypt your backups, select "Encrypt local backup," type a password, then click Set Password.

To see the backups stored on your computer, choose Edit > Preferences, then click Devices. Encrypted backups have a lock icon in the list of backups.

Note: You can also connect iPad to your computer wirelessly if you [set up syncing over Wi-Fi](#).

Reset iPad settings to their defaults

You can return your iPad settings to their defaults without erasing your content.

If you want to save your settings, [back up iPad](#) before resetting it. For example, if you're trying to solve a problem but resetting iPad doesn't help, you might want to restore your previous settings from a backup.

1. Go to Settings  > General > Transfer or Reset iPad > Reset.

WARNING: If you choose the Erase All Content and Settings option, all of your content is removed. See [Erase iPad](#).

2. Choose an option:

- **Reset All Settings:** All settings—including network settings, the keyboard dictionary, location settings, privacy settings, and Apple Pay cards—are removed or reset to their defaults. No data or media are deleted.
- **Reset Network Settings:** All network settings are removed. In addition, the device name assigned in Settings > General > About is reset to “iPad,” and manually trusted certificates (such as for websites) are changed to untrusted.

Cellular data roaming may also be turned off. (See [View or change cellular data settings](#).)

When you reset network settings, previously used networks and VPN settings that weren’t installed by a configuration profile or mobile device management (MDM) are removed. Wi-Fi is turned off and then back on, disconnecting you from any network you’re on. The Wi-Fi and Ask to Join Networks settings remain turned on.

To remove VPN settings installed by a configuration profile, go to Settings > General > VPN & Device Management, select the configuration profile, then tap Remove Profile. This also removes other settings and accounts provided by the profile. See [Install or remove configuration profiles](#).

To remove network settings installed by MDM, go to Settings > General > VPN & Device Management, select the management, then tap Remove Management. This also removes other settings and certificates provided by MDM. See “Mobile device management (MDM)” in the [Deployment Reference for iPhone and iPad](#).

- **Reset Keyboard Dictionary:** You add words to the keyboard dictionary by rejecting words iPad suggests as you type. Resetting the keyboard dictionary erases only the words you’ve added.
- **Reset Home Screen Layout:** Returns the built-in apps to their original layout on the Home Screen.
- **Reset Location & Privacy:** Resets the location services and privacy settings to their defaults.

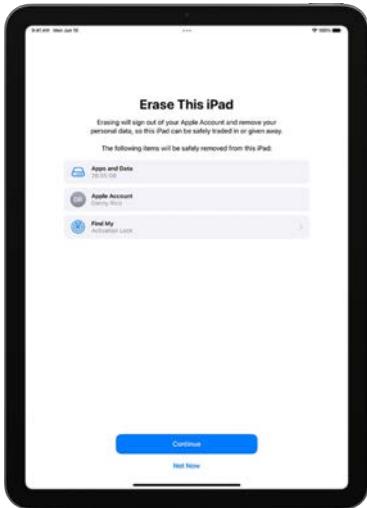
If you want to completely erase your iPad, see [Erase iPad using Settings](#). If you want or need to use a computer to erase your iPad, see [Erase iPad using your Mac or Windows device](#).

Erase iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="GenerativeKeywords __ ">

ipde-do-not-answer

You can securely erase your personal information, content, and settings (such as privacy and network settings) from your iPad. When you erase your iPad, it’s restored to factory settings. If you want to reset your iPad settings but keep your personal content, see [Reset iPad settings](#).



Before you begin

[Back up](#) your iPad so you can restore your data later on a different device.

Erase iPad using Settings

1. Go to Settings  > General > Transfer or Reset iPad.
2. Tap Erase All Content and Settings.
3. If asked, enter your iPad passcode or Apple Account password.
4. Tap Continue to confirm.

If you have an eSIM, you can choose to erase your eSIM or keep it. If you erase your eSIM, you need to contact your carrier to reactivate your cellular plan.

Erase iPad using your Mac or Windows device

1. Connect your iPad to your computer with a USB or USB-C cable.
2. On your Mac, click  to open a Finder window, or open the Apple Devices app on your Windows device.

If your Mac is using macOS 10.14 or earlier, or your Windows device doesn’t have the Apple Devices app, open iTunes instead.

3. Click the iPad icon in the Finder sidebar (below Locations), then click General at the top of the window.
4. Click Restore iPad, then click Restore to confirm.

Note: If you're signed in to Find My, you need to sign out before you can click Restore.

For troubleshooting, see the Apple Support article, [Restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod to factory settings](#).

Restore all content to iPad from a backup

You can restore content, settings, and apps from a backup to a new or newly erased iPad.

Important: To restore your iPad, you must have a backup to restore from. See [Back up iPad](#).

Restore iPad from an iCloud backup

1. Turn on your iPad.

The Hello screen should appear. If you already set up your device, you need to [erase all of its content](#) before you can use these steps to restore from your backup.

2. Do one of the following:

- Tap Set Up Manually, tap Restore from iCloud Backup, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- If you have another iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later, you can use Quick Start to automatically set up your new device. Bring the two devices close together, then follow the onscreen instructions to securely copy many of your settings, preferences, and iCloud Keychain. You can then restore the rest of your data and content to your new device from your iCloud backup.

Or, if both devices have iOS 12.4, iPadOS 13, or later, you can transfer all your data wirelessly from your previous device to your new one. Keep your devices near each other and plugged into power until the migration process is complete.

You're asked for your Apple Account. If you've forgotten your Apple Account, go to [iforgot.apple.com](#).

Restore iPad from a computer backup

1. [Using USB](#), connect a new or newly erased iPad to the computer containing your backup.

2. Do one of the following:

- *On a Mac (macOS 10.15 or later):* In the Finder sidebar, select your iPad, click Trust, then click "Restore from this backup."
- *On a Mac (macOS 10.14 or earlier) or a Windows device:* Open the iTunes app, click the button resembling an iPad near the top left of the iTunes window, click Summary, then click Restore Backup.

Note: Use the latest version of iTunes. See the Apple Support article [Update to the latest version of iTunes](#).

3. Choose your backup from the list, then click Continue.

If your backup is encrypted, you must enter the password before restoring your files and settings.

See the Apple Support articles [Restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch from a backup](#) and [If you can't update or restore your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

Restore purchased and deleted items to iPad

You can redownload items purchased from the App Store, Book Store, Apple TV app, and iTunes Store without repurchasing them. If you're part of a [Family Sharing](#) group, you can download items purchased by other family members, too. To restore purchases that aren't on your iPad, see the following Apple Support articles:

- [Redownload apps and games from Apple](#)
- [Redownload books and audiobooks](#)
- [Redownload TV shows and movies that you purchased](#)
- [Redownload music](#)

You can also [recover recently deleted email](#), [photos](#), [notes](#), and [voice memos](#).

Sell, give away, or trade in your iPad

Before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPad, see the Apple Support article [What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone or iPad](#) and be sure to perform the following tasks:

- [Back up iPad](#). If you replace one iPad with another, you can [use the setup assistant](#) to restore the backup to your new iPad.
If you're replacing your iPad with another one you have on hand, you can use extra free storage in iCloud to move your apps and data from one iPad to another. Go to Settings  > General > Transfer or Reset iPad > Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- Sign out of iCloud and the iTunes & App Store. Go to Settings > *[your name]*, scroll down, tap Sign Out, enter your Apple Account password, then tap Turn Off.
- [Erase all content and settings](#) that contain personal information. If you previously [turned on Find My](#) for your iPad, Activation Lock is removed when you erase iPad, making it ready for a new owner.

Install or remove configuration profiles on iPad

Configuration profiles define settings for using iPad with corporate or school networks or accounts. You might be asked to install a configuration profile that was sent to you in an email, or one that's downloaded from a webpage. You're asked for permission to install the profile and, when you open the file, information about what it contains is displayed. You can see the profiles you have installed in Settings  > General > VPN & Device Management. If you delete a profile, all of the settings, apps, and data associated with the profile are also deleted.

Safety, handling, and support

Important safety information for iPad

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __ " Type="Do not translate">
ipde-do-not-answer

WARNING: Failure to follow these safety instructions could result in fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPad or other property. Read all the safety information below before using iPad.

Handling. Handle iPad with care. It is made of metal, glass, and plastic and has sensitive electronic components inside. iPad or its battery can be damaged if dropped, burned, punctured, or crushed, or if it comes in contact with liquid. If you suspect damage to iPad or the battery, discontinue use of iPad, as it may cause overheating or injury. Don't use iPad with a cracked screen, as it may cause injury. If you're concerned about scratching the surface of iPad, consider using a case or cover.

Repairing. Don't open iPad and don't attempt to repair iPad yourself. Disassembling iPad may damage it or may cause injury to you. If iPad is damaged, malfunctions, or comes in contact with liquid, contact Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. Repairs by service providers other than Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider may not involve the use of Apple genuine parts and may affect the safety and functionality of the device. You can find more information about repairs and service at the [iPad Repair website](#).

Battery. An iPad battery should only be repaired by a trained technician to avoid battery damage, which could cause overheating, fire, or injury. Batteries should be recycled or disposed of separately from household waste and according to local environmental laws and guidelines. For information about battery service and recycling, see the [Battery Service and Recycling website](#).

Lasers. The TrueDepth camera system and the LiDAR Scanner contain one or more lasers. These laser systems may be disabled for safety reasons if the device is damaged or malfunctions. If you receive a notification on your iPad that the laser system is disabled, you should always have it repaired by Apple or an Apple Authorized Service Provider. Improper repair, modification, or use of non-genuine Apple components in the laser systems may prevent the safety mechanisms from functioning properly, and could cause hazardous exposure and injury to eyes or skin.

Distraction. Using iPad in some circumstances may distract you and might cause a dangerous situation (for example, avoid listening to music with headphones while riding a bicycle and avoid typing a text message while driving a car). Observe rules that prohibit or restrict the use of mobile devices or headphones.

Navigation. Maps depends on data services. These data services are subject to change and may not be available in all countries or regions, resulting in maps and location-based information that may be unavailable, inaccurate, or incomplete. Compare the information provided in Maps to your surroundings. Use common sense when navigating. Always observe current road conditions and posted signs to resolve any discrepancies. Some Maps features require Location Services.

Charging. Charge iPad with the included USB cable and power adapter. You can also charge iPad with "Made for iPad" or other third-party cables and power adapters that are compliant with USB 2.0 or later and with applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. Other adapters may not meet applicable safety standards, and charging with such adapters could pose a risk of death or injury.

Using damaged cables or chargers, or charging when moisture is present, can cause fire, electric shock, injury, or damage to iPad or other property. When you charge iPad, make sure the USB cable is fully inserted into the power adapter before you plug the adapter into a power outlet. It's important to keep iPad, the USB cable, and the power adapter in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging.

Charging cable and connector. Avoid prolonged skin contact with the charging cable and connector when the charging cable is connected to a power source because it may cause discomfort or injury. Sleeping or sitting on the charging cable or connector should be avoided.

Prolonged heat exposure. iPad and its USB power adapter comply with required surface temperature limits defined by applicable country regulations and international and regional safety standards. However, even within these limits, sustained contact with warm surfaces for long periods of time may cause discomfort or injury. Use common sense to avoid situations where your skin is in contact with a device or its power adapter when it's operating or connected to a power source for long periods of time. For example, don't sleep on a device or power adapter, or place them under a blanket, pillow, or your body, when it's connected to a power source. Keep your iPad and its power adapter in a well-ventilated area when in use or charging. Take special care if you have a physical condition that affects your ability to detect heat against the body.

USB power adapter. To operate the Apple USB power adapter safely and reduce the possibility of heat-related injury or damage, plug the power adapter directly into a power outlet. Don't use the power adapter in wet locations, such as near a sink, bathtub, or shower stall, and don't connect or disconnect the power adapter with wet hands. Stop using the power adapter and any cables if any of the following conditions exist:

- The power adapter plug or prongs are damaged.
- The charge cable becomes frayed or otherwise damaged.
- The power adapter is exposed to excessive moisture, or liquid is spilled into the power adapter.
- The power adapter has been dropped, and its enclosure is damaged.

USB power adapter specifications:

Frequency	50 to 60 Hz, single phase
Line voltage	100 to 240 Vac

Hearing loss. Listening to sound at high volumes may damage your hearing. Background noise, as well as continued exposure to high volume levels, can make sounds seem quieter than they actually are. Turn on audio playback and check the volume before inserting anything in your ear. For information about how to set a maximum volume limit on iPad, see [Reduce loud headphone sounds in Settings](#). For more information about hearing loss, see the [Sound and Hearing website](#).

WARNING: To prevent possible hearing damage, do not listen at high volume levels for long periods.

Radio frequency exposure. iPad uses radio signals to connect to wireless networks. For information about radio frequency (RF) energy resulting from radio signals, and steps you can take to minimize exposure, go to Settings  > General > Legal & Regulatory > RF Exposure, or see the [RF Exposure website](#).

Radio frequency interference. Observe signs and notices that prohibit or restrict the use of mobile devices. Although iPad is designed, tested, and manufactured to comply with regulations governing radio frequency emissions, such emissions from iPad can negatively affect the operation of other electronic equipment, causing them to malfunction. When use is prohibited, such as while traveling in aircraft, or when asked to do so by authorities, turn off iPad, or [use airplane mode](#) or Settings  > Wi-Fi and Settings > Bluetooth to turn off the iPad wireless transmitters.

Medical device interference. iPad, iPad Smart Cover, Smart Folio, Smart Keyboard Folio, Magic Keyboard, Magic Keyboard Folio, and Apple Pencil contain magnets as well as components and/or radios that emit electromagnetic fields. These magnets and electromagnetic fields might interfere with medical devices.

Consult your physician and medical device manufacturer for information specific to your medical device and whether you need to maintain a safe distance of separation between your medical device and iPad, iPad Smart Cover, Smart Folio, Smart Keyboard Folio, Magic Keyboard for iPad or Apple Pencil. Manufacturers often provide recommendations on the safe use of their devices around wireless or magnetic products to prevent possible interference. If you suspect iPad, iPad Smart Cover, Smart Folio, Smart Keyboard Folio, Magic Keyboard for iPad or Apple Pencil are interfering with your medical device, stop using these products.

Medical devices such as implanted pacemakers and defibrillators may contain sensors that respond to magnets and radios when in close contact. To avoid any potential interactions with these devices, keep your iPad, iPad Smart Cover, Smart Folio, Smart Keyboard Folio, Magic Keyboard for iPad and Apple Pencil a safe distance away from your device (more than 6 inches/15cm, but consult with your physician and your device manufacturer for specific guidelines).

Not a medical device. iPad is not a medical device and should not be used as a substitute for professional medical judgment. It is not designed or intended for use in the diagnosis of disease or other conditions, or in the cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of any condition or disease. Please consult your healthcare provider prior to making any decisions related to your health.

Medical conditions. If you have any medical condition or experience symptoms that you believe could be affected by iPad or flashing lights (for example, seizures, blackouts, eyestrain, or headaches), consult with your physician prior to using iPad.

Explosive and other atmospheric conditions. Charging or using iPad in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as areas where the air contains high levels of flammable chemicals, vapors, or particles (such as grain, dust, or metal powders), may be hazardous. Exposing iPad to environments having high concentrations of industrial chemicals, including near evaporating liquified gasses such as helium, may damage or impair iPad functionality. Obey all signs and instructions.

Repetitive motion. When you perform repetitive activities such as typing, swiping, or playing games on iPad, you may experience discomfort in your hands, arms, wrists, shoulders, neck, or other parts of your body. If you experience discomfort, stop using iPad and consult a physician.

High-consequence activities. This device is not intended for use where the failure of the device could lead to death, personal injury, or severe environmental damage.

Choking hazard. Some iPad accessories may present a choking hazard to small children. Keep these accessories away from small children.

Magnetic interference. The Magic Keyboard and Magic Keyboard Folio contain magnets that hold iPad securely in place. Avoid placing cards that store information on a magnetic strip—such as credit cards or hotel key cards—on Magic Keyboard and Magic Keyboard Folio surfaces that attach to iPad, as such contact may demagnetize the card.

For Australian customers, see the [Online Safety resources website](#).

Important handling information for iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class=" GenerativeKeywords __">

ipde-do-not-answer

Cleaning. Clean iPad immediately if it comes in contact with anything that may cause stains or other damage—for example, dirt or sand, ink, makeup, soap, detergent, acids or acidic foods, and lotions. To clean:

- Disconnect all cables, then do one of the following to turn off iPad:
 - *On an iPad with a Home button:* Press and hold the top button until the slider appears, then drag the slider.
 - *On other iPad models:* Simultaneously press and hold the top button and either volume button until the sliders appear, then drag the top slider.
 - *All models:* Go to Settings  > General > Shut Down, then drag the slider.
- Use a soft, slightly damp, lint-free cloth—for example, a lens cloth.
- Avoid getting moisture in openings.
- Don't use cleaning products or compressed air.

The front of iPad is made of glass with a fingerprint-resistant oleophobic (oil-repellant) coating. This coating wears over time with normal usage. Cleaning products and abrasive materials will further diminish the coating and may scratch the glass.

Using connectors, ports, and buttons. Never force a connector into a port or apply excessive pressure to a button, because this may cause damage that is not covered under the warranty. If the connector and port don't join with reasonable ease, they probably don't match. Check for obstructions and make sure that the connector matches the port and that you have positioned the connector correctly in relation to the port.

Lightning to USB Cable. (models with a Lightning connector) Discoloration of the Lightning connector after regular use is normal. Dirt, debris, and exposure to moisture may cause discoloration. If your Lightning cable or connector become warm during use or your iPad won't charge or sync, disconnect it from your computer or power adapter and clean the Lightning connector with a soft, dry, lint-free cloth. Do not use liquids or cleaning products when cleaning the Lightning connector.

Lightning to USB Cable or USB-C Charge Cable. (depending on model) Certain usage patterns can contribute to the fraying or breaking of cables. The included cable, like any other metal wire or cable, is subject to becoming weak or brittle if repeatedly bent in the same spot. Aim for gentle curves instead of angles in the cable. Regularly inspect the cable and connector for any kinks, breaks, bends, or other damage. Should you find any such damage, discontinue use of the cable.

Operating temperature. iPad is designed to work in ambient temperatures between 32° and 95° F (0° and 35° C) and stored in temperatures between -4° and 113° F (-20° and 45° C). iPad can be damaged and battery life shortened if stored or operated outside of these temperature ranges. Avoid exposing iPad to dramatic changes in temperature or humidity. When you're using iPad or charging the battery, it is normal for iPad to get warm.

If the interior temperature of iPad exceeds normal operating temperatures (for example, in a hot car or in direct sunlight for extended periods of time), you may experience the following as it attempts to regulate its temperature:

- iPad stops charging.
- The screen dims.
- A temperature warning screen appears.
- Some apps may close.

Important: You may not be able to use iPad while the temperature warning screen is displayed. If iPad can't regulate its internal temperature, it goes into deep sleep mode until it cools. Move iPad to a cooler location out of direct sunlight and wait a few minutes before trying to use iPad again.

See the Apple Support article [Keeping iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch within acceptable operating temperatures](#).

Find more resources for iPad software and service

<__ class="__ GenerativeKeywords" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-do-not-generate

Refer to the following resources to get more iPad-related safety, software, service, and support information.

To learn about	Do this
Using iPad safely	See Important safety information .
iPad service and support, tips, forums, and Apple software downloads	See the iPad Support website .
The latest information about iPad	See the iPad website .
Getting personalized support (not available in all countries or regions)	See the Apple Support website .
Managing your Apple Account	Sign in to your Apple Account .
Using iCloud	See the iCloud User Guide .
Using iTunes for Windows	See the iTunes User Guide for Windows .
Using other Apple iPad apps	See the App Store Support website .
Finding your iPad serial number or IMEI	You can find your iPad serial number or International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI) on the iPad packaging. Or, on iPad, go to Settings  > General > About. See the Apple Support article Find the serial number or IMEI on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch .
Obtaining warranty service	First follow the advice in this guide, then see the iPad Support website .
Viewing iPad regulatory information	On iPad, go to Settings  > General > Legal & Regulatory.
Battery service	See the Battery Service and Recycling website .
Using iPad in an enterprise environment	See the Apple at Work website .

To learn about	Do this
Using iPad in education	See the Education website .

FCC compliance statement

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-do-not-generate

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications to this product not authorized by Apple could void the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) and wireless compliance and negate your authority to operate the product.

This product has demonstrated EMC compliance under conditions that included the use of compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components. It is important that you use compliant peripheral devices and shielded cables between system components to reduce the possibility of causing interference to radios, televisions, and other electronic devices.

The operation of this device is prohibited on oil platforms and aircraft, except that operation of this device in 5.925–6.425 GHz is permitted in large aircraft while flying above 10,000 feet.

Installation on outdoor fixed infrastructure is prohibited.

Operation of transmitters in the 5.925–7.125 GHz band is prohibited for control of or communications with unmanned aircraft systems.

Responsible party (contact for FCC matters only):

Apple Inc.

One Apple Park Way, MS 911-AHW

Cupertino, CA 95014

USA

apple.com/contact

ISED Canada compliance statement

<__ class="GenerativeKeywords __" Type="Do not translate">

ipde-do-not-generate

This device complies with ISED Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Operation in the band 5150–5250 MHz is only for indoor use to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems.

Operation in the 5925–7125 MHz band shall not be used for control of or communications with unmanned aircraft systems.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'ISDE Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

La bande 5150–5250 MHz est réservée uniquement pour une utilisation à l'intérieur afin de réduire les risques de brouillage préjudiciable aux systèmes de satellites mobiles utilisant les mêmes canaux.

Les appareils dans la bande 5925–7125 MHz ne doivent pas être utilisés pour contrôler des systèmes d'aéronefs sans pilote ou pour communiquer avec de tels systèmes.

Apple and the environment

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="GenerativeKeywords __">

ipde-do-not-generate

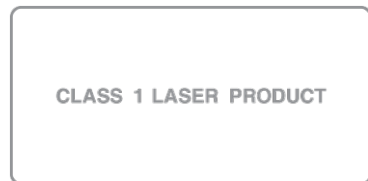
At Apple, we recognize our responsibility to minimize the environmental impacts of our operations and products. For more information, see our [Environment website](#).

Class 1 Laser information for iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords ">

ipde-do-not-generate

iPad Pro 11-inch and iPad Pro 12.9-inch (3rd generation and later) are classified as Class 1 Laser products per IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3. These devices comply with 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11, except for conformance with IEC 60825-1 Ed. 3., as described in Laser Notice No. 56, dated May 8, 2019. Caution: These devices contain one or more lasers. Use other than as described in the user guide, repair, or disassembly may cause damage, which could result in hazardous exposure to infrared laser emissions that are not visible. This equipment should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider.



Disposal and recycling information for iPad

<__ class="__ GenerativeKeywords " Type="Do not translate">

ipde-do-not-generate

Apple Recycling Program (available in some countries or regions)

For free recycling of your old iPad, a prepaid shipping label, and instructions, see the [Apple Trade In website](#).

Disposal and Recycling Information



The symbol above means that according to local laws and regulations your product and/or its battery shall be disposed of separately from household waste. When this product reaches its end of life, take it to a collection point designated by local authorities. The separate collection and recycling of your product and/or its battery at the time of disposal will help conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment. For information about Apple's recycling program, recycling collection points, restricted substances, and other environmental initiatives, visit apple.com/environment.

Brasil – Informações sobre descarte e reciclagem

O símbolo acima indica que este produto e/ou sua bateria não devem ser descartados no lixo doméstico. Quando decidir descartar este produto e/ou sua bateria, faça-o de acordo com as leis e diretrizes ambientais locais. Para informações sobre substâncias de uso restrito, o programa de reciclagem da Apple, pontos de coleta e telefone de informações, visite apple.com/br/environment.

Información sobre eliminación de residuos y reciclaje

El símbolo de arriba indica que este producto y/o su batería no debe desecharse con los residuos domésticos. Cuando decidas desechar este producto y/o su batería, hazlo de conformidad con las leyes y directrices ambientales locales. Para obtener información sobre el programa de reciclaje de Apple, puntos de recolección para reciclaje, sustancias restringidas y otras iniciativas ambientales, visita apple.com/mx/environment o apple.com/la/environment.

Turkey environmental information

Türkiye Cumhuriyeti: AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

Battery service

The lithium-ion battery in iPad should be serviced by Apple or an authorized service provider. See the [Battery Service and Recycling website](#).

Dispose of batteries according to your local environmental laws and guidelines.

警告：不要刺破或焚燒。該電池不含水銀。



廢電池請回收

警告：請勿戳刺或焚燒。此電池不含汞。

Unauthorized modification of iPadOS

iPadOS is designed to be reliable and secure from the moment you turn on your device. Built-in security features help protect against malware and viruses and secure user access to personal information and corporate data. Unauthorized modifications to iPadOS (also known as “jailbreaking”) bypass security features and can cause numerous issues such as security vulnerabilities, instability, and shortened battery life to the hacked iPad.

- **Security vulnerabilities.** Jailbreaking your device eliminates security layers designed to protect your personal information and your iPadOS device. With this security removed from your iPadOS device, hackers may steal your personal information, damage your device, attack your network, or introduce malware, spyware, or viruses.
- **Instability.** Unauthorized modifications can cause frequent and unexpected crashes of the device, crashes and freezes of built-in apps and third-party apps, and loss of data.
- **Shortened battery life.** Hacked software can cause an accelerated battery drain that shortens the operation of iPad on a single battery charge.
- **Unreliable voice and data.** Unauthorized modifications can cause dropped calls, slow or unreliable data connections, and delayed or inaccurate location data.
- **Disruption of services.** Services such as iCloud, iMessage, FaceTime, Apple Pay, Visual Voicemail, Weather, and Stocks, may be disrupted or no longer work on the device. Additionally, third-party apps that use the Apple Push Notification Service may experience difficulty receiving notifications or may receive notifications intended for a different device. Other push-based services, such as iCloud and Exchange, may experience problems syncing data with their respective servers.
- **Inability to apply future software updates.** Some unauthorized modifications may cause damage to iPadOS that is not repairable. This can result in the hacked iPad becoming permanently inoperable when a future Apple-supplied iPadOS update is installed.

Apple strongly cautions against installing any software that modifies iPadOS. It is also important to note that unauthorized modification of iPadOS is a violation of the iOS and iPadOS Software License Agreement and because of this, Apple may deny service for an iPad that has any unauthorized software installed.

Information about products not manufactured by Apple, or independent websites not controlled or tested by Apple, is provided without recommendation or endorsement. Apple assumes no responsibility with regard to the selection, performance, or use of third-party websites or products. Apple makes no representations regarding third-party website accuracy or reliability. Contact the vendor for additional information.

ENERGY STAR® compliance statement for iPad

<__ Type="Do not translate" class="__ GenerativeKeywords ">

ipde-do-not-generate



To save energy, iPad is set to lock after two minutes of user inactivity. To change this setting, go to Settings  > Display & Brightness > Auto-Lock, then select an option. To unlock an iPad with a Home button, press the top button or the Home button. To unlock other iPad models, tap the screen or press the top button.

iPad meets the ENERGY STAR guidelines for energy efficiency. Reducing energy consumption saves money and helps conserve valuable resources; see the [Energy Star website](#).

Copyright

Copyright © 2024 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Apple, the Apple logo, Apple Card, Apple Cash, AirDrop, AirPlay, AirPods, AirPods Max, AirPods Pro, AirPrint, AirTag, App Clip Code, App Clips, Apple Books, Apple Music, Apple Pay, Apple Pencil, Apple Podcasts, Apple TV, Apple Wallet, Apple Watch, Apple Watch SE, Apple Watch Ultra, CarPlay, Center Stage, Digital Crown, EarPods, Face ID, FaceTime, Final Cut, Final Cut Pro, Finder, Find My, Flyover, Freeform, Guided Access, Handoff, HomeKit, HomePod, HomePod mini, iMac, iMac Pro, iMovie, iMessage, iPad, iPad Air, iPad mini, iPadOS, iPad Pro, iPhone, iPod, iPod touch, iTunes, Keychain, Keynote, Lightning, Live Listen, Live Photos, Live Text, Mac, macOS, Mac mini, Mac Pro, MacBook, MacBook Air, MacBook Pro, Magic Keyboard, Magic Keyboard Folio, Magic Mouse, Magic Trackpad, Memoji, Memory Mixes, Motion, Numbers, OS X, Pages, Photo Booth, ProMotion, QuickPath, QuickType, Retina, Safari, Siri, Siri Shortcuts, Smart Cover, Smart Folio, Smart Keyboard, Smart Keyboard Folio, Spotlight, Stage Manager, Touch ID, TrueDepth, True Tone, tvOS, and watchOS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Apple Pencil Pro, Apple Vision Pro, Multi-Touch, SharePlay, and visionOS are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Apple Arcade, Apple Messages for Business, Apple News, Apple News+, Apple One, Apple Store, Apple TV+, App Store, Daily Cash, Genius, iCloud, iCloud+, iCloud Drive, iCloud Keychain, and iTunes Store are service marks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Apple Fitness+ is a service mark of Apple Inc.

Apple

One Apple Park Way

Cupertino, CA 95014

apple.com

Beats, the b logo, Beats Solo, Beats Solo Pro, Beats Studio, Beats^X, Powerbeats, Powerbeats Pro, and Solo are trademarks of Beats Electronics, LLC registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions.

Beats Flex is a trademark of Beats Electronics, LLC.

iOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and regions and is used under license.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Apple is under license.

ENERGY STAR® is a U.S. registered trademark.

Other company and product names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate. Apple is not responsible for printing or clerical errors.

Some apps and features are not available in all areas. App and feature availability is subject to change.